942.006
C17 3%
POLYDORE VERGIL'S ENGLISH HISTORY,

FROM AN EARLY TRANSLATION

PRESERVED AMONG THE MSS. OF THE OLD ROYAL LIBRARY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. I.

CONTAINING THE FIRST EIGHT BOOKS,

COMPRISING

THE PERIOD PRIOR TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

EDITED BY

SIR HENRY ELLIS, K.H.

"Ornatissime Polydore, Opera tua sunt eleganter et feliciter excusa."

_Braamí Epist. fol. Lugd. Bat. 1706, Ep. DCCX. 5 Sept. 1535._

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE CAMDEN SOCIETY,

BY JOHN BOWYER NICHOLS AND SON, PARLIAMENT STREET.

_M.DCCC.XLVI._
COUNCIL

OF

THE CAMDEN SOCIETY

FOR THE YEAR 1846.

President,

THE RIGHT HON. LORD BRAYBROOKE, F.S.A.

THOMAS AMYOT, ESQ. F.R.S., Treas. S.A. Director.
BERIAH BOTFIELD, ESQ. M.P., F.R.S., F.S.A.
JOHN PAYNE COLLIER, ESQ. F.S.A. Treasurer.
C. PURTON COOPER, ESQ. Q.C., D.C.L., F.R.S., F.S.A.
WILLIAM DURRANT COOPER, ESQ. F.S.A.
BOLTON CORNEY, ESQ.
SIR HENRY ELLIS, K.H., F.R.S., Sec.S.A.
THE REV. JOSEPH HUNTER, F.S.A.
PETER LEVESQUE, ESQ. F.S.A.
SIR FRANCIS PALGRAVE, K.H., F.R.S.
THOMAS JOSEPH PETTIGREW, ESQ. F.R.S., F.S.A.
THOMAS STAPLETON, ESQ. F.S.A.
WILLIAM J. THOMS, ESQ. F.S.A., Secretary.
ALBERT WAY, ESQ. M.A., Dir.S.A.
THOMAS WRIGHT, ESQ. M.A., F.S.A.
The Council of the Camden Society desire it to be understood that they are not answerable for any opinions or observations that may appear in the Society's publications; the Editors of the several works being alone responsible for the same.
P R E F A C E.

The Three last Reigns in this Translation of Polydore Vergil’s History have already formed a separate Volume of the Camden Society’s Publications. The interest they created led the Council to believe that an edition of the whole was desirable; not only as affording a faithful version of a work hitherto confined to the Latin tongue, but as preserving a beautiful Translation, made at a period when our language was beginning to assume the character of modern elegance.

The present Volume extends from the earliest traditions of our History to the close of the Anglo-Saxon period. A second, to be published after an interval, will carry it on to the end of the reign of Henry the Third. And a third Volume will take it to the close of the reign of Henry the Fifth, at which the Volume of the Three Reigns, already published, commences.

Since the Preface to that volume was written, two or three further incidents of Polydore Vergil’s personal
history have been ascertained. There can be no doubt now that he arrived in England in 1501; the date is fixed by the contents of a letter from Henry the Eighth to Pope Leo the Tenth in 1513, in which, recommending Polydore, who was about to pay a visit to his parents in Italy, to the Pope's gracious notice, it expressly states that he had been in England twelve years. The Letter will be found in the Appendix, Number I., copied from one of the volumes of the Vatican Transcripts made for the Commissioners upon the Public Records, and lately deposited in the British Museum.

From a passage, before over-looked, in the Register of Bishop Smyth of Lincoln, it appears that the patron who presented Polydore Vergil to the rectory of Church Langton in Leicestershire, Nov. 6, 1503, was Sir Nicholas Griffin, kn.t.

Another incident of Polydore's life, mentioned in Ruddiman's Preface to Gawin Douglas's Translation of Virgil, was also overlooked. In 1509, intent upon the production of his History, which he had then begun under the auspices of Henry the Seventh, he wrote a letter to James the Fourth of Scotland, wherein he requested that his Majesty would be pleased to send him a Catalogue of the Scots Kings, and memoirs of their most remarkable actions, especially where interwoven with the English history, in which he promised to do all honour and justice to the Scots nation. The letter was printed by Ruddiman
in 1722 and 1724:* a more perfect copy, however, from
the original, still remaining in the Advocates' Library at
Edinburgh, has been obtained through the kind assist-
ance of David Laing, Esq., and will be found in the Ap-
pendix, Number II.

Ruddiman, however, says, "We incline to believe that
he met with little encouragement, and that his Majesty
could not expect an impartial account of our affairs from
a Foreigner, addicted to the interest of his enemies; so he
would not be obliged to him for what might be done more
for his and the nation's honour, and to better advantage,
by one of his own subjects. And for this perhaps it was
that Hector Boetius shortly after set about the writing of
our history."

What James the Fourth declined to do, the Bishop of
Dunkeld supplied to Polydore at a later day.†

In the Preface to the Volume already published, a frag-
ment of a note to Wolsey is mentioned,‡ in which the
writer advises him to caution the King against Polydore as
well as against the Cardinal S. Chrysogoni, otherwise named
Hadrian de Castello, and recommending the interception
of their letters. From whom it came did not then appear;

---

* Epistolæ Jacobi Quarti, Jacobi Quinti, et Mariæ Regum Scotorum,
eorumque Tutorum et Regni Gubernatorum—ab anno 1505 ad annum
1545. Edinb. in ædibus Thomæ Ruddimanni, 1722, 1724. 2 vols. 8vo.
† See the Preface to the volume containing the Three Reigns, p. vii., and
pp. 105, 106, 107 of the present volume.
‡ Pag. ix.
but a letter in the State Paper Office, in the same handwriting, and upon the same subject, shows it to have come from Andreas Ammonius, the king's Latin-Secretary, who, subsequently, upon Polydore's imprisonment, succeeded him as Sub-collector of the Peter-Pence. Henry the Eighth's letter to Pope Leo X., recommending Ammonius for the appointment to the Sub-collectorship, is remaining in the same repository, and will be found in the Appendix, Num. III. Ammonius succeeded to the office; but at no great distance of time, in 1517, died of the Sweating Sickness.*

Polydore Vergil, as has been stated in the former Preface, and as Henry the Eighth's letter shows, was imprisoned. He had written to his relation the Cardinal S. Chrysogoni "pessima quæque" both as related to Wolsey and to the King. What the slander was, appears no where; but a letter from Polydore to Wolsey, which he wrote from his prison, and which is still remaining among the papers of the latter, is a curious specimen at once of his fright on this occasion: and of the adulation, almost blasphemous, with which he sought to soften Wolsey's resentment. He seized the moment when Wolsey was made Cardinal, at once to compliment him,

---

* His death is thus noticed in a letter from Joannes Sixtinus to Erasmus—"Hodie amicus noster Andreas Ammonius sepultus est, sudaria peste (qua plerique magni nominis viri perière) sublatus; sit felix bonusque ipsius animæ Deus, quo die concessit naturæ."
and to entreat for his own release. This also is given in the Appendix, Num. IV.

That Polydore had recovered favour before 1522 is evidenced in a passage of Collier's Ecclesiastical History, in which the subsidy granted by the clergy in Cardinal Wolsey's Convocation in that year is mentioned. He says, "By this grant, all Foreigners benefic'd in England were double charged: that is, they were to pay the full of their annual revenue in five years' time. The Bishop of Worcester and Landaff, Polydore Vergil, Peter the Carmelite, Erasmus of Rotterdam, Silvester Darius, and Peter Vannes had the benefit of an exception, and were obliged to pay no higher than the natives."

That Polydore Vergil's History is entirely without mistakes cannot be asserted, but they are very few. In p. 17 of the present volume, he mixes the history of Anglesey with that of the Isle of Man, only in consequence of both being called, in Latin, Mona. At p. 56 he considers the Trinobantes as Essex men; and elsewhere, p. 73, denies that Trinovant meant London. He places it at Colchester.

The Objections of his contemporaries to his History, as well as of some who followed them, have been already sufficiently refuted in the former Preface. His contemplating the exploits of Arthur, of Brennus, and of

* Collier, Eccl. Hist. ii. 18.
Brutus as fabulous, raised a loud cry against his work in his own day; and for the repudiation of Geoffrey of Monmouth's history, Polydore Vergil was considered almost as a man deprived of reason. Such were the prejudices of the Time.

Nevertheless, the reader who has leisure to go through the present Volume will find that his long and earnest endeavour was to write what he himself terms "a sincere History." His delineations in local description, his care in weighing facts and testimonies, the good sense of his remarks, all show him to have been a Historian beyond his Age, both in his power of discrimination and in his acquirements.
APPENDIX.

Num. I.

Henrici Octavi Regis Angliae ad Leonem X. Commendatitiae, pro Poly-
doro Vergilio Urbinate redeunte in Patriam parentes inviurto.
Ann. 1513.

[Ex Litteris autographis Henrici, Arm. xiv. caps. 11. n° 8.]

Beatissime Pater, post humillimam commendationem, et devotissima
pedum oscula beatorum. Fuit in hoc nostro regno, plurimos jam annos,
venerabilis vir Dominus Polydorus Vergillus, Urbinas, Wellen. Ecclesiae
archidiaconus, et vestae Apostolicae Camerœ in hoc regno Vice-collector,
quem eximia eruditione, tum vero modestia, circumspectione, et gravitate
preditus, ut quamquam quibusdam de causis haud mediocriter optaremus,
Collectorem, sicuti non multis ante annos moris fuit, hic apud nos presentem
habere; ipse tamen licet vicarius et substitutus huic nostro desiderio maxima
ex parte satisfecerit, nec minori ornemento utilitatique tam Domino Col-
lectorii quam ipsi officio Collectoriae fuerit.

Quare et clare memoriae olim nostro patri, et nobis, percarus semper
exitit. Is vero nuper nobis significavit, post annos xii. quos in hoc nostro
Regno, et quidem uti nos testes sumus, haud ex qua sua cum laude egit
patriam, parentes, ac res suas, nostra cum venia et commeatu revisere; atque
inde ad vestram Beatitudinem se conferre, ejusque sanctissimos pedes deos-
culari se cupere. Cujus justissimo voto nos ita annuimus, ut sine nostra
commendatione discedere noluerimus. Ideoque vestram sanctitatem impense
rogamus, ut dictum D. Polydorum ad se venientem, tum nostra tum suarum
virtutum gratia, benigne admittere, sibique præcipue commendatum habere
dignetur, quod erit nobis plurimum gratum. Ex Regia nostra apud West-
monasterium, die xxvj. Februarii, M.D.XII.

E. V. S:tæ

devotissimus atque obsequentissimus filius, Dei gratia Rex
Angliæ et Franciæ ac Dominus Hiberniæ,
HENRICUS.
Sacra Regia Majestas, humillimam commendationem. Cum nullo sim neque servitio neque officio cognitus Majestati vestræ, paucis propterea perstringam qui sim, et simul quæ in presenti fuerit ad eandem Majestatem vestram scribendi causa. Cum enim superioribus annis, dum Patavii agerem, in primo nostri ingenioli tyrocinio scripserim libellum unum Adagiorum, et deinde tres libello de Inventoribus rerum, et illos rogatu Duci mi Urbinatis, viri tam Græcè quam Latinè docti, ediderim, qui nunc (quales cunque sunt) in manibus hominum versantur, legunturque passim; et mox Quæsturæ Pontificiæ cura mihi demandata, in Angliam venerim, ut cupidus novarum rerum cœpi diligentissime situm terræ amœnissimum, opes innumeræs, hominum mores spectatissimos contemplari, item Annales Britannorum atque Anglorum antiquissimos versare manu, lectitare, ac scripta scriptis conferre: ubi tot et tanta tum Regum, tum aliorum illustrium virorum Gestæ memoratu digna reperi, ut non potuerim non valde mirari auctores Græcos veteresque Latinos, et præsertim Cæsarem et Cornelium Tacitum, qui hic quandoque fuerunt, tam paucæ de hujusmodi inclyta Insula prodidisse. Simul quoque dolui, quod ipsi Annales ita varii, confusi, ambigui, sine ordine (qua in primis abhorret Historia) sunt, ut non modo ea præclara facinora exterós homines, sed ipsos juxta incolas laterent. Quare ego, quem ubi per negotia licuit literario otio frui semper ab ineunte ætate (ut dictum est) plurimum juvit, sum arbitratus me esse operæ pretium facturum, in res tum Britannorum tum Anglorum gestas carpitim perscriberem. Itaque opus etsi nostris viribus impar aggressus, jam prope consumavi. Caæterum cum una sit Insula, pari studio curavi de rebus quoque Scotis, quæ etiam præclara sunt, obiter suo loco memorare: sed illud non servato ordine feci, cum nullum habuerim quem acueremur scriptorem. Super quæ re sum sæpius Dominum Gilbertum capellanum Majestatis vestræ allocutus, hortatusque ut curaret saltem nomina Regum Scotiae edocere, [quo de illis suus in nostra historia locus (prout cupimus)]
meminisse dignosceretur:] quod tamen hactenus desideravimus. Nunc igitur Majestatem vestram, quae nequaquam minus benefacere quam dicere novit, oro, uti dignatur, aut Annales (si qui sint) aut Nomina Regum suo ordine scripta ad me mittere, et in primis quae tua sunt, seu tuorum inclyta facta fuerint, nos edocere, qui in recognitio operis de rebus hujusmodi memorabiliibus transsumptem mentionem faciemus. Et quamquam non eo sumus ingenio aut doctrina praediti, qui valeamus res regni Majestatis vestrae illustrare, id tamen haud dubie præstabimus, quod nihil honoris vel decoris per inscitiam aut incuriam nostram amittent, quæ, ubi supremam manum operi imposuerimus, Majestas vestra perspiciue dignoscet: quæ diu bene valeat. Londini, die xiiij Decembris M.D. nono.

E. M. V.

Servulus Polydorus Virgilius Urbinas, Archidiaconus Vellen.

Sacrae Regiae Majestatis Scotiae.

Num. III.

King Henry VIII. to Pope Leo X. recommending Ammonius to be the successor of Polydore Vergil as Sub-Collector of the Peter Pence.

[From the Orig. in the State Paper Office, Misc. Corresp. 3 Ser. vol. viii. 5.]

Beatissime Pater, post humillimam commendationem ac devotissima pedum oscula beatorum. Etsi magno affectu semper et cura Magistrum Andream Ammonium, nostrum a Latinis Secretarium, vestrae S. commendaverimus, eamque studiosissime rogarerimus ut Collectiæ Officiuin in hoc nostro Regno, præcipue nostro rogatu, a se eidem nostro Secretario promissum et datum, ac nonnullis suis ad nos Brevibus, ut putavimus, confirmatum ab omnibus litibus et controversiis explicare dignaretur, id nobis multo obnixius faciendum nunc
esse censēmus quum tam de conservanda nostrās apud vestram Stemp Gratiae eximiatione agi videamus. Cui haud dubie plurimum detrheretur si Cardinalis Hadrianus uti conatur seu quispiam alius beneficium singulari nostra gratiae a vestra Ste concessum et datum infirmaret seu immutaret, quamquam dictum Cardinalem Hadrianum magis debeat binis presertim nostris Literis instanter rogatum nostro desiderio ac postulationi se accommodare, eo magis quam alias Rdo D. Petro Grypho episcopo nunc (ut audivimus) Forolivien. cupidissime cessit, quum nihil minus juris quam nunc sibi vendicat haberet, verum de predicto Cardinale olim viderimus. Interim ejus instigatorem Polydorum Vergilium ob hanc atque alias causas, sed inprimis quia conjunctionem inter vestram Stemp et nos, cujus maxime sumus zeloti, verbis suis labefactare ac minuere contendebat, in carceri conjectum sua illic temeritatis penas luere cogemus. De dicta autem Collectoria finem rogandi vestram Stemp nullum sumus facturi, donec ipsam pro solita et eadem summa sua erga nos benignitate paternaque indulgentia predictum officium in nostram specialem gratiam eidem nostro Secretario promissum datum, et ut diximus confirmatum, sua potestatis plenitudine corroboraverit, et ab omnibus litibus controversiisque expediverit, quod ut vestra Sfass effeceris aliisque maximis innumerisque suis in nos benificiis accumulare dignetur etiam atque etiam vehementissime rogamus. Quae fæliciss. ac diutiss. valeat. Ex Palatio nostro Grenwici die xxiiij. Maij, M.D.xv.

E. V. Sanctitatis devotissimus atque obsequentissimus filius, Dei Gratia Rex Angliae et Franciae ac Dominus Hiberniae.

Sanctissimo Clementissimoque Domino nostro Pape.
APPENDIX.

NUM. IV.

Polydore Vergil to Cardinal Wolsey, from his Prison.

[State Paper Office, Wolsey’s Corresp. vol. i. 201.]

yhs

Maxime ac reverendissime Pontifex, et Columna Ecclesiae Dei firmissima, humillimam commendationem. Audivi et ego Servus tuus, qui in umbra mortis adhuc jaceo, de ingenti gloria tua, et quanto mortalium omnium favore in excelsa Cardinalis throno D. tua R\textsuperscript{ma} elevata sit, quae huic supremo Ordini plus fere dignitatis praebet quam accipit ab eo, tanta \textit{n.} est virtus tua. Ego inter alios quoque gaudeo et gratulor, et quando licebit tuam M\textsuperscript{tem} coram adorare et contemplari, tunc profecto exultabit spiritus meus in te deo salutari meo. R\textsuperscript{me} domine Deus indulgentiae, Deus pietatis, fac eandem misericordiam tuam cum humili servo tuo. Remisit nuper mihi tua benignitas culpam, per visceras misericordiae Dei remittere et pœnam, ut perfecta sint munera tua, sicut et D. tua R\textsuperscript{ma} perfecta est. Jam adventat tempus quo Salvator noster Christus de caelo in terram descendit ad reconciliandum peccatores Deo patri, sic tu Presul maxime dignaris in hoc tempore gratias me ab ista umbra mortis dextera tuae clementiae extrahere, et in lucem sanctam restituere, ut nascenti Domino nostro, per te, ego quoque renatus gratias agere, ac pro tua D. R\textsuperscript{ma} mente quieta et spiritu leto simul eundem D. Ihesum Christum orare valeam, quod dum spiritus hos reget artus perpetuo faciam.

Igitur bone R\textsuperscript{me} Domine miserere cito mei, qui afflictus sum et humiliatus sum valde; et salvum me fac, qui salvare in perpetuum potes. Miserere inquam quia miserandi ac salvandi quia venit Tempus. Amen.

E. V. R\textsuperscript{me} D.

Humilis creatura

R. Domino Deo meo D. Car\textsuperscript{u} Eboracen. dig\textsuperscript{me}. POLYDORUS.
THE CRONICLE
OF
POLYDORE VIRGIL.

THE FIRST BOOKE OF POLIDORE VIRGILL OF THE HISTORY
OF ENGLAND.

The whole countrie of Britaine (which at this daie, as it were Britaine
in dowble name, is called Englane and Scotlant) and beinge an
Ilonde in the ocean sea buttunge over agaynste the Frenche
shore, is divided into iiiij. partes; whereof the one is inhabited of
Englishmen, the other of Scottes, the third of Wallshemen, the
howerthe of Cornishe people. Which all differ emonge them
selves, either in tongue, either in manners, or ells in lawes and
ordinaunces. England, so called of Englishmen the inhabitauntes,
beinge farre the greateste parte, is divided into xxxix. Shiers,
which commonlie men call countties: of the which x., that is to
weete Kente, Sussex, Surrey, Southehamton, Bareckshier, Wil-
shire, Dorsetshire, Somersetshier, Devonshire, and Cornewall, con-
taine the firste parte of the ilond, which enclininge towards the
sowthe liethe betwene the Sea and the river Thames; then even
unto the river of Trente, which ronneth throughe the middeste
of Englonde, there are sixetene other countties; whereof vj.
(beinge in the formeste frontiers) are bente towards the caste,
nameli Estesexe, Middesex, Hertfordshire, Sowthfolk, Nor-
sfolke, Cambridgeshire; the latter, beinge x, which are more neare
CAMD. SOC.  B
to the middell of the soyle, are these, Bedfordshire, Huntingdonshire, Buckinghamshire, Oxefordshire (albeit parte thereof roonne the in lenghte one this side Thames), Northiamptonshire, Rutlandshire, Lecestershire, Nottinghamshire, Warwickshire, and Lincolnshire: behinde these are vij., which bowndes towandes Walles and the weste partes, Glocestershire, Herefordshire, Woorcestershire, Shropshire, Staffordshire, and Chesseshire. Aboute the middell, and as it were the navell of the riolme, followeththe Darbey, Yorcke, Lancastre, and Cumberlande (on the lefte hande toward the weste), and Westhumberlande; but on the other side Durham and Northambarlande, declininge towards the northe, seemeth more to be apperteyninge to the Scottishshe teritori. These counties are proporcionallie distributed into the jurisdiction of xvj. busshoppes, usuallie called diocese, and that in this manner: The bishopp ricke of Canterburie and Rochester conteinenith the frutefull province of Kente; the diocese of London comprehended Estesexe, Middelsaxe, and parte of Hertfordshere; the sea of Chichester conteinenith Sowthaxe; Winchester diocesse hath Sowthamanton, Serry, and the Ile of Weyghte; Saresburie hathe in it Dorcestere, Barckshire, and Willshire; Exceter bishopp ricke hath Devonshire and Cornwalle; the bishopp ricke of Bathe and Wells, united as one, conteinenith Somersette; Woorciter diocesse comprehended the Glocestershire, Woorcitiveshire, and parte of Warwikshire; the diocesse of Hereforde hathe parte of Shropshire and Hereforde; the bishopp ricke of Coventree and Lichesfeldes united, conteinenith Chesshier, Staffordshire, Derbieshier, with the partes remayninge of Warwicke and Shropshire, and so mutche of Lancaster as apperteyninge to the river of Repil. in the diocesse of Lincolne, beinge forre the biggeste, are comprised those viij. shieres which lie betweene the river of Thames and Humber, that is to saye Lincolne, Northiampton, Lecestere, Rutland, Huntingdon, Bedforde, Buckingham, Oxeforde, and the remnante of Hertfordshire. In the bishopp ricke of Eley is included Cambridgeshire and the Ile of Eley. In the diocesse of Norwige

* Ribble.
is conteined Suffolke and Norffolke. And this is the Province of
the Archebusshoppe of Canterbury, which is metropolitane of
Englande: adjoynge there unto Walles, which hath iii. dioceses,
as hereafter we shall make mention. The bisshopricke of Yorck
hath semblablie Nottinghamshire, Yorkshire, with the remainder
of Lancashire. Durham diocesse hathe the cowntie of Durham
and Northheumberlant. Finallie Carleyl diocesse hathe Cumber-
lande and Westmerlande: and this is the other Province or Circuit
of the archbusshoppe of Yorcke, which is also metropolitane of
Englonde, yea, and of longe season was allso primate of Scotlande,
as ellswhere we shall make rehearsall. Those dioceses are named of
their cities, wherein the sea it selfe of the bussshopps consisteth.
Wherefore London of right is cheefe, wheare, indeed, furste of all
was ordeyned the sea of the archbusshoppe; but as towchinge the
transposinge thereof to Canterbury, a citie of Kente, in place
conveniente we minde to make demonstration; for the famous
citie of London is situate in the cowntie of Middelsaxe, on the
north bancke of the river Thames.

This moste pleasant fludd hath his hedd and originall risinge at Thames.
The village named Winchecombe, and echewhere gatheringe en-
crease of his flowe and streme, first runnethe in length bie Oxe-
forde, and afterwarde, havinge full course bie London, hath issue
into the Frenche ocean sea, where beinge receaved in wonderfull
gowlf, doth twise ebbe and flowe more then lx. miles in the space
of foure and twentiye howers, to the excedinge great commoditie
of all men, bie cause that bie the meanes thereof merchandise hathe
recourse and accesse to the citie.

In this moste renowned citie is there a bridge of stone of won-
derous artificiall woorkmanshipe, for therein are conteyned xx.
piles of square stone, lx. foote of height, xxx. of brede the, the one
beinge distante from the other abowe xx. foote, yet knitte and joy-
ned together with arches, in the toppe whereof howses one bothe
sides are soe subtilye builded, that it rather representith a streete
of great lenghte then a bridge.
And this Englonde, beinge the chefest parte of Britaine, on the easte and sowthe side is limited of the ocean sea, on the weste parte with the bowndes of Cornewall and Walls, on the northe with the river Twede, which devideth the Englishe men from Scottes. At this Twede endethe the whole lenghte of the region, whiche havinge beginninge at the uttermoste bancke lienge sowthward is extended even thether bie computation the space of cccxx. miles. This countrie is of all places moste frutefull on this side of the river of Humber, for on the other side it somewhat to muche abowndeth with mountaynes; for, notwithstandinge to the beholder afarre of it appeareth the verie champion and plaine, neverthelesse it hathe manye hills, and such as for the moste parte are voyde of trees, with moste delectable valleys, wherein the moste parte of the inhabitanthes, especiallie the nobles, have placed their manners and dwellinge-howses; whoe, accordinge to their aunciente usage, do not so greatlie affecte citties as the commodious nearenes of dales and brookes, there dwellinge somewhat neere together, mindinge (as I suppose) therebie more easilie to escheew the tempesteous blastes of boisterous windes, bie cause the Ilande itself is naturallie subjecte to greate windes, wherebie it come the to passe that the ruralls and common people, bie the entercourse and daylye conference which they have with the nobilitie, confuselie dwellinge emonge them, are made verie civill, and so consequentlie their citties nothinge famous. This river, which before I named Humber, havinge beginninge on this side Yorcke, and streightweye turninge towarde the sowthe, takethe forthe- with his course into the easte, and so hath issue into the ocean sea, beinge firste augmented bie the rivers Dune and Trente. This Trente hathe his originall founteyne not farre from Stafford, whiche, passinge thorouge Darbie and Lecestre, and flowinge nighe unto Lichesfelde and Nothinghame, declinethe towards the right hande; but the other, that is to witte Dunne, bendethe unto the lefte hande, soe that Dunne and Trente betwene them make the flow now called Axolme; and not farre
from thence united a little on this side the towne in aunciente
time named Kyngstone, but now called Hull (well knowen bie
reason of the assemble marte of biers and sellers) theye runne into
Humber, throwghe the which owt of Fraunce, Germanie, and Den-
marcke, there bothe commodious and safe passage. The grownde
is marvelous fruitefull, and aboundantlie replenished with cat-
tayle, wherebie it commethe to passe that of Englishe men moe
are grasiers and masters of cattayle then howsbande men or
laborers in tilling of the fielde, so that allmoste the third parte of
the grownde is lefte unmanured, either for their hertes, or falowe
deere, or their conies or their gotes (for of them also are in
the northe partes no small number); for allmoste everie where a
man maye se clausures and parckes paled and enclosed, fraughte
with suche venerie, which, as they minister greate cause of
huntinge, so the nobilitie is muche delited and exercised therein.
Thus muche for the firste parte of Britaine, lest I shall peradven-
ture seeme tedious, seinge that as towchinge the situation thereof
hereafter, and eche where through all this worcke, I meane to
entreate in places convenient.

Scotland is the other parte of Brytaine, whereof I will some-
what at large entreate in this place, to the entente I maie have
no occasion hereafter to declare the situation thereof. In aunc-
ciente memorie it appeareth to have had beginninge at the
mountaine called Grampius, beinge continued in length on the
uttermoste bownde towarde the northe: but, after the distruc-
tion of Pictland, it did extende even to the ryver Twede, yea
sumetyme unto Tine, the uncerteyne chaunce of battayle shewinge
like mutabilitie in that pointe as it dothe in all other thinges;
wherefore the length thereof from the ryver Twede to the fordeste
bowndes is accounted to conteyne ccccclxxx. miles; but bie howe
much it is more longe than the realme of Englande, so much it
is lesse in bredthe, for yt endethe like a wedge, that is to saye,
small and sclender in the extremest parte, for the mountayne
Grampius, beinge huge and rowghe (whereof Tacitus makethe
mention in the Life of Julius Agricola), doth the runne throughe the
middell of Scotland from the shore lienge over agaynste Germanie,
that is to weete from the entree of the ryver Dee, it hath excourse
to the Irish seas, even unto the greate meere or lake called
Lomund, which lieth betweene that border and this fornamed
mountayne. Nexte unto the river Twede (which, springinge oute
of a little hill somewhat beyonde Roxburrow, runnethe into the

The marches. Germanian ocean sea), sowthwarde enseweth that region which
men call Marchelande, which is nothinge ells but the verie borders
and marches of Englishemen and Scotts: which is dissoevered
bie the river Twede from Northumberland, the fardeste countie
of Englande; the cheifest towne thereof is Berwicke, which in owre
time is subjecte to Englishemen. I suppose the same in times
paste to have bene the cheef citie of the inhabitantes of the hills
Cheviot. Scotland on the weste sometime bordered on Cumberland,
which is separated from the vale of Anandia bie the river Solve.

The river of
Solway.

Betweene these twooe regions Cheviot hills sheweth it selfe some-
what secretelie. On this Marcheland borderethe Picklande, at this
time termed Laudonia, enclininge towarde the easte, havinge
as greate scarsitie of trees, as to muche abowndinge in moun-
taynes. The townes therein of greateste names are these:
Dunbar, Haddington, Leethe, Northe Berwicke, and Edenborrowe,
the kynges cheefe pallaice wherein is a towre of no smalle
strengthe, called the Castil of Maidens, envirroned with the river
Forthie, which as yet runneth into the ocean sea of Germanie.
It make the a wonderous greate mere called the Scottish Sea,
wherein (omitting the rest) there is an isle dedicated to Sainte
Columnbke, commonle named Aemonia, and that also is divided
from Laudonia with a river. The region adjoyninge beinge
plentiffull in all thinges of the common people is named Fife,
wherein are divers civill townes, as Dumfermyle and Cypres; but
of all others most excellente and notorious is thought Sainte
Andrewes, the more renowned bie reason of the universitie, and
sea of the archebissshoppe, beinge there residente and metropo-
litane of all Scotland. On the other side, toward the Irishe coste northewarde, it hathe Nithesdale, so called of the river running bie, whereas are twoo stronge and well fensed townes, Dunfreye and Dunglasse. On the sowthe side Gallowey is adjoininge, Galloway, a province more commodious for the forrage of cattayle then the tilthe of corne, wherein is the splendent bowse and aunciente churche of Sainte Ninian, adorned especiallie bie the sea of the bysshoppe. In this discourse or space were unto the towne named Wigton, is there a poole of wonderous nature. For notwithstandinge throughghe the rigor of winter parte thereof be never soe stillie congeled with froste, yet parte remaynethe un-frosten. Next unto this is Caricta, in times paste notable bie reason of the towne Carleis, or Caricton, whereof paradventure it hathe the name derived. Above this Crea or Caricta is Aer, or rather Elgoea, for soe it is termed of Ptolemei, on the weste side borderinge on the ocean sea, wherein is that poole which beeore I named Lomund, of excedinge greatnes, for therein are conteyned divers littell iles at the roote of the mounteyne Grampius, from the which the castell of Dunbriton is vii. miles distante; whereas the river Bodotria, nowe called Levnie, entrith into Clote, whereof hereafter we shall entreate in more ample wise. A greate way on this side Grampius the greatest river of all Scotland, named Taus, hathe his hedd and springe owte of a lake of the same name, which, passinge bie Atholia and Calidon or Calendar and divers other places, runnethe bie the towne in fore time named Perthe, and now Saint Ihons; and finalie haveinge his course bie Dondey, in auntient memorie called Alectum, it burstethe forthe into the Germanian sea, making an excedinge greate flowe at the verie entrie, whereof Tacitus also maketh rehersall. Right over agaynste the bancke of Taus liethe Anguise, with whose streames this plea- sant province is refresshed and watered, and is dissevered from Fife. The countrie Atholia lienge northward, as it is, is not farre Athole. from these three beinge moste delectable soyles of Scotland, soe is it not of all others most unfrutefull or barraine.
On the other side lieth the Argetelia, which in that it aboundeth with mores, it yeldes more plenteouslie fodder than corne. The uttermoste border thereof approacheth so neere unto Irelonde that there are scarselie sixteene miles between them, in the which place is that promontorie which they call the hedd of their grownde. Plinie in his treatie of Irelonde, and iiiij. booke, witteseth that the Silurians in olde time were lordes thereof, whose wordes are these in effecte. This Irelond is placed a little above, verie nere to the people of Siluria, namelie within xx. miles, between the which and Elgovia westwarde there is the teritorie of Sterlinge, so named of a towne therin conteined. In this place the forest Calidon, usuallie termed Calendar, had his originall, beinge greatlie spredde in bredthe and length towards the inward partes of the riome. In this woodde there are bredd white oxen havinge manes like liones, naturallie so wilde and savage that bie no meanes they can be tamed; neverthelesse, after experience hadd once taught that there fleshe was savorie and pleasinge in taste, there continuallie followed suche wracke and slaughter that bie reporte theie are allmooste all exhauste and consumed. There is also there the castell of Caledon, situate on the bancke of the river Taus called Dunchell. Owt of a little hill apperteyninge to this foreste the river Glote hathe his springe, and havinge broade chanell towcheth it selfe in the Irishe ocean sea; for, havinge as it were reflection agaynste the botome of the mountayne Grampius, and turninge southward, it is receyved with suche wonderfull sourge of the sea, that (as Tacitus dothe write) it semed to the Romaines that there was besides it an other ilond beyonde.

Of this river the valey throughe the which it hathe passage is called Glotesvale, wherein is also the citie Glasquen, a renowned universitie. Moreover towards the este is annexed the province called Anguise, and Merina, borderinge on the sea; in it is the towne which they calle Fordune, of a wonderfull fortifide situacion, and well knowne bie reason of the reliques of Sainte
Pallad, an apostle of no smalle credit emonge the Scotts. On the same side is the cowntie Marria, notable throughe the citie Marre. Aberdon, planted betweene twoe rivers, Don and Dea, sufficientlie enoughe knowne throughe the scholes and artes there professed. Next after these succedeth Morrovia, which is environed with Marrey. twooe fluides, Nesse and Spea: at the verie entrie standeth the towne named Elgis; abowte the banckes there is greate store of woodde, replenished with all sortes of wilde bestes, and a lake allso called Spina, abowndinge in the multitude of swannes. And within the midst hearof is the cowntie of Rossa, stretchinge Rosse. forthe even to the uttermost corner: for on bothe sides it towcheth the ocean sea, beinge beste husbanded and tilled in partes neere to the easte. There is in it a porte so commodious to those saylinge, that commonlie it is called the Haven of Heathie or Safetie; the name of the towne is Thane. The uttermoste bownde of the ile is verie shorte, for the end is so narrow that it is scarfelie xxx. miles broade, and, beinge fensed with iiij. promontories, as it were arches, it firmelie resiteth the violent assawtes of the ocean sea, and, havinge in it two torninges enclosed of these mountains, it hathe certen receptacles whereinto it receiveth the water quietlie. This daie men call that streightness of the earthe Cathanesia, windinge towards the Dewcalian Cathness. sea. Thus muche of the partes particularelie.

The Scottishe land hathe echet where havens of greate safetie, and entrances bie sea, with poolees, fennes, fluides, and fownteines well stored with fyshes, mounteynes also having levell grownde in the toppes of them plenteouslie yieldinge forrage for cattall, with wooddes runninge full of wilde bestes, throghe the opportunitie of which places theie have bene allwaies so releved that as yet alltogether the cowntrie never had the overthrowe. For firste the fennes and wooddes have ministred refuge; the wilde beaste and fyshes have armed them against the famin. Abowt Scotlanye in the Irishe sea there are extante more than fortye ilonides of Plinie, comprised under the titill of Britaine; of others theie were named as to them
The Island of the Hebrides more then xl

The Island of Orchades xxx.

seemed convenient; of some Mevaniae, of others Hebrides; wherof verie manie at the least are xxx. miles in length xij. in bredthe; emonge these there is one called Iona, greter of fame throwghe the Scottishe kinges there buried. All the inhabitantes speke the Irishe speehe, which argueth that of them thei had their beginninge. Beyonde Scotland toward the Northe Pole are the Iles Orcades (ac-cordinge to the authoritie of Ptolomei), xxx. in number, part of them consistinge in the Deucalion parte in the Germanian ocean sea; the cheefe of them men call Pannonia, bie cause the bishopp therein is resident, beinge under the Scottis jurisdiction. The people use the tongue of the Gothes, which maie be a proof that their descant is derived from the Germanians; thei are tale in stature, sounde as well as in the disposition of minde as constitution of bodie, and notwithstandinge their cheefe meate is fishe, yet are they longe lived, for the earthe continuallie allmoste being hardened with cowlde, doth hardlie beare corne, and trees not at all.

The ile Thule is behinde the ilondes called Orchades, the which now they caule Ila, from the which (accordinge to Plinie) the ysee and frozen seas are distant the saylinge of one daye, wherein is Iselande, unto the which in sommer season yearlie our marchaunde men doe repaire to bie their fisshes; and for because it liethe farre northe under the sterre called Arctos men suppose it to be Thule. Thus mutche I thought good to speake of the proportion and placinge of Scotlonde; neither will I altogether use silence as towchinge the nature and behavior of the people. Those Scotts which inhabit the southe, beinge farre the beste parte, are well manured and somewhate of more gentle condicion, using the Englishe tongue, and in stead of woodde, whereof there they have smalle store, they make fire of a certeyne kindes of blackstone which they digge owt of the grounde. The other parte thereof, beinge mutche under the northe and full of hills, a moste harde and rouge kindes of men dothe possede, which are not without good cause called wilde and savage; they have theire soulgiars
clokes and inner garmentes died with saffron accordinge to the 
Irish fashion, and goe with their legges bare unto the knees: their 
cheefe weapons are bowes and arrowes, and a brode slawght swerde 
and a dager sharpe onelie on the one side. Theie all have the Irish 
speache, and the sustenaunce of their boddie consistethe in fish, 
milke, cheese, and flesh, for the which cause thei mainteyne a 
greate number of cattayle: they differ all generalli from English-
men in laws and decrees, for they have in use the civill lawe as 
allmoste all other nations doe, as hereafter shalbe declared; but 
the English people usethe propre and municipall lawes. In some 
thinges there is no difference or dissimilitude: for there tongues 
are all one, the features and attire of bodies like, like hautnes and 
corage in battayle, and equall desire of huntinge to the nobilitie, 
even from their childhode. Their howses in the countrie are verie 
narrowe, and covered either with strawe or with reedes, wherein 
bothe theye and their cattayle do harborowe all together. Besides 
Saint Ihones towne, there is not one enclosed with walles, which 
a man maye ascribe to the valiaunce of their minde, seinge that 
all their tuition and saftie theie referre to the strenghte of theyr 
boodies. As towchinge the sharpnesse of their witt, nature semeth 
nothinge to have fayled them, as theire erudition and litterature 
dothe well declare; for to what arte soever they applie them selfe, 
they profite therein withowte difficultie. But of them suche as 
yelde themselves to eas, to slewthe and unscillfulness, theie, in all 
that theie maye avoydinge travayle even in their extreme penurie, 
boste of their nobilitie, as whoe should saye better it ware that a 
man in gentil bloode shoulde wante, then bie crafte(*) or science to 
gather for his livinge; nevertheless they are cownted devowte and 
sownde as towchinge reliigion.

Walles is the thirde parte of this Ilonde, beinge one the lefte The dis-
hande, nere to the middell of Englonde, and in similitude some-
whate like to a townning downe:(*) it runnethe forthe within the 
ocean sea like to an half ilonde, therewith it is environed on all sides, 
savinge on the easte parte, and there it boundeth on the river

(*) arte. interlin.       (*) bending or compassing bancke, for interlin.
called Severne, which disseverit the Welche and Englishe people (albeit there are manie writers of late time which limite Walles and Enlonde at the citie Hereforde), adjudging that the begininge of Walles is at the town called Cheepstowe, where the river named Vey, beinge encreasie with the river Logus or Luggus, and flowing bie Hereforde, towcheth the it selfe in the sea. This river hath his springie in the middeste of Walles, owte of the same hill which Severne springethe (I owbate whether it arise owte of the same founteyne). Cornelius Tacitus thynketh the same to bee called Anton, as in another place yow shall heare. For even thether dothe extende a greate arme of the sea, which, entrinke into the soyle on the weste side, dothe on the right hande runne bie Cornwall, on the left hande throughge Walles. The which description, notwithstandinge it savorethe of late yeares, yet I am not agreede to followe it. Wherefore Walles as it were with a straighe line is extended from Chiepestow where it beginnethe a little above Shropshire unto Chester towards the northe. It is crediblie lefte in writinge that those Britons which wear survivors and safe after the spoyles and destruction of their contreye, in conclusion to have commen into Walles, useinge the opportunitie of the mountaynes, wooddes, and fennes (whereof that countrie is full) for their refuge and saftie, in the which place as yet they contynewe. This lond afterwarde the Englishe people named Walles, and the Britons inhabitantes Walshman, for in the Saxon speche Wallseman is nothinge ells but an aliente or straunger, even as to us the Italien or Frencemen are. Wherefore the Englishmen, a people of Germanie or Saxonie, beinge seased in the realm of Britayne did calle the Britons that were the remaynders of their ruined contrie accordinge to their accustomed use Wallshemen, bie cause they hadd a diverse language, and the Countrie Walles: which names remayned as well to the nation as to the londe, so that the Britons loste bothe name and contrie together. This is the trewe forme and derivation of their name, which (for as mutche as I knowe) noe man hath fownde owt heretofore, so that who so thinketh that they have their name ether of kinge or
quene of like appellation no doubt thei are deceived. The fieldes of the countrie are for the moste parte barraine, yet so mutche the lesse fruitefull in that they lacke husbandinge and tilthe; wherebie it cometh to passe that the ruralles (*) live hardelie, eatinge oatne breade, and drinkinge ther milke ether meddeled with water or ells whaye; and the younger sorte, rovinge abroade and wanderinge, moleste as well their owne natives as also other with their thefte and roberies. There are manie townes with Castles verie well embateled, and iiiij Dioceses of Bussshoppes, if Hereford bee accounted in England, according to the newe descriptions. The firste is the bishoppricke of Meneve, at this daye called the bishoppricke of Saint Davides, an aunciente citie, and placed on that shore which lieth agaynste Ireland westwarde; the second is the bishoppricke of Landafe; the third is the bishoppricke of Bangore; the fourth is the bishoppricke of Saynte Assaves; which all are under the jurisdiction of the Archebussshoppe of Canterburie. Whereas the Welch speche differeth from the English, they which derive their race and stemme from the Troian stocke affirme that their tongue is compounded and intermedlied partlie with Greeke, partlie with the Troian antiquitie; but, howesoeuer the case standeth, they speake not soe smothenlie nor pleasantlie as the English people. For Welchemen as I suppose speak more in the throate; but contrariewise Englishmen, resemblinge more the Latinistes, drawe their voice onelie a little within their lippes, which sounde is pleaasunte and likinge to the hearer. And thus much I mynde to entreate of Walles, beinge the thirde parte of Englonde; ther remayneth the fourthe, which men call Cornewall.

This province hath his beginninge westwarde, on that side the ile which boundeth toward Spaine; towards the easte the bredthe thereof containeth lxxx. miles, extending a little beyonde Saint Germaines, the which towne, being not altogether obscure, is planted on the right hande, where the greatest breadthe sur-

(*) contrye people. interlin.
mountethe not xx miles; for this little plotte of the soyle on the right hand is limited with the ocean shore; on the left hand with that arm of the sea which (as above we rehearced) enterethe the lande even unto Chepstow, and somewhat in fashion like an horne. At the first fronte is narrow, afterward in more ample wise it runnethe beyonde Sainte Germaines. On the easte side it borderithe on Englande; on the southe, weste, and northe it is compassed of the ocean sea. The earthe thereof is verie bauraine, yielding fruities rather through the industrie and travayle of the tillers thereof, then of the owne goodness. Yet therein is greate plentie of blacke and white leade, or otherwise tinne, in the digging whereof the cheefe living of those contrimen consisteth. In that onelie part of this ilonde even unto this presente continueth the nation of Britons, which in the beginning, havinge thether excourse owt of Fraunce, did occupie the ilonde (if they are to be credited which firmelie assevere that the firste inhabitanthes of Britaine came owte of Armoricke, that is to say little Britayne, as hereafter wee will make rehersall). This maye seeme a good token thereof, that the Cornishe men use the same speech which those men have that they comonlie call Britishe Britons; that also is a good testimonie which I have redde in an ancient booke of monuments, wherein I have founde for Cornewall not Cornubia, but Cornugallia, whose showilde saye the name were fourmed of an horne, whose figure it representithe, and of Fraunce, of which it receaved the firste inhabitanthes, the derivacion of which name canne in no wise dislike mee. This is for a certaintie, that their tongue greatlie differethe from the Englishe, and in manie thinges agreeethe with the Welche, for divers thinges are common to theim bothe; yet this is the difference, that when the Welchman speaketh the Cornishe man doth not so well understand the whole sence and sentence as certeyne woords therein, so that wee maie easilie perceave that these three kindes of people do no more understand one the other then the Scotts, of whome the inhabitauntes of the sowthe are discrepante in language from the northe parties, a
thinge somewhat to be woondered at that in one ilond there shoulde bee suche diversitie of tongues. Cornwall is under the diocesse of Excitre.

Hetherto have I spoken severallie of the division of Britaine, that, in disclosinge the nature of the whole bie his members, wee mighte the easier make true demonstration thereof, which is this in effecte.

It is moste evident that the proportion of the whole contrie of Britaine is triangular or three-squared, for it hathe three corners and three sides, one towards the easte, an other boundinge westwarde, and theie bothe runninge in lenght towards the northe are one bothe sides muche the longeste. The third side, beinge southwarde, is a great deale shorter then the other two, because the ilonde it self is much more longe then broade: so that the other twayne are proportionall to the lenght thereof, and this laste to the breadth. I meane there whereas ether the Ile beginneth most broade or otherwise endeth moste narrow, that is to weete northewarde. The firste corner thereof estward is at Dovor and Sandwich in Kente, from whence the passage into Fraunce containeth xxx. miles to Callice or Bononie, that is to saye, townes on the Frenche shore, the one beinge xx. miles distant from the other, wherunto allmoste all shippes are wonte to repaire. At this Callice, or as the common people saye Bononie, is the porte Icius, whose name is allmoste nothinge differing from the towne, for now beinge termed Callice haven it semeth to have encreased the name through the towne adjoyninge. From this nooke, which buttethe over agaynest Fraunce, that ende of the ilonde runneth forte to the third corner northewarde, beinge in Scotland; which, albeit it somewhat enclineth towards Germanie, yet hathe it no lande juste againste it, but is as it weare restreigned into a narrowe streight and corner. The shore of this side is wonderuslie void of havens, beinge in lengthe DCC. miles; but the other side, which is next to this lenger sowtheward, havinge his excourse from the firste corner in Kente againste the weste partes, even unto the other corner on the lefte hande, endeth on the uttermost shore in Cornewall. This
side is at it were the froonthe and face of the whole Ilonde, which in all this space, as a man would saie spreddinge the armes to ether of the corners, howeth forthe a broade breste, beinge here in deede moste broade, for from Dovor to Sainte Michaell's pro-
montorie, which is on the uttermoste frontiers of Cornewall, it is supposed to be ccc. miles, on which side are havens of greate fame, and shippes moste saelie doe there stande at rode. Finallie, from this corner on the lefte hande, the other and thirde side taketh his beginneinge (which goinge toward Spaine westward, on the which side Irelond hath place between Spaine and Britaine), and so with manie windinges of the shore passinge bie Walles (which is placed betwene) tourneth towards the northe, even juste to the thirde corner; in which discourse, conteineinge the space of d.ccc. miles, it knitteth uppe and endeth the Ilonde, for beyonde it there is nothinge but the mayne ocean sea.

On that side also there are havens of greate safetie, from whence yee maie saile to Irelonde in one daie: but somewhat lesse if yow pass out of Walles thither, for if you saile to Waterforde, the borderinge towne of Irelonde, it is like to the passage between Calice and Dovor, or litle more; but of all other the passage between Scotland and Irelonde is lest, as we have sayd before. From this the laste corner even to Antowne, being the uttermoste towne toward the sea southward, whereof it seemeth to be called Southem-toune, between the other two corners of Kent and Cornwall, as it were with a streight line, menne measure the whole length of the Ilonde, affirminge it to conteyne d.ccc. miles, even as the breme from Saynt Davides to the towne called Hyermouth, which is the uttermoste parte of the ile estewardes, amounteth to the somme of cc. miles. For, as it was declared before, it is broade on the southe side, which we have accounted the firste froonthe thereof, and excedinge narrowe in the ende, soe that the whole compasse of this Ilonde rownde about comprehendidith no more then xviiij. hundred miles, and bie that meanes ij. hundred lesse then Cæsar surmised. There are manie litle iles adjacent to Brytayne, and ij. of indifferent
fame disjoyned from it with a narrow sea, in quantitie not unlike: the one called the Isle of Wight, lienge agaynst the sowth bancke of Englonde, from whence, in the neareste place, it is distant but iiiij. miles, in somme other places vij., in others xij. miles. The writers of most auncient yeares doe reporte it in portrature to be like an egge, for from the este westward it is longe, conteyninge xxx. miles; the bredthe, extendinge from the sowthe northewarde, is scarsele xij. miles. It is well furnished with inhabitantes, beinge Englishemen, and is annexed to Winchester dioces. Vespasiane, in times paste, beinge sente into Britayne bie the emperour Claudius, is thought to be the firste which brought it under the Romaine empire. The other Ilond, beinge somewhat famous, is the Isle of Mone, or Man bie the exchaunge of one letter, which one the northe side enclinethe towarde Scotlanye, sowthe-esteward towards England, on the weste towardes Irelonde. In olde time, whenssoever there appeared decrease or ebbe in the ocean, which at all times dothe rage and swell, it was divided with so small a sea, and was so neare unto the lande, that a man might have gonne thereunto without shippinge, which thinge (as Cornelius Tacitus recordeth) was donne of the Romaines, who, in the xiiiij. booke of his histories, and in the life of Julius Agricola, affirmeth, that first Paulinus Suetonius, and after that himselfe, Julius Agricola, ambassadors of Britayne, did bie force of armes and marciall provos vanquishe the Ike of Mone, beinge of greate puissaunce, throughghe the inhabitantes, and a redie refuge for rogues and ronnewayes; neverthelesse when thei minded to geve their firste assaut they, laienghe aside all burdens (which might hinder suche an enterprise), sente before the moste likelie men of their armie, who bothe beste knewe the shalloe places and were moste experienced in swimminge, that thei might succor and guide the reste of the hoste swimminge in the deper places of the water, at the which feate the men of the ile beinge astonishe, which missed the navie and looked for the munition of there sea, of a sodeyne required truce of Agricola. But, as the same man
writethe, Paulinus finished not there his exploitures with such facilitie or like expedition, who when he had passed over there sea, sodainlie befoere the shore speared divers bandes of the inhabi-
tantes, well addressed with their weapons, the women runninge
among the men in terrible attire like ghostes with their heare
spredde abroade, with fire brandes in their hands, and theire
preestes, beinge Druides, that is to say, of hitthen religion, sainge
their accursed prayers, and holdinge uppe their handes towards
heaven. This straunge sight soe apalled the corage of the Romishe
souldiers, that at the firste, as though their limmes had bee-
ne starcke, they weare not able to withdrawe them or to save their
bodies unwounded; yet at the leght, partlie of their owne motion,
partlie through the encouraginge of their captayne Paulinus, beinge
perswaded not to feare a madde and effeminate companie, they
hoyse their standardes, and joyninge in battayle destroyed all
that they mette. Thus the people of the ile beinge overcommee,
Paulinus ordeyned there a garison, at whose commandement their
wooddes were cut downe, beinge dedicated to monstrous supersti-
tions, for in them the people of the ile thought it lawful and
acceptable to God to make their altars smell of the bloode of their
captives, and to aske oracles of their goddes with the entralles of
men.

But nowe we will retourne to our former purpose. The Scottes
were lordes of this ile in the beginninge; the space lienge
betweene them is lesse then xxvij. miles, in our memorie; it is
inhabited bothe of Irishemen and Englishe, which have in use
both there languages; but the Earle of Darbie, a worthie lorde
of the Englishe nobilitie, hathe it in his jurisdiction, well knowne
through the residence of his busschip. But see what
the tracte and continuance of tyme maye doe; the ile is nowe more
then xxv. mile from anie land, which in times paste was scarselie
one mile distante. Where it commeth to passe that there ar
some which dare affirme that yt is the Ile of Mone which men
call Anglesea, beinge neare unto Walles and in the diocesse
of Bangore; the nature of which place even at this daye is suche (accordinge to Tacitus) as wee declared that shore to bee, which is betweene the Ile Mone and that which is adjoined.

But let us make digression to that Britayne, which we call England, that we may declare what the nature and qualities thereof was in our time. The wether commonlie cloudie inter-medeled with showers and so mutche the lesse cowlde; the night season verie bright and in the uttermoste northe partes so shorte that there is smalle distance betweene the ende of the former daye and beginninge of the daye succeedinge; the dayes in sommer are verie longe, and this is the reason thereof, bie cause the iland lieth farre under the northe pointe, about the which the sonne, taking a longe race under the erth estward throughe the north parte, most neades tarie longe therein, even as in winter it is longe hidden while it runneth into the este through the south.

I have diligentlie noted at London, a ctitie in the south partes of the riolme, that the nighte is scarslie v. houres in lengthe in sommer when as the sonne is at his highest reache. The contrie it selfe at all times of the yeare verie temperat, noe sowernes or evell savors of the aire, insomuche that diseases raine seldom, and consequentlie lesse use of phisicke then in other places. Whearebie it commeth to passe that manie men live in divers places an hondred and tenne years, yea some sixe skore, albeit emonge artificers and husband men it is receaved as a prescripte that thei should sweate bie noe meanes. Never are there erthequakes, and lightening verie seldom. The grownde is luxurient and frutefull; besides corne and pulse, of the owne accorde bringing forthe all kinde of matter, saving firre and (as Cæsar saithe) beeche trees, with diverse other, as olives, which are woonte to growe in whotter soyles; but yt is well knowne that nowe there are beeches eche where in the londe. Thei plante vines in there gardins, rather for covert and commoditee of shaddowe then for the fruite, for the grape seldom commeth to ripenes excepte an hotte summer ensewe. They sowe rye, wheate, barlie, and oates, in their dewe season, for
they have noe other kinde of graine nor other pulses then beasns
and peasen; the corne shooteth soone uppe, but nothinge see
soone ripeth, the abowndance of moisture bothe in the earthe and
wether is cause of them bothe. There corne and pulse as soone
as it is ripe is carried forthwith in to the barne with care and
huske, and are so preserved till they thincke goodde to threshe
it or breake it accordinge to there exigence. The earthe, as wee
have reherced, is not apte for winnes, but instede thereof thei use ale
or beare made of barley, beinge a drincke bothe commodious
and pleasaunt to them which are accustomed thereunto; nevertheles
thei have wines owte of France, Spaine, and Candie. Their
pleasaunt woodds are well replenished with apples and acornes or
maste; thei have plenti of delicius rivers, pleasauntlie wateringe
there feldes. It is straunge to bee towlde, yet vere trewe, that
these floodds, Thamis, Humber, and divers other, are not easlie
augmented with rayne; it maye wellbe for this cause, bie reason
the erthe is verie sandie it drinketh the mutche water. There are
manie hills cleane voide of treese and springges, bringinge forthe
thinne and shorte grasse, yeat suche as excedinge well feadeth
there sheepe, abowte the which in white flockes they wander day
and night; and whether it bee throwge the mildnes of the aire or
goodnes of the grownde they of all other beare the moste softe and
finest fleeces, but that is to bee ascribed to the barraines of there
downes, as Virgile witnesssethe in the iiij. booke of his Georgicks, in
this wise:

Avoyd all sharpe and thornie wooddis,
If care thou take of wooll,
With clewing burrs and briers rowghe,
And growndes with fodder full.

And, notwithstanding that of all others Englishe wooll is the beste,
yet the olde writers make noe mention thereof, for Virgile dothe
honor Mileto, a citie in Asia, as cheefe in that poincte, in the iiij.
booke allso of his Georgickes, after this manner:
Within the chamber of deepe floodde the mother harde a sowne,
Whome rownde abowte the Nimphes did tose wooll of Miletus towne.

And likewise Columella, whoe flourished under the empiere of
Claudius, aboute the liij. yeare of our salvation, in his viij. booke
of howsbandrie, speaketh thus of sheepe then being of greatest
price and estimation. The sheepe (saie the he) of Miletus, of
Apulia and Calabrie weare reputed of our men to be of excellent
kinde, and of all other the beste are abowte Tarent: nowe the
Frenche sheepe are thoughte more precious, the cheefe of them
being folded in the bare feeldes abowte Altina, Parma, and
Mutina. This is his sentence, and surelie Plini in his viij. booke
of the nature of cataltale is all moste of the same judgement, where-
bie we maye easilie gather that the auncient Brittons and
Englischemenn tooke noe regarde of suche bestes as beare fleece, but
ether verie latele, or at leaste wise after the time of Plinie, trans-
portinge their wooll bie Frenchemen (being there nexte neigh-
bowrs) to other nations, bie the which meanes it commethe to passe
that even as yeat the Italians call the Englishe wooll French, as
whoe shouldse saye Fraunce did bringe forth the same, and thus
bie litel and littell men becam more industrius, for the like desier
of wooll beegane to encrease among the Scotts; albeit their fleese is
muche cowrser. But I will retiere to me former purpose.

Trulie this is woorthie the admiration, that thes sheepe receave
noe drinke besides the dewe of the aire, insomutche that expe-
rience teaching how hurtfull drincking is for them thei are for
the nonce kepte of theire shepherds from water. This fleece
maie justlie bee alluded to the golden fleece wherin the chefe
richis of the people consistithe; for great plentie of golde and
silver is yearlie of occupiers brought in to the realme, especiallie
for suche merchandise which there perpetuellie remaneth, bie cause
all men are forbedden to carrie it into enie other lande. Soe
that I suppose there is in noe nation greater riches, for, besides
the exceeding sommes of monnie which eche wheare runneth
throughe the handes of biers and sellers, and the plate dedicated
to theire churches, the value whereof is incredible, there is allmoste noe man so needie but for the dailie furniture of his table hathe his saltersilers, cuppes, and spones of silver, with manie and divers kindes of vessells, eche manne accordinge to his estate. England is well stored with all kinde of bestes, besides asses, mules, camnels, and elephants, but there is engendered nether enie venemus bestes nor raveninge, excepte foxes, and in old time woolves (as another place shall suffice to rehece), bie the which meanes there cattayle dothe freelie stray with oute harme all moste with oute attendant keeper; for a man maye see hearedes of oxen and horses, yea flockes of sheepe, daylie wanderinge and nightlie, throughe hills and vales, throughe common feeldes lefte open for pasture, and throughe suche severall grownde as everie neighebour maye take the commoditee therof in feeding his cattayle after the corne is gathered in; and for this cause have their horses there stones cutte oute, that being made geldings, though thei grase abrode, yet they maye contente them selves with lesse rowme or rovinge; a great companie of theire horses doe not trott, but amble, and yet neither trottres nor amblers are strongeste, as strengthe is not allwaie incident to that which is more jentil or lesse coragius. Their oxen are of like nature, wherefore manie of them at once are yoked in one plowe or carte (for bothe the earthe is tilled and carres drawen aswel with oxen as horses), which also stande men in noe small steede as towchinge the bearing of burdens. Their oxen and wethers are bestes as it weare of nature ordaned for feastinge, whose fleshe allmost in noe place is of more plesaunt taste, but beafe is peereles, especiallie being a fewe dayse powdered with salte; nether is it enie merayle, for that beaste once releaced from laboringe is kepte uppe for there common feedinge; in fine, the cheefe foode of the Englisheman consisteth in fleshe; nether emong them doe those oxen lacke there commendacion which after longe travayle are killen in theire age, albeit there fleshe is harder then the other. They have an infinite number of birdes, as well fostered in the howse as breeding in their woodds.
The Kentishe hennes are the greateste; greene geese beeole before they have caste there downie fethers are reputed as a daintee banqueting disshe, butt afterward not soe goodd. Of wilde burdes these are moste delicate, partriches, phesaunts, quayles, owsels, thrusshees, and larkes. This laste burde in winter season, the wether not being to owtragios, dothe waxe wonderus fatte, at which time a wonderfull nombre of them is caughte, soe that of all others they cheele garnishe mens tables: there are allso swannes in there lakes and rivers, not soe small a pleasure to the bebeholder as a great greefe of minde. Crowes and chowghes are everie daye in the morning earlie harde clattering in theire kinde. In noe countrie is there a greater multitude of crowse; being soe harmefull a kinde of birdes, yet are thie spared in that lande, bie cause thei eate woormes and other vermin, whereof the contrey is the fuller in that it is verie moyste; but in other respectes thei are muche more hurtful, for thei doe not onlie devour corne when it is ripe, but even as it groweth they pull up the sead with there bill, soe that at suche times the housbonde menn are com-pelled to apoynt boyse to drive them awaye with bowe and arrowse, when with showtinge and clamore thei will not bee feared. And for as mutch as herons are wonte afterwarde to builde in there neastes, therefore, these unhappie wretches are permitted to breede about the mannures of noble men, which delighte in the game of haukinge for herons, and thus crowse have free accese to there highe trees, where with moste commonlie there houses are beesett the better to avoide tempestuos blastes; bie these means thei endure to the greate damage of the husbonde-men. In consideration whereof, within our remembrance, an acte of parliament was promulgated that suche crowes bie all meanse showld bea destroyed, a rewarde beinge assigned to the destroyer. There aboundethe likewise all sortes of fishe, the names of the moste of them dissenting from the Latine (for these fisshes which in Latine and Italion are farre otherwise termed), are commonlie in use with them, as gornards, whitings, mullets, turbots, bremes,
macharels (somewhat the lesse esteemed for their naturall driness), schaddes, also being veri base bothe in relishe and estimation; finallie, sturgeon and pike, which fishe, as in times past, it hathe ben taken for an abjecte, soe now thought verie precius emonge Englisheemen, for, being taken owte of the fennie waters, and transposed into store pondes, and ther purged of the muddie savor, and being fedde with littell eales and other frie, groweth into a great fattnes, and after that peradventure being broughte into the market to be sowld, if for the sale neade shall require, hathe his bellie opened with a knife to shewe the fatte; but if it soe fall owte that hee bee nott sowlde (that which is most to be wondered at) hee dieth not of the worrynde, butt hathe it sowed upp with threade, and within shorte space is healed with the slime touchinge of littell freash water fishes. Osheters in noe place are ether more plentuos or better. More, this region bringethe forthe gowlde, silver, blacke leade and white, that is to saie, tinne and copper. Iron also groweth in the costes bordering on the sea, thowghe nothing plentuoslie. Finallie, it hathe also margarites and jeate. Thus muche breefelie of the goodd temperature of the aire and grounde. Now I purpose sumwhat to disclose the fourme and disposition of the menne.

Englishe menn are highe and taule in stature, of welfavored and faire face, for the more parte greye eied; and as theye resemble the Italian in thirre tongue, soe doe theye allmost nothinge differ in lineaments of their boddies; theye are verie civile, theye take counsell with deliberation, knowinge none to bee soe great an enemie to wisdom as rashnes; theye are prone of thirre owne nature to all dewties of humanitee, yea, even towardes straungers; the nobilitie is exceedinge curteus; peradventure with the baser sorte of menn it is not soe, especialllye with the common sorte of citizens. They will bedde thirre frindes to thare howses, receaving them with all jentelnes, and in thirre dinners and suppers theye are no lesse merrie, full of conceites, and exquisite, then sumtuus and liberall, accounting it a great pointe of jentilnes; allbeit (as Tacitus saieth)
it is noe small servillite to feed deyntelie, to another manns soe
great truble and lothesomnese. In battayle noe doubtte they are
valiant, and voyde of all feare; they surmounte all others in shoot-
inge; in noe wise cann thei abide enie delaye in warfare, inso-
mutche that when they joyne battayle, thei strive bie and bie as it
weare for all the whole substance and goodds of the one parte, for
all foloweth the good successe of the conqueror; but thei nether
buiide forties and castels, nether do they repaire them, which, being
buiiled longe since, throgh time are becomme olde and ruinus;
yeat if in foraine countries they have to doe with theire adversarie,
in all respectes thei observe the science and prescripts of warfare.
The other sorte of them which applie there minde to learninge and
studie of knowledge doe excell therin with great facilitee, of whome
at this daye there flourissheth an infinite nomber. There attiire is
not muche unlike to Frenchemenn. Theire woo men are of excel-
Ient beutie, in whitenes not muche inferior to snowe, sumwhat
beautified with the decencie of there apparell. There citties are
princelie, theire townes famus; there villages populus and of great
number; there manners and mansions curius and magnificent
everie wheare. But, bie cause in an other place I minde to make
rehersal, as wel of the situation of theire places as of the manners
of the people, as touchinge this laboure at this presence I will use
silence; wherefore as concerninge the religion of the nation I will
saie somwhat. Brittaine (accordinge to the authoritie of Gildas)
even from the first spungre and divulgation of the hollie Gospel
did ernestlie embrace the loove and woorshipping of Christe, ob-
servinge surelie, and holding faste the same, even emonge the
tyrannicall persecutions of the Roman Emperours. At that time,
albeit they did not openlie profess Christe, bie cause beinge van-
quished of the Romaines and Saxons they weare compelled to
sacrifice to straungne godds; nevertheless privatlie manie woulde
not forsake there hevenlie dewtie, seo that the Christian relligion
(as elswhere wee shall declare) was alwayse extante in som parte
of the Ilond, untill that at the lengthe bie Saint Gregory it was

CAMD. SOC.
cleane delivered from confusion, soe that I thincke there is noe people at this present which dothe more sincerelie and diligentlie observe all thinges that appartaine to the trew service and glorie of Godde. A goodd testimonie in this case is there noble Churches, which abownde everie where; the great assemble of menn repairinge daylie unto them; and to conclude, soe manie sumptuos tumbes of heroicall aunciters. Wherefore the cheefe commendacion of Englishemen consisteth in this, that of all other thei are moste Christian and relligius. I thought good to put these things in the former parte of mie worcke, beeore I entered into the entretie of battailes, to thentent the reader mighte understande what and howe greate a peoples valiant actes he had in hande, and also what manners and contrie he shoulde afterwarde here of; but Godd grannte that wee maye well finishe owre attempted worcke.

What kinde of people were the first inhabitants of Brittaine, whether thei that were bredde in the contrie or otherwise straungers, it was never yet sufficientlie knowne or determined; wherebie it commethe to passe that of longe season authors have not agreed thereof; as towching which thinge, lest I shoulde ether over rashelie plighte mie trouthe in affirminge, or on the other side gette envie bie refutinge or falsifieinge, I thought good in this place to repete there sentences in order, and to laye them beeore the ieyes of the reader, to the intent that all things maie stande to the arbitrement of other menn (as it is requisite those thinges shoulde which are incertaine), bie cause an Historie is a full rehersall and declaration of things don, not a gesse or divination. C. Julius Cæsar, the moste auncient writer of suche matters, in the v. booke of his Commentaries and entretie of the Frenche battayle, dothe affirmre that the inner partes of Britaine was inhabited of those whoe, as it is lefte in minde, were borne in the Ile; but the uttermost costes bee possessed of them which, issueng owte of Beauvosine and Gaules Belgique, camme to spoyle and make warre, where, beinge seased after battayle was ended, there thei
remained and beganne to till and labour the grownde. Cornelius Tacitus, in the life of Julius Agricola (which obteined Brittaine under the empire of Domitian) is allmote of the same opinion; whoe supposinge, yea contendinge bie reason to prove the lande to bee inhabited of nations adjacent, saieth thus in effecte. 'There grate limmes dothe confirme theire descent from the Germanians, the peinted faces and curled or withen heare of the Pictes, allso their situation right over against Spaine, is a token that the olde Iberians or Spaniards did passe the seas and seasoned on those places. Thei are neighbours to the Frenchemen, and somwhat like,' and soe forthe. But Bedas, an Englishman, (then whome I have seene nothing more sounde, sincere, or trewe,) who flourished abowe the 1cc. yeare of our salvation, thinking farre otherwise of the originall of this nation, writeth thus in the firste booke of his Ecclesiastical Historie, that those Britons which are environed of the ocean sea betweene Fraunce and Spaine, beinge browghte owt of Armoricke or littel Brittaine, diddie bie force kepe this Iold, gevinge it the name of Brittaine, whereas in deede beefore it was named Albion, as I will here after make relacion. The which opinion, that is to saye, appellation of the Ile, Pomponius Lætus allso, the moste autherised of late writers, dothe well alowe, even as allso hee dothe condiscende unto Cæsar as towchinge the originall inhabitants thereof, who, being borne in it, hadde the first possession and rule. But before Bede, Gildas, a Gildas. Brittaine borne, of whome wee have made mention in our prefacc, (who, exilinge all fables, most ernestlie embraceth truthe,) hathe browght some lighte to theire firste beginninge, for as towching his description of Brittaine this is his saienge: 'This nation (saiethe he), stiffe necked and highe minded sithe it was first a people, doothe somtimes stubbernelie rise againe Godd, somtime their owne citizens, and somtimes foraine princes.' Here Gildas geevethe us a watchwoorde that the firste inhabitantes of the region hadd the knowleage of Godd, of which sorte thei were which, after Noe's fludde, being great in nomber, replenished the erthe, and soe from
the beginninge it hath not wanted inhabitantes, as herafter shall appeare more largelie. He saith moreover that affaires sometime weare ordered bie theire owne citizens, sometime bie the Romanes, whome in divers places hee termethe kinges of parties beyonde sea, callinge Brittaine unthankefull in that it didd often as well breake there vowe to Godd the Father, as loialtee to theire owne princes.

This godlie manne hathe written an Epistel in fourme of a littell booke, wherin he hathe firste declared the situation of the Ilond, secondarilie he hathe towched in few wordes the historie of his time, laste of all hee hathe bewailed the iniquite of his Brittishe contrimen and times, alleging manie textes of hollie scriptures, wherbie he mighte as well traine them to goodnes, as cause them to abandon evell deedes; whose booke, bie reason it is somwhat obscure and knottie, it is allsoe rare and geison. I have founde onlollie two bookes, owt of the which I have gathered butt fewe things, yet suche as are trewe and sincere. There is also an other booke (that I may in time admonishe the reader of wicked subtilitee) which is falselie entituled the Commentarie of Gildas, being made noe doubte of some craftie compasser to fortifie an erroneus fable of a certaine newe writer. Trulie this moste shameles varlet, grating often on Brutus, hathe renewed that with the opinion of some new author wheron Gildas did not once dreame; and to the intent he might with more slyght deceave the reader, he hathe interlaced som things of his owne, to the end that ether men shoulde conjecture there were two sondrie of the name of Gildas, or at the lest that worke to be some compendius pamphlet of the former Gildas: whereof bothe are soe incredible to learned men, that everie man but indifferentlie skilfull maye perceave the crafte and rejecte it as a deceyte. But to the entente that no mann hereafter should continew in suche error, I have procured the right woorcke of Gildas him selfe to bee set foorth. Now it is time I shoulde retournke thether from whence I have strayed. These are the verdicts and judgements
of auncient writers as towching the originall of the people of Brittain, which I thought goode to sett beefore the ies of all menn, which I thincke I have done sufficientlie; nevertheless, divers other authors, which are of greter fame emong the common sorte of menne then ether theyre diligence or there credite in writinge dothe deserve, hath founde an other original of the people, the which thinge trewlie of what force it hath been, even sithe the begininge, William Newberie, an Englisheman, and not inferior to those authors, is a sufficient wittnes, whose lived in the MCXCV yeare of our Salvation, in the dayes of King Richard the firste, who in the preface of the historie of his time, when he speaketh of the authoritee of Gildas, writeth in this manner: It is no small argumente of his syncreitee that in uttering the trewthe he spareth not his owne nation, and, wheare as he speaketh the littell good of his contriemenne, he beewailethe manie eevels in them, nether dothe he feare in reveailinge the troth thoughghe he were a Britton, to write of Brittons that thei nether weare stoute in battayle nor faitefull in peace. But on the other side there hath appeared a writer in owre time which, to purge these defautes of Brittaines, feininge of them thinges to be laughed at, hath extolled them above the noblenes of Romains and Macedonians, enhauncinge them with moaste impudent lyeing. This man is cauled Geffray, surnamed Arthure, bie cause that oute of the olde lesings of Brittons, being somwhat augmented bie him, hee hath recited manie things of this King Arthure, taking unto him bothe the coloure of Latin speche and the honest pretext of an Historie: more over, taking in hande a greater enterprice, he hath published the sowthesaiengs of one Merlin, as prophesies of most assuered and approved trewthe, alwayes addinge somwhat of his own while he translatehe them into Latine. This saith he; and Gildas before him; but not I, which write nothing but that which hath been written beeefore, wherefore there is noe man which justlie can be angrie with mee for this sainge (that thei were nether valiaunte in battaile nether true in leage), which was
a reproche to the owld Britons. Nether was Saluste reprehended of the Romaines his cause he writte that filthie deade don to the cittle of Rome his Jurgurtha, not with owt a cause, when he saied the citte wolde bee sowilde and speedelie perishe if there were ever a bair; for it is a lawe in historie that the writer shoulde never be soe bolde as to open enie false thinge, nor soe demisse as not to utter enie trowthe.

It is mentioned in that booke (whoe soe ever it is) that Brutus the sonne of Silvius, whoe (as it is wel knowne) was begotten of Ascanius the sonne of Aeneas, after his passage throughe Greece, and conquest of Aquitaine, arrived at Britaine, according to the admonition of the goddesse Diana; where at his first entrie, vanquishing those gyaunts which at that time possessed the Iland and name to repelle the force of foriners, did himselfe occupie the contrie, callinge it according to his own name Britaine: and soe to conclude that Brutus was the author of the Britishe nation, whose, begeting sonnes, inhaunced them and enlarged his dominion wondorouslie. But yet nether Livie, nether Dionisius Halicarnasenus, whoe writt diligentlie of the Romane antiquities, nor divers other writers, did ever once make rehersall of this Brutus, neither could that bee notified bie the cronicles of the Brittons, sithe that longe agoe thei taste all the bookes of their monuments, as Gildas witnesse, whoe flourished aboute the DLXXX. yeare of our salvation, for he, in the beginning of his epistle, maketh this protestacion: 'I will goe aboute to bringe forth those things ownee which Britaine ether sustaine in the time of the Romaine emperours, and dide to other cittizens and other wise to those which are farre distante, yet as neare as I canne, not so muche owt of the writings of mine owne contreye or monumentes of writers, which (if there were enie) are not now extante, beinge ether burnde of our enemies, or farre hence caried away in the banishe-ment of our cittizens; as rather bie the testimonie of externe and foraine nations, which allso cannot bee verie evident, beinge discontiniued and interrupted bie the great discours of time,' and soe forthe.
THE FIRST BOOK.

But in olde time theie did presume on this fraunchise and libertie that manie nations ware so bowlde as to derive the beginninge of their stocke from the Goddes (as especiallie the Romaines did), to thentent the originall of there people and citties mighte bee the more princelie and prosperus, which things, albeit thei sounded more like fabels then the sincere witnesses of noble acts, yet weare thei receaued for trewthe; for the which cause even those things which last of all were committed to writinge of the antiquities of Britaines, were with soe easye credit receaued of the common sorte that thei have ascibid the fownteine of theire genialogie to Brutus; and lest bie enie meanse throwghe the ini-quitee of time, forgetfullnes shoulde in that point prevayle, two excellent historiographers have provided for the continuance thereof bie writinge and letters, the one of them having to name Henrie Huntington, an arche deacon, the other which hathe named his historie Polichronicon; and these are the thinges which from late writers have discended to there posteritee concerninge the firste beginning of the people of Brittaine.

Now as touching mie selfe, albeit I have stedfastlie promised that I will nether affirme as trew, nether reprove as false, the judgement of one or other as concerning the originall of soe auncient a people, referring all things, as wee have don hertofore, to the consideracion of the reader; nevertheles the lesse after the matter shalbe committed to conjecture, I shall utter in this place that which shall not alltogether seeme abhorrent from treueth, that in soe great diversite of owlde writers as towching the firste inhabitants of this londe, wee maye, at the lest with som probabilitee, declare a certayntee, proovinge that (which as farr as I perceave) is not as yet evident in the testimonie of enie auncient writer: thinckinge it to be nothing honorable to leave a matter of it selfe cleere inough as uncomprised, in the middest therof using silence and taciturnitee. Wherefore, seing that the Iond, on brighte dayse, maye easlie bee scene from the Frenche shore, and hathe a farre

* Sic in orig.
of seven prospect unto the saylers bie reason of the white rockes
abowte the bancke (whereof it was called Albion), surelie it coulde
never bee obscure or unknowne to the regions lieng rounde aboute
it. Wherefore it is not to bee thought that at enie time it lacked
inhabitants, which might then receave them when all other londes
did, not awayghting or intertaining the exiled or hurtfull roge
runninge awaye owt of Spaine, Germanie, Fraunce, or Italie, as
late Historiens make reporte.

Wherbie wee maye well bee persuaded that allmost, even fro
the begininge of the worlde, the Ilond hathe ben inhabited, and
that, accordinge to other contrys, after Noes fluidd it receave in-
habitants, which Cæsar calleth the natives or people bredd in the
soyle; wherin Gildas agreeth with mee, as I reverde abooke.
Nevertheless I cannot denye but that Germanians, Frenchmen,
and Spaniards, being the next people, and mingled with those
natives, did inhabit the same, (as thei doe Brittaines at this daye
emonge them,) of whome, as theire first straungers and greater in
multitude, Bede reporteth that the name of the Ilonde was
chaunged. But Plinie, speaking in his iiiij booke, of Brittainne,
seemeth to assent that it receaved the name of those littel Iles
betweene this and Irelonde, whoe saythe thus: ‘This one had to
name Albion, wheare as all the rest were comprehended under
the name of Brittainne, wherof we wyll intreat sumwhat hereafter.
Wherfore this is the trew begininge, which dothe not diminishe
or abase the renowne of the Brittishe nation, but dothe greatlie
augment, establisse, and adorne the same; for if (as wee are
wont) wee do measure woorthines and nobilitie bie the con-
tinuance of time (levinge to speake of the other giftes and felici-
tees thereof) canne there bee enie thinge more auncient or honor-
able then even from the beginninge to be borne in good and
honeste place, and in the same to multiplie householde, stocke,
and dominion allmoste for an infinite nombre of yeares? For
this cause the firste inhabitants of the auncient Latin estemed it
a moste excellent commendation to them that beeing there be-
gotten, they reigned there soe long season. The same maiestie
of domesticall praies may bee an eternall monument of glorie to the first borne people of Brittaine. But wee will retourne to the matter it selfe, thinckinge wee have gonne as farre as the necessitee of our busines dothe require.

But whether shall we goe, seing that all things are full of darknes. Trulie ther is nothinge more obscure, more uncertaine, or unknowne then the affaires of the Brittons from the beginninge; partlje because the Cronicles, if there were enie, were clene destroied (as wee sayd before), according to the testimoniall of Gildas; partelie bie cause the nation, as it is placed far from all others, soe was it longe unknowne to the Romaines and Grecians. This silence was the cause whie good authors have not lefte in memorie verie manie thinges of the originall of this contriemenne; and manie on the other side have ben bolde to speake so largelie, and to make suche a straunge historic thereof, that in the admiration of the common people (who allwaies more regarde novelties then trewthe) theye seme to bee in heaven, whear with a good will I will leave them, thincking it not goodd to debate the matter with them as towching those feined trifles. But, bie cause it is wisdom, and time also requireth the same, that in convenient places wee should couche those thinges together with our historie which Caesar, Tacitus, and Gildas have picked forthe in there writinge of the affaires of Brittaine, wee will, therefor, brefelie passe through the life of those kinges whome this newe historie of a sodaine, and as it weare at one boorden, hathe browght forthe and placed in the lighte. The which thinge (albeit not altogether without indignation) yet will wee doe it, bothe havinge regarde to the time and the avoydinge of evel will; mindinge bie the way, as nere as wee cann, to amend the defaultes therein (which are infinite), to the ende that neither thei maye moleste the readers, nether thei fawle hedlonge into them. And this we purpose so farre till wee comm to the Romaine and Englishe empire, for then shall wee have more perfecte lodesmen, whome, as assured, wee will afterward followe;
Brito had the first possession and impery of this Ilond and was the first author of the Brytishe nation.

but let us speedely enter the way that wee may the sooner attaine thether, as wee doe endevor. Wherfore that same Brutus or Brito, for soe he shoulde have been termed (if bie enie meanes Britaine should soe have been called bie his name,) is reported to have had the first possession and emperie of this Ilond, and to bee the first author of the Britishe nation, and not longe after to have benne seene on the earthe. After whome his three sonses, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus divided the kingdom betweene them; but within little space Locrinus obtened the rule of the whole Ilond bie the deathe of his bretherne, whome his wife Guindelon, the daughter of Corineus, one of the companions of Brutus, did slea; for that with him selfe hee had refused her for the loove of an harlot.

Madan succeeded his father, and beegat Mempricius and Manlius, betweene whome, after the deathe of theirire father, didd chauunce a moste filthee and wicked contencion for the kingedom, in the which Manlius was slaine. Mempricius didde nothing in his life time wherebie his deathe might seeme the more honorable; for on a time as he went a hunting, departing farre from his company, he was torne in pieces of woolves, whereof the contrie was full at that time. Next unto him reigned his sonne Ebrancke, whose (as menne saye) builded the famous citte of Yorcke, betweene the rivers Vsa and Fossa,* which runne bie the cittee, and, meetinge to gether a littenel way of, convey themselves into Humber. 

Thee are called Isis and Vrus of Leland, wherof he calleteth Yorkshire, 

Surovicana 

province.

Ebrancke builded Yorke and Edenbroghe. 

Brut Grenshelde. 

Leile builded Carleil. 

†It is cauled Luggballia of Leland.

Madan, Mempricius, Manlius.

*Thee are called Isis and Vrus of Leland, wherof he calleteth Yorkshire, Surovicana province.

Ebrancke builded Yorke and Edenbroghe. 

Brut Grenshelde. 

Leile builded Carleil. 

†It is cauled Luggballia of Leland.
after Bede, writethe thus: 'Carliele in the Britton speeche is called Lugubalia in Latin. Leyle being dead, Rudibras obtained the kingdom, whoe is thoughte to have builded these two cittees, Cantuarburie in Kente, which of Englishemenn in times past was called Dorovernia, ligure xii. miles from the sea, and Winchester; and the towne called Septon, beinge in the southe partes, which in our time of the inhabitants is named Shaftesburie; and Winchester is a cittee on the sea coste sowtheward, placed betweene two hills, and is of good fame. Badude was substitute in the place of Rudibras being dedd, whoe menn suppose to have builded the towne of Bathe, at this daye notorious throughe the bisshopricke of Bathe and Wells; whereas the saie is hee made baines flowing with whote waters, the which woorcce som erroneuslie attribute to Julius Caesar; whereas indeade it is evident that Julius Caesar came not so farre as this place. The bathes are there as yet extant, whereas warme waters doe springe fourthe and Boyle, wherein, for wantonnes, childerne moste of all others washe them selves; and there have I seene boyes swimminge and bringing up monnie in there teethe, which hath for pastime benne throwne in to the bathes of the standers bie. At the lengthe this Badude, trusting to his magicall artes which hee towght everie wheare, and being stered upp throughe the delusion and enchauntmentes of devells, waded soe farr in madnes that he made himme winges to flie, and indeade being lifted upp on highe he soddenelie fell downe, with the which fall hee died, and of likelehoode descended into hell; thus his wicked scien scame an evell mishappe unto himme. Then ensowed his son Leir after him, whose reyned manie years noe lesse worthelie then wiselie. Hee erected Leicester, a towne in the inner partes of the Ilonde, and hadd noe issue besides three daughters, the which hee, being verie aged, appointed to bee married to three of his noble menne, and his gooddes to bee equallie distributed beetweene them, which notwithstandinge hee assigned to the elder twaine be cause thei seemed more deerlie to loove him, whereas afterward he founde as well them as theire husbondes
unkinde, crewell, and unreverent; but the yongest, whose name was Cordill, having noe dowrie besides her goodd demainor and beautie, was geeven in marriage to a certaine French prince. Shee (whome nature hadd endowed with a ripe and sharpe witte) beinge demanded whether she didde exceedinglie loove her father, made this aunswer, ‘That shee didd allwayse carrie her father in her ies, and showlde doe while she lived, albeit afterward it mighte chaunce her to loove an other more ardentlie,’ meaninge therin her hou... bond; with the which aunswer (albeit it was sharpe and wittee) Leir was soe angree that, as I have sayd, with owte dowrie he maried her to a certaine prince of Fraunce then entangeled with the bewtie of the virgin; but within shorte space hee was beereveed and dispossessed of his kingdom bie his sonnes in lawe, thincking it to longe a season to tarrie untyll his deathe, and consequentlie was driven to flie unto Cordill, of whome (after she hadde distroed his monstruus sonns in lawe) hee was restored into his kingdom and princelie diademe, and reigned three years. In this season Cordill, having loste her howsebonde, returned into the realme, and bie the assente of the people enjoyed her father’s kingdom. In the meane while Morgan and Conedag, the sonnes of her sisters, didd with great greefe yealde homage and feaultie to a woman, and weare ashamed enie longer to susteine soe unseemlie a yoke of slaverie. In consideracion wherof thei, gatheringe a bonde of soldiers, began feirslie to destrooe with slaughters, burninges, and roberis, the easlier to provoke this woman to battayle, whome not longe after thei tooke with a small hoste and committed her to prison. This noble woman (who wanted nothing but the kinde and nature of a manne to surmownt the whole renowne of our former kinges), attained with extreme sorowe for her kingdom, which shee had loste in the fifth yeare after she beganne her dominion, with unvanquished corage vanquished and slewe her selfe. The conquerors at the first departed the Ilond betweene them, but in showrte season there entred into them soe fervent a desire of rule bearinge, that finallie, Morgann being overthrowne and killed, Conedag became
lord of all. In processe of time successivelie reigned all these:—
Rivallo, Gurgustius or Gurguntius, Silius, Jagus, Chinemarchus,
and Gorbodion. After the deathe of Gorbodion, his sonnes Ferrex
and Porrex beganne to fight for the kingdom, in the which con-
tention Ferrex was slaine, whose death strake soe greate doloure
into his mother (who looved him entirelie) that, being incended
with sodaine rage, bie the helpe of her waytinge jentilwoomen didd
most owtragiouslie murder the other while hee slepte; a thinge
surelie within the memorie of manne moste straunge and seldom
to be harde. There ensued after this a time moste feere in bat-
tayle, more seditious then dissention it selfe, verie crewel in the
middest of truce and peace. For when as eche manne as hee was
moste stronge so did he moste vehementlie affect the kingdom,
thei foughthe soe longe to gether, till the whole rule of the riolme
was divided betweene vs kinges. Necessitee urgethe in this
place a littel to streye from mie purpose, warninge the reader of
an error, which is noe small blemnishe to the bewtie of the new
Historie if there bee enie in it; for after those vs kinges, or rather
tyrantes, which are not counted in the number of kings, is placed
Dunwallo Molficius, the father of Bellinus and Brennus; who
beinge deade, wee reade that these sonnes divided the kingedome
betweene them, and, appeasing the sedition which rose bie the par-
tition of the reame, and joynenge there powers to gether, did first
over comma Fraunce, then tooke and set on fire Rome; and that
Brennus still continued in Italie after his conquest. Here can
bee founde noe such agreement in the time of the comming of
Brutus in to the Ilond, and the invasion of Rome bie Brennus,
that streight next unto those vs tyrants Dunwallo Molficius,
the father of Brennus, shoulde be placed in suche order of the
kinges; for Brutus is thought to have entred the Ilond the xth
yeare after the deathe of his father Silvius, the fowerthousand
and hundreth yeare from the beginninge of the worlde. But the
DCCX. yeare after the arrivall of Brutus, the citte of Rome (as it
appeareth as well bie the breviarie of Eusebius as in the Latin and
Greeke histories) was taken of the Frenche menn of the contrie of Lions, under the conduite of Brennus.

This Brennus (if wee beleve the newe Historie and make the computation of years according to it, wherein thei have skarslie a goode beginninge), hee flourished in chivalrie abowte the cccc. yeare after the entrie of Brute into this londe. Wherefore, it is moste evident that that Brennus, whom the historie maketh mention to have invaded the citty, lived ccc. and x. yeares beeore the battayle was taken in honde. Wherfore, leste this error doe cause moe errors to ensewe, wee will necessarilie chaunge the order, disposing the other kinges in this place untill wee comm to that time wherin reason itselfe shall minister to us occasion to have in re-
membrance Bellinus and Brennus. But let us retorne home againe. These v. tyrants, being ernestlie pricked with the desier of dominion, and burning in extreeme hatred, rushed hedlonge in battayle: the rage of sedition dothe noe lesse enter the hartes of the citizens then grevuslie torment them. But soe it camme to passe, that the tyrants, beinge wasted in their owne broyles, and, as it weare, wounded with their proper swerdes, the common welthe was restored againe, and the estate thereof reduced into the jurisdiction of one manne; wherefore, at the instance and assente of the people, Gintoline was proclaimed kinge, whoe, as he was himselfe verie sage and wise, soe hadd he one Martia to wife, a woowman abooove all others moste fayre and wittye. Men surelie supposed that bie the verie providence of God it camme to passe that Gintolin should aspire to this kinglye estate, and that, whereas the realme was raced and weakened with civill dissention, he shold againe restore the same to the former condition; which thinge, with grete industrie, he perfourmed, for as sone as he was seased in the same, with lawes, ordinances, and custommes, he endeavored to make new and furnishe the Brittishe common wealthe, which of others beeore hadd receaved som forme and furniture. But aboove all things he repressed and extinguished civill dissention, which as yet remayned as the reliques of the old
factions; yet the envie of Deathe, whose stinge sparethe no manne, preventid his finall purpose, being vehementlie busied in these affairs. Of his wife Martia he hadd ingendered onlie one sonne named Sicilius, whoe, yet in that he was not ripe for imperie, Martia, having good experience in manie things, tooke in handde the charge and care of the kingedom, and thincking that all things was fittinge to her concernedge the availe of the common wealthe, she promulged lawes which of the posteritee were called Martian Lawes. After Sicilius, whose life endeured not longe, reigned Chimarius, Danius, and Morvidius, whoe, beinge of haute corage, yet of suche notable creweltie that wheras he was never satisfied with the torture of menne, whome partlie with his own hands he strake, partlie he committed to dredfull torments; at the lengthe, having conficte with wilde bestes, made a beastlie ende, and thus (as the old saieng is) to miche stoutenes beecamme his owne confusion. His sonne Gorbonian, a mann muche unlike his father, succeeded in kingdom, a mann of exceeding goodnes and great parsimonie, allwayse preferring peace beefore battayle. After himme his brother Archigallo was crowned king, whoe, being malicious towards the nobilitie, minded to putt the cheefe of them to execution, and, having in feare their mighte and power, didd prepossteruslie exalte and honor the moste obscure and servile persons; for the which causes the piers and lorde, impacient in soe great crueltie, dispossessed himm of his rioll authoritee. Into whose rome was exalted his brother Eliodorus, a mann of great justice and sinceritee, whoe, thinkinge it as a greate treason towards himme selfe if he hadd not especiall regard of all suche thinggs as mighte benefitt his brother, it is not credibl to be towld how ernestlie he entreated with his princes that Archigallo might bee restored to his kingdomm; which thing in processe tooke effect when he hadde assuaged theire mindes with continuall entreatie; noe douhte a rare example of pietee, if a mann shall deeplie way with himme selfe howe great desier of rule-bearinge is incident to mankind. Eliodorus, for this exceedinge pietee towards his
brother, was surnamed afterward Pius, that is to say, godlie, piteus, or naturall. This Archigallo being towghte bie troubles and daungers that hee coulde not enjoye his kingdome without som exchaunge of demainor, passed som parte of his years voyde of all vice, and lived x. years after the second receipte of his reigne and crowne.

Thus calamitee sometimes dothe not onlie noe harme, but is rather a feate instrument to prays and commendation. Eliodorus was againe created kinge, whome his younger brothers Peridorus and Vigenius, througe discyte, toke prisoner at London, committinge him to prizon in that place which is now called the Towre, as yeat there remaininge; the which being well embateled with manie turrets, whereof it bethe the name, the vulgar surmise to have been erected by Julius Caesar, whoe, indeed, made noe mention of London, bie cause he cam not thither. Vigenius and Peridorus forthewith departed the riolme betweene them; yet, within a littell while, being bie sickenes brought to their laste daye, Eliodorus (having binne sufficientlie tossed with the frailtie of fortune, continuallie deluding the minde of manne,) was yet once againe made kinge, a manne surlie woorthie eternall prayse, whoe, howe moche the more studiouslie he eschewed rule and imperie, soe mucche the more was he accited and required for the vertewes at the which all menn wondered in himme. Hee reigned after this iiiij. years.

There succeeded a time cleane voyde of warlike valiaunce, but not of other vertewse, in the which these weare kings: Reginus, Morganus, Ennanus, Idwallo, Ryno, Geruntius, Catellus, Coillis, Porrex of that name the seconde, Cherinus, Fulgentius, Ealdalus, Androgeus, Vrianus, and Eliud; after whome followed Dunwallo Molmicius (for this is his place if keapinge the order of their acts, wee have allso a respecte to the time), whome aboeve wee declared, througe negligence, to be nombered owte of order. This manne, even from the beginning, beeganne to take care for those things which hee thowghte to concerne the utilitee of the commonwelthe, renewing with the auncient usage the sciens of warfare sore
decayed with discontinuance: hee sacred newe lawes, and those verie profitable, which afterwarde deservid to bee called Molmician Lawes. Hee appointed that the temples of the Godds shoulde bee a sanctuarie to all that would flye thereunto; hee was the first that wore a crowne of gowlde; hee releved, as well with riches as favor, all those which applied themselves to laudable artes, to the end that bothe the cheefe of the realme might doe the same bie his president, and yowthe mighte the better bee animated to the embracinge of vertewse; he ordained measures and weights for the bieng and sale of things; hee punished theevenes and noisom or harmefull creatures with severitee; he founded manie highe wayes, prescribing their bredthe, apointing terrible penalties as wel to the breaker of their immunities and rightes as to those which committed enie haynus offence in them. Furthermore, leaste the grownde showlde lie waste and the people bee ether oppressed or diminished for the wante of graine, if ownye cattayle showlde feed in the fieldes which showlde bee tilled bie munn, hee appointed how manie plowse everie cowntie showlde have, enjoynyn a punishmente to those bie whome the nomber showlde bee made lesse, and forbiddinge that suche steares as showlde searve for tilthe to bee carried awaye bie enie magistrate, or otherwise to bee surrendried to creditors for the debte of monnie, if otherwise the goodds of the debtor woulde suffise. This was thus ordered leaste the grasiers for advaunntage showlde cause the fieldes of the housbondmenn to be untilled, the which lawe growth owte of ure in theise our dayse, to noe small hinderance of the whole commonltee. But finallie (that I maie retourne to mi matter), this Dunwallo lefte the kingdom in commune to his sonnes Bellinus and Brennus. Thei bie and bie beganne to contende for the superioritee and pre-eminence, but afterward, being reconciled bie the exhortations of their friendes, thei divided the kingdom betweene them. The woorse parte of the realme chaunced to Brennus, as to the yonger brother, whoe, having haute corage throughe the great confidence in his vertewse, did not take in good parte that his brother
Bellinus shoulde have the better portion; and, mistrusting that the matter was compassed bie deceite, entended to acquite him selfe of this injurie bie weapon and armes.

Wherfore, assembling an armie, as well of Britons as alicants, he raysed battayle against his brother. Bellinus with like celeritie, being furnished of armoure and fightingemenn, mette with his brother; butt soe the chaunce when thei shoulde even presentlie joyne in fighte, their mother camm betweene them, bie whose praizers and instance they, being overcommed, were enforced sodainlie to departhe from theire armowre, ether of them detestinge so fowle and unseemelie a contention. Brennus, after that time, havinge nothinge at home wherin he mighte take reste and delection, settinge first all things in order at home, lesthe he shoulde waxe dulle throwghe laysie sluggishnes, passed the seas into France, mindinge emonge fighting people to passe the time in warres, and was had in great honor and estimation emonge the Frenchemenn of Lions (as I finde more trulie then emonge the people of Savoy, called Allobroges). At which time the people of Lions, whether it weare to unburden the companie of the noysom multitude, or that they weare sente for of the Italiens to make battaile, thei passed over into Italie, Brennus being their capytaine, with a great multitude of men; and after thei hadd overcomm the Alpes passing into Tuscanie, and sodainlie setting on the cittie called Clusium, they destroyd the territories round abowt. The Clusians, astoning at the sodaine daunger, sent embassadours to Rome, requiering that thei woulde send aide against this straunge nation. The Romaines, albeit at that presence thei were not confedered in societee with the Clusians, yet ponderinge that daungers might more nearlie approche them if the other hadde the overthrowe, did at the first time send likewise three embassadoures, the sonnes of M. Fabius Ambustus; whoe, in the beehoufe of the senators and people of Rome, pleated with the Frenchemen that they shoulde not assaule the frindes and fiers of the Romaines; whereunto Brennus aunswered that
peace in noe wise he wold simplie reject, if the Clusians wold be contente to surrender parte of their grownde (where of they had more then thei did occupie) to the indigent Frenchemenn; other weyse peace nether could nor should bee attained. On the other side, the legates of Rome, being enchased with such woords, demaunded what the Frenchemenn hadd to do in Hetruria. With these and such like prowde saiengs, there mindes beinge set on fire on bothe sides, thei ranne to theire weapons. The legats, that thei might declare of what valiance and vertew the Romains were in battle, contrarie to the lawe of armes, armed them selves speedelie againste the Frenchemenn. The Frenchemenn, on the other side, conceaving just ire against the Romaines, and raysinge theire siege, made an outrie throughte all there tentes that thei moste neades hast to Rome with their weapons, which pretended deadlie hatred. Brennus, nevertheless, thought good firste to sende embassadours to Rome, which mighte exacte dewe punismente for suche breakers of the lawe; which thinge forthewith toke effect. But whearas woorde was brought againe, that the three Fabians, woorckers of this injurie, were not onlie not amerced, but alse assigned Tribunes for the yearre inewinge, thei all stromed more vehementlie; and, seing that of theire willfull enimie theire was nothing to be looked for besides warre, unrighteous dealinge, and treason, thei townred all the force of that battayle on the Romaines, and toke their viage toward Rome, destroyeng all thinges on everie side. There was soe great speede of ther enemies, that thei could scarslie bee mette with all at the xth mile. The Tribunes, taking thether there jorne, with an unadvised armie (conteininge about the number of fortie thowsande fightinge menn) founde theire enemies abowte the river Allia, which springeth out of the hills called Crustinium, and a littell benethe the highe way is receaved of the river Tybris. In this place the Romaines, encountering with the Frenchemenn, were in verie shorte space disconfited. Brennus cowld hardelie beeleeve that bee hadd soe soone geeven the overthrowe; wherefore a while he
stood as suspense with fear; but, when he perceived all things to
bee in saftie, first gatheringe the spoiles of suche as weare slaine,
be procedeth in his journie towards Rome, wheare (at the firste
discriment of the enemies which approched) there was great clamor
and no lesse scare on all hands. And, bie cause in soe great dispose
there was noe hope to preserve the citee, the senators with a
garison of yowthe entered the capitol and towne, bringinge the-
ther corne and armowre, that therebie at the lesthe the name of
the Romaines might bee defended; but the elder sorte of senatorous
remained with a weake companie in the citee, mindinge to die
with their contrie if neads it muste perishe.

The Frenchemen in the meanwhile drewe neare unto the
citte, and, enteringe at the gate called Collina porta, tooke the
straight way into the merkate place, musinge not a litell that the
howses of the citizens were shutt, and the mansions of noblemen
wide open. Fearing therefore to bee assaulted by somme treason,
the proceeded more warelie. But afterwarde, perceivinge suche
auantiente fathers of suche antiquitie sittinge in their chairs, thei
intentivelie beetheled them as the images of Godds. In the meane
season M. Papirius did smite one of the Frenchemen on the hedd
with a sticke, for that unreverentlie he stroked his bearde, where-
with he was soe moved that he roved the olde man throughe
with his swerde, which slaughter beginninge at this one mann
gave suche occasion that other menn weare semblablelie destroyed
sittinge in theire seats as triumphant. From thens thye sleaing
with owt daunger suche as thei founde in the citie, som houses
they over threw, som they set on fire; and thus was Rome taken
of the Frenchemen under the conducte of Brennus the ccclx.
and v. yeare after the biledinge thereof. After this in the night
time thei privilie entred the capitoll, and beeinge at a verie neare
pointe to have taken it (see the fortune thereof) they were so-
dainlie beeurayed bie the noise and crie of geese, and weare
throne downe hedlong fro the toppe to the bottom of the rocke.
The Romains as it weare for theire extreeme refuge chose one
Camillus Dictator, which sojourned at Ardea, beinge theire banished from Rome, most earnestlie requiering him that hee wolde aide them and his unthankful contrie; who, nothing bearing in minde the injurie which hee had receaved, but waieng more his dewtie toward his contrie which privile hee beewailed, tooke mooster forthwith of a warlike companie. In the meane time thei which fiedde into the capitoll, beeing neare sterved with famine, did make covenant with Brennus, that for a thowsand pownde in golde the people shoulde be redeemed, and hee and his armie cleene de-parte bothe owte of the citte and teritoris of Rome. Nevertheless it soe fell owte that the people of Rome was nott cleane distained with that ignominie. For the Frenchemen, not beinge contented with the dew somme of gowldre, did put one of their swerds into the weghtes: on the other side the Romaines denied to adde more gowldre into unequall balance. And whilst with this debatinge and alteracion the time was prolonged and the gowld as yet not wayed, Camillus was present, and commanded the gould to bee taken away, sayinge that noe bargaine or covenant should be made of an inferior magistrate withowte the countermaunde of the dic-tator: and finallie he commandeth the Frenchemenn to prepare themselves to theire laste conficte. Thus they joyninge in bat-tayle, the Frenchemen, which looked for gowldre and not to fight at that verie instance, weare verie easlie overcomm'd. Afterward thei departing owt of the citte throughge the way called Gabina uia, at the viijth mile were overthrowne with muche more crewel slaughter; thei were bereeved of their tents, and suche sleeaing thear was on all sides that if wee beeleeve Livie there scarslie was remaining one messenger in this mortalitee. But Polibius recordeth that the Frenchemen retired from the beseeging of the cittee bie reason of domestical warrs, makinge league with the Romaines and restoringe libertie to the cittie. But, howsoever the case standeth, it is evident that Brennus (the moste valiant and renowned captain that ever was, for whose sake wee nowe deflected from our purpose) never returned againe into Britaine,
being either slaine at the overthrow geven at Gabina via, or otherwise passing the residue of his life in Fraunce. But, wheresoever he was, his death muste neades be honorable and famus after so manie and worthie exploits. An hundred and ten years after, there was another Brennus borne in Fraunce, under whose governance another trowpe of Frenchemen entered into Greece. Here I thought good to speake of this other Brennus and capitane of the Gaulls, leste peradventure thei which are unsclful in the old histories, throwe the similitude of their names, shoulde thincke that it was all one man which tooke, burned, and sacked the cittee of Rome, and also which safeconducte the other armie, first into Greece, and then into Macedonie (for indeade thei being dissevered, at the lengthe streched forthe into Asia). But let us here retourne to Bellinus, who after he hadde established peace with his brother, nothing was more leefe unto himme then to garnishe the realme with newe and freshe woorckmanshipe; for he builde the cittee in Wallse named Caerleon, fownded noe doubte in a pleasant soile, and well beeset with houses, whereof there are sygnes and trackes at this daye; being afterward called the citty of Legions, bie cause the Romaine armyes weare woonte to winter in that place. Theire is also an other towne of Legions builde in an other corner of the coste of Northe Walls, soe called likewise bie cause of soldieryes did mucho use here to harborowe: it is named Chester, being planted on the river Dea, which about six miles from thens roonnethe into the ocean sea. He did, moreover, at London ædesie a gate on the bancke of the river Thames, which, accordinge, to his name, of the posteritee, was called Belingsgate, which name it kepethe as yeat, adjoyning thereunto a littel haven into the which the lesser sorte of shipps have accesse, which bringe all things necessarie and profitable for the cittee. Finallie, being a mann noble and valiaunt bothe in peace and battaille, and in all felicities not unlike to his victorious brother Brennus, at the lengthe worthieli ending his life was kaste into the fier, (according to the usage of other landes, but) the first that was
soe burned of Britton kings. Next unto him succeeded his sonne Gurguntius, the second soe named, Merianus, Blandanus, Capenus, Ovinus, Silius, Bledgabredus, Archemalus, Eldolus, Rodianus, Redargius, Samulius, Peinsellus, Pyrrhus, Caporus, Dinellus, Helius, and Ludde. Of all these kings beeides Ludde, because they loved reste and ease, not having artes in their dewe price and estimation, nothing is lefte in memorie worthie the writinge. But Ludd, as soon as he was created kinge, recognised and accounted the estate of his region; hee renewed certaine laws, hee rooted up divers abuses, and rejected manie things drawne to inconvenience bie evell example; and then, disposinge himselfe to the beutifienge of the cittee of London, redressed the walles, beinge ruinus throughge yeares, strengtheninge the same with divers turrets, by reason wheareof it was afterward called Luddstoune. Allso in the weste parte of the cittee he builded a portlie gate, at this daye called Ludlegate.

Of this cittie have I redde nothing more aunciente then that which is specified in Tacitus thereof, whoe termeth it Londinium; bie whose reporte it appeareth that in times past it hathe ben a towne of noe great maiestie, in that he thus writeth thereof: London (saythe he) is a towne not soe famus throughe the surname of Cell, or the dwellinge places, as rather throughe the recours and convents of merchants. Peradventure it is the same cause whie Cæsar made noe mention thereof. Neverthelesse in oure time it is the mooste princelie ctitte of all others; the hedde of the nation; the pallace of kingges; mooste abounding in riches. The river Thames rennethe bie that parte of the ctittey which lieth sowtheward, over the which there is a bridge, as wee showed in the begininge, towards Kente, conteininge xix. arches, with howses, verie sumpteuslie placed alonge on bothe sides.

But I will retourne to Ludde, whoe at his deathe leafte beehinde hime two sonnes, that is to weete, Androgeus and Theomantius; which, bie cause thei weare bothe yonge children, his brother Cassivellanus obtiene the kingdom, whoe, leaste Cassive-
anus, he shoulde alltogether seeme to defeate his nephews, he limited
to Androgeus the citie of London and the province of Kent; and Cornewall to Theomantius. And thus muche, according to the new hystorie, these kings, unto Cassivellanus, reigned the space of mxx. years, if wee followe the times exactlie accounted of Eusebius, bie whose computation, from the time of the death of Silvius, the second kinge of Latines, (whom thei recken as the father of Brutus,) unto the time that Julius Caesar mooved warres with the Brittons and vanquished Cassivelanus, are numbered mli. yeares; so that, abatinge x. yeares, (for soe much maye bee permitted to Brutus after his father's death, bothe to take viage into Britaine, and also to sease the same into his handes,) mxx. yeares maye well bee reckened from the comming of Brutus into the Ilande to this saide Cassivellanus. But as concerning those which wee have hitherto mentioned, whether thei were kinges, or princes of the public weale, or tyrants, which I rather beleewe according to the sentence of Gildas which I have placed abooke, ther is noe certaine or determinate relacion; for nether enie old writer made records of them, (yea, as Caesar witnessethe, manie citties used there owne dominions, as you shall hereafter heare more largelie,) neither are the names certainlie knowne of those townes which the newe historie maketh reporte to be builded of those kings.

Here was an evident token of the negligence of writers, which, having noe regarde of times passed, affirmed the names of townes to be geaven of the ould British kings, which indeade were after invented bie the Englishemenne, Danes, and Normans. For whoe hathe redde in Caesar, Tacitus, Strabo, Ptolomai, or Plinie, Caunterburie, Bathe, Caerliel, Lecester, or enie such like names of townes, of which sorte if there hadd ben enie at that time, undoubtedlie thei cowld have ben obscure and unnowne to them. Whearfore thei made especiallie mention of those which were then extant, which are now soe entered into the blacke booke of oblivion that nowe wee are not able to say for a certayntee, whose in olde time were called Brigantes, whose Trinobantes, who Iceni, or whose Silures, or what places they did inhabite.
And thus much I hadde to entreate of the originall of the Britains, of theire imperie and estate; but before wee enter enie farther, it shall not be greatlie owte of the waye if I speke somewhat as concerninge the fourme and composition of theire boddies, of the aunceant demanoure and decrees of the people, that it may plainlie be perceaved what manner of menn thei weare beefore the comminge of the Romaines into the Ilonde, whoe, as conquerors are accustomed, made exchange of all things, to the bettering of somm things, seeing that the Britons weare made more civill through them, as wee shall declare in convenient place.

The Britans differed among them selves in features of boddie, as Tacitus witnesssethe; some resembling in stature and visage the Germainans, some the Frenchmen, som the Spaniards, of whome longe sence thei had their descent. Thei hade for the moste parte long heare, withoute wrest or curle; thei were of sterne countenance, but not without goodd semblaut and favour, but that they smeered their face with an herbe called glastum that in fighte thei might bee the more terrible to beehoulde. This glastum being like unto plantaine, and causing a bleewe colour, is thought to bee that which is in Italion called guadum, vulgarie in Englishe wode, wherewith woollen clothe is much died. With this herbe allso the wives and daughters in lawe of the Britons weare coloured, and did soe goe in certain solempne ceremonies, according to Plinius authoritie in his xxii booke and firste chapitre. The menn used to shave all the partes of their boddie besides theire hedd and upper lippes; they weare knottie and stronge in boddie, and in mind or corage invincible, cleane voide of all discetye and guile. Thei which were fostered in wooddes were the skinnes of beastes, and eatinge milke and fleshe, bie cause thei sowde not muche corne. The borderers on the sea weare more welthie and tractable, but the others weare not soe, bie cause it was forbidden bie lawe that noe merchenteman or forrainer shold come to them, least the inner parts of the riolme should bee knowne unto them. Thei wear mervayllus conninge in the arte of

CAMD. SOC.
warfare, using divers kindes of fighte, whearat Cæsar graunteth that his soldiers wear afraide, because thei were not apte or prone thereunto. Thei hadde these weapons; swords, dartes, clubbs, bowes, helmet, and brigantine or cote of fense of linnen sowed faste with a great manie wrappings. There cheafe welthe consisted in cattayle, whereof thei hadd a great multitude. Thei trained up hares, hennes, and geese for pleasance, thinking it an hainus offence to taste of them. Thei used ether brasen monnie or else an iren ringe of a certayne wayght in steade of monnie. After wards in the time of the Prince Claudius thei beganne to coine gowlde and silver with the image of Cæsar, as Gildas witnesseth. There buildings weare like to the Frenchemenn, and their attire allmost all one. They learned Greeke letters. Their religion and priestes, Druides, weare common to Frenchemen, and weare instructed of them with divers kindes of learninge; yet weare thei not written bie cause thei shoulde not be disparpeled among the commons, and allso that the learners should have occasion more diligently to keep them in memorie. These Druides enformed youthe that sowles did not perishe, but after deathe passe from one to an other, that soe they might allure them to vertue bie the contemple of death. Thei did more over teache and geeve forthe as towchinge the sterres and motion of them, of the bignesse of the earthe and world, of the nature of things, and power of the gods. The which disciplines being first inventid in Britaine the Druides are thoughte to have first caried into Fraunce. Cæsar is mine author in his vj. booke of the Frenche battale.

At those times C. Julius Cæsar, after he had conquered allmoste all Fraunce, did apoynt likewise to assaile Britaine with weapon; even at that time being unknowne to the Romayns. The cause why hee thus purposed was bie reason hee understooode that muche aide was ministered from thens to his adversaries in his Frenche batailes. And, not with standing that the cheefe time for warfare was allmoste passed, for summer was neare spente, yet he thought it wolde redownde to his greate prophet, if he should goe unto the Ilande, and vewe the kinde of menne, and have some know-
ledge of the portes, the places, and entries. Wherefore he, callinge together travelers and making diligent inquierie of them, cowlde be satisfied in noe pointe whereof hee demaunded; for the which cause, to the entente hee mighte foresee all thinges which mighte bee conducible to this pretended conflicte, beefore enie farder triall, he thoughte convenient to send beefore C. Volusenus with a galley, geeving him in commandeement that after hee had diligentlie serched owte and espied all thinges hee shoulde with speede retire unto him. Hee himselfe with all his armie drewe towards the borders of Fraunce called Morini, buttinge right over against Brittaine, bieceause that there is shortest passage in to the Ile. In this place was the haven Icius, able to comprehende a great navye in times paste, but nowe soe narrow that noe shippe canne enter but at suche time as the sea floweth, which seemeth to bee donne for the nonce and of good purpose, bicause the towne Calice or Bononie (for there is a dowbte in it, as I sayde afore, emonge the common people) being there situat and kepte with suer garison mighte herebie bee the lesse indaungered to the injuries and assaultes of enemies. At this place Cæsar commanded a navie to meete, bothe gathered of the bordering people, and also that which hee had addressed the yeare beeore againstste his battaile at Venice (these Venecians are a people of Fraunce, and that of the firme lande of Brittaine dwellinge hard upon the ocean sea). These Morini, or people dwelling abowt Turwayne, in the mean time sent embassadors unto him, promising to doe all that hee had commanded, whom he verie willinglie receaved into his allegiance and faieth, being verie gladde that hee shoulde not bee constrained to leave an enemie at his backe. In the meanse season, as sonne as his purpose was knowne and reveled to the Brittaynes throughe merchant menne, forthewith all that were of habilitie to weare hernesse made haste to the sea side to repelle there enemies. But Cæsar affirmeth the that divers legates camme to himme out of sundrie citties of the Ilonde, and that hee after hee had exhorted them to preservere in that minde did sende them backe againe, not makinge enie mention of
Cassevellaunus, but onlie in his seconde warres with the Brittons, to whome he saithe the chife prerogative of governinge and orderinge the battayle was committed bie the common consent of the Britons, yet not once doth hee name him kinge; but contra- riewise in the newe historie wee reade that Cæsar in his letters demaunded tribute of kinge Cassivellaunus, and that he againe showld aunswere Cæsar, that hetherto he hadd learned not to serwe or obeye, but to defende libertie, yea even with weapon if neade showlde require, as he showld be well perceave, if beinge blinded with covetise hee durste disquiet and moleste the Britons. Soe that in this pointe as in all other places all thinggs are diverslie written; wherefore, as I promised in the beginning, soe I thincke it mie parte severallie to open bothe the newe and oulde, that the more mie travaile is, the more plesure the reader maye conceave, when in readinge he shall note somme things worthie credite, somm worthie favor, and somme meete to be laughed at. But let us have recourse to owre purpose. In the meane time C. Volusenus, retorninge into France the v. day after he departed from Cæsar, made in good order relacion what places hee hadd serched owte. Then Cæsar, withowte delaye, chose soe manie of the shippes that weare assembled as wowlde suffise to transporte two legions, and, having gottte seate weather, hoysed sayle aboute the seconde wake of the night. The wether was not againste himme, soe that abowte the iiiijth hower of the nexte daye hee hooved beefore Brittain. The inhebittants of the Ilond, awaiting the arrivall of theire adversaries, swarmed abowte the shore in thicke rowtes; whome when they perceaved to bee as it weare over theire heddes thei addressed them selves bie and bie stoutlie to with- stande, which thing when Cæsar understood hee abode at anchre till the hulckes approached which were laden with horsemen; then chaunginge his purpose, leaste at his verie firste unshippinge he showld bee driven to encounter with his enemies beefore his soldiers weare on drie londe, holdinge on his waye eight miles farther did there place his shippes on eeven shore. Nether were
the Brittons at this time idle, but, sending beefore theire horse-
men and chariot drivers to resiste the residue of the multitude,
persewed to the place where the shippes weare at rode. Thus, while
the Romaines passed forthe and the Brittons resisted, somtimes
makinge excourse even to there shippes, there was a sore conflicte
and longe contention. Nevertheles, biecause the egle of the
standerd bearer was once sett on the bancke, the Romaines, more
for feare of shame and foile then for enie saftie thei cowlde per-
ceave, issuinge owt of there shippes, did a littell put abacke there
enemies. The fighte was for a season doughtfull, till the Ro-
maines one in anothers necke russhinge to the shore did putt the
Brittons to flighte, whoe as soone as ever thei eskaped into safetie,
they bie and bie sent embassadours to Cæsar to treate of peace,
whoe graunted there unto uppon the receipte of hostages and
pledges, whereof parte of them were owt of hand performed, parte
wold comme within shorte season. But sodainlie there arose
such a boysterous tempest that the whole navie of Cæsar receaved
greate skathe therbie, especiallie the laden hulckes which were
fixed at anchore; for somme of them being battered and frusshed
together, some having loste theire engines of warre and takles,
coulde serve to noe use in the worlde. These troubles did not
smallie endamage the Romaines, for nether hadd thei stuffe to re-
paire and renew theire shippes, nether were they beefore hande
purvayed of victualls for the winter season. The chieftaines of
the Brittons, perceavinge this grate distresse, and hoping that the
Romaine capitaine wolde be eslie entrapped and indaungered,
with this small number of men, did privilie conspire emonge
themselves. Cæsar, conceavinge suspicion and fearing the woorste,
bothe for the losse of his shippes and allso for that the Brittons
ceased to perform thaire hostages, with celeritee provided all
things, prepared victualls and redressed his navie. The Brittons
did not greatlie reste, but of a sodaine invaded the seventhe parte
of the legion which was sente for the purveyance of corne, on
whome noe doughte thai hadd commiteed notable slaughter if
Cæsar had not with speede comme to the succoure and rescuewes of his soldiers bie reason of the duste which he spied to be raysed rownde abowte them; thus the armie, bieinge compassed of the Britons, and the raye broken through the drivers of chariots, and almost oppressed on all handes, was preserved through the comminge of theire capitan at the uttermoste instance. The Britons used chariots in thare fightes, which with the noise of theire horses and wheeles at the first copinge did greatlie greeve and astonishe the armie of their enemies; afterwarde alighting from theire wagons did mannefullie fighte on foote. There ensewed noisom tempests which manie dayes caused the Romaines to withdrawe from fightinge. The Britons in the meane while with encrease of aide did swarme together, assalinge yeat againe the Romans with there weapons, whom they trusted easlie to subdewe. But in this fighte at the lenghte thei weare putt to flighte, and consequentlie sent againe to Cæsar as touchinge trewe, whoe, takinge dooble nombre of pledges, condiscended to theire petition for a time, and thus returned conqueror into Fraunce a little beeefore winter, the aquinoctiall daye drawinge neare. These are agreeing to trewthe, but according to the newe historie Cæsar at the first conflicte was putt to flight and constraine to retire into Fraunce; and Cassivellanus, triumphing in his victorie, in solemnne wise yealde manie sacrifices to the gods of his contrie. But I come to mie purpose.

Cæsar being desierus to bringe the Ile under the dominion of the people of Rome, passed the seas into Brittain the year followinge, streyght after the beginning of sommer, with a navie well furnished in all poynets, and, plantinge his tents in convenient grounde, beeganne to assallte the inhabitans with warre. In the meane time Cassivellanus tooke the shore beeefore hand, whome the Britons, being constraine bie the comming of theire enemies, made cheefe ruler of all theire affaires (as Cæsar witnesseth), for beeefore that time all the whole contrie was displeased with himme; yet, thinkinge that it shoulde be more availe unto himme to traine
his enemie farther from the sea befoare they hurteled together in fighte, leaste aide might bee ministred of them which remained in the shippes, gave a littel grownde, and pitchinge his tents verie neare kepte his menn all that daye in theire harness. The day followinge on bothe parties thie were boulde to fighte, and when they weare allmoste at bande strokes, tidinges were browghte to Cæsar in that verie instance that his whole navie was miserablie tossed rounde abowte the shore, wherefore hee commanded his armie to staye, and, reclaiminge his horsemen with blaste of retrayte to theire standerds, he retired to the shippes; and, convayenge awaye theresidew of theim, assembled a great companie of woorcke-menne to repaire the brused and torne vessels, and sente letters into France that spedelie theye should sende moe unto him. And thus having sette all things in ordre he returned to his enemies. In the meane time weare comme together greater garisons of the Brittaines, which moste ernestlie desiered to encounter with the Romanes, and not longe after the trowpe of the Cæsarian horsemen approchinge in the middest of the jorne there beganne sharpe assawtes; but yet theie being a littell driven backewarde, tooke privelie there carier abowte, and violentlie assailed the tents of theire adversaries. Thei skermished stoutlie for the trenche; the contention was incertaine and painfull to the Romanes, wherin manie weare slaine, yeat the pavillions manfullie defended. The daye ensewinge the Brittons stoode peaceablie on hills a good way from theire tents, and from thens espienge the Romanes comminge to waste and destroye, with great showtes they sett uppon them; but, what with the raskalles folowinge the bende, what with the horsemen which camm to succours, theye weare caused to flie. After this flighte the Brittons departinge did fullie apointe never after ward to geee theire enemie bataille with soe huge and unrewlie companie; wherefore, passinge the river Thames, didde furnishe a newe multitude abowte the bancke theirof, drivinge into the same and the shallowe places sharpe stakes, therebie to re-straine and hinder the passage of theire enemies. But Cæsar, un-
dermining their counsels through his captives, went forward even unto the river, and there rested where verie hardlie a manne mighte escape over on foote. This place (according to Cæsar) lieth lxxx. miles from the sea, soe that bie the probabilitie of the distance wee maye of right conjecture that this shallowe foorde of the river was a littell beyonde Windesore, which is xx. miles from London and boundeth the weastwarde. Wherunto as soone as Cæsar drewe neare, albeit on the other side of the water hee sawe great multitudes of menn, which Cassiuellaunus hadde sett in ordre, (for theire, as Cæsar reporteth, was his cheefe dominion,) albeit hee was privie to the depth of the channell and staking of the banckes, nevertheles he commanded his menn to swime over the fluddde, whoe, corageuslie entringe the river, albeiet their heddes wear skarslie above the water, yeat thei camme in suche thronge and violence to the other bancke that soone thei putte their enemies to flighte, wherebe it camme to passe that the Romanes more freelie didd straie in to ther feeldes, as well for bootie as to spoile; whome Cassiwellanus, with a picte sorte awaytinge the excursions and viages of his enemis, didd anoye and hurte bie sendinge forthe his menne of armes. At this time the people, then called Trinobantes, now Estesexmen, sent their legates to Cæsar, promising to yeald unto himme, and to doe what should please himme, requiring that he would defend Mandubratius from the injurie of Cassivellanunus, restoringe him into their citte as guide and ruler; which Mandubratius, a yownge mann, minding rather to flie then to die, wente into Fraunce, trustinge to the goodnes of Cæsar, for that his father Immanuentius, king of their citti now called Coulchester, was slaine of Casswellanunus. To these menne Cæsar restored Mandubratius, but firste demaundinge hostages, which theye pefourmed.

After these exploits an other parte of the Brittishe nation, then named Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibraci, and Cassi Trimbantes, folowing the example of the others, desiered to make leage with Cæsar; which thing beinge finished, Cæsar did assante, and
bie assautinge did subverte the towne of Casswellaunus not farre distant from this abowe rehersed place, being on all sides beesett with wooddes and fens and well stored with menne and cattayle. It was defended, moreover, with a forrest, a trenche, and a valley, and therefore the Brittons termed it a walled towne. In the meane while Casswellanus sent messengers into Kente (of the which these four were kings—Cingetorix, Carnilius, Taximagus, and Segonax), commaundinge them of a sodaine to sette uppon the pavilions of Cæsar, planted for the munition of his navie, whoe executing diligentlie his commaundement, foughte manfullie but without luckie successse, for thei weare ether putt to flight or slaine. Then Cassiwellauus being afflicted with soe manie adversitees was at the lengthe contented to geeve hostages, condescending that Brittaine shoulde becomm tributorie to the people of Rome; and Cæsar, charging his shippes with a great number of captives, abowte the æquinocitial time of harveste, returnt into Fraunce with conqueste and saftie. Thus was accomplished the warre Brytayne anexed to the Ro- mayne im- perie about sixty years befor the coming of Christ.

That is to say, causinge the nearest partes thereof to yeald to the Romaines; wherefor it is not to be suspected that Cæsar hadd eni thing to doe with the northren menne, sithe he didd skarslie con- quire, no, not see the first parte of this Region: and, whereas divers emperowrers have ernestlie desiered by weapons to chasten and subdew the same, refusinge to yeald homage, Cæsar maye rightlie bee thowghte rather to have shewed it to the vewe then to have made a gisf thereof to his posteritee. But as towchinge the casualties and consummation of this battayle, Gildas, a moste Gildas. grave writer, dothe allmoste accordre in all poinctes with Cæsar, of whome for the more part wee tooke the drawght of owre former rehersall, whoe, accusinge the cowardise of his contriemen Brit- tons, writeth thus: ‘The Romaine princes havinge the highest type of imperie in the worlde, and having brought under theyre yoke all realmes and iles adjoyninge; and estwarde confedering with the first froonte of the Parthians of Inde, didd allmost in all

CAMD. 80C. 1
regions desist and cease from batailles, and had strengthened this quietness with a fame of more sownde strengthe, if a certaine armie, like to a flame of sharpe fier in the weast parts, with the surge and streame of the bleewe ocean sea, cowlde ether have beene repressed or extinguished; but the same passing over the sea browghte lawes of obeysaunce into the Ile, not so mucho mined to vanquishe this weake people (as other nations) with weapons, fire, or engines, as with onlie threatenings, with thunderinge the judgements in theyre eares, and with superficilll sharpenes of the countenance berienge there greefes in the depthe of their hartes, and finallie denowncing there dewe obedience bie proclamation and injunctions." This saythe Gildas. Brittaine was subdived of Caesar abowte the sixtie yeare befoore the comminge of Christ; Cassiuellaunus died the viijth yeare after his overthrowe, withowte children, but his nephew, Theomantius, succeeded, and next unto himme his sonne Cinbellinus, who is reported to have served in warres under Augustus Caesar. I have nothing to saye of ether of them worthie the relation, but that even then the true and incomparable lighte shewd the glorius beames on the earthe, in as mucho as in the reigne of Cimbeline Jhesus Christe was borne of the Virgin Marie.
THE PREFACE OF THE IJ. BOOKE.

I have with celeritee passed through that which I promised from the beginnige, that is to weete, the lives of LX. and VIII. kinges; for men suppose that there were soe manie accordinge to the discowrs of the newe Historie, annexinge thereunto the life of Cassivellaunus: a littel moreover have I towched Theomantius and Cinbellinus, whoe succeeded Cassivellaunus in governinge and administration. This Cassivellaunus being prince, Brittaine became tributarie to the people of Rome, as wee showede beefore, and soe continued litell lesse then five hundred and three yeares after, untill suche time as the Brittons (being forsaken of Aetius, which in Fraunce was cheefe ruler of the armie of Theodosius the yonger) beganne to be soe overcharged with the longe battayles of the Pictes and Scottes beinge joyned in amitee, that of a great whiles they hade hardelie susteined theire pilferinges and assaultes; in conclusion, misdoubtinge their power, weere constreined to sende for the Englishe Saxons, a warlike and stowte people of Germanie, for theire aide and succours; but it happened farre otherwise then thei misdeamed, for these Englishe-menne reduced into there owne dominion that parte of the Ilonde which thei possessed: soe that howe mutche the renowne and glorie of the Britisishe nation did increase in a thowsande yeares, soe muche in this miserable space it was apayred and extinguished, which was betweene the diocese of Cassivellaunus and the entrie
of the Englishemenn, whoe as wee have saide at the length the obtened the imperie. But while wee endeavowre to make all thinges plaine, beholde there is suche diversitee emonge writers, suche negligence, or rather rashenes, that, beinge distract and troubled in minde, I knowe not what to affirme as true or false in manie thinges, especiallie as towchinge the order of the kinges which ensewed after Cassivellaunus to the time of the Englishemenne. For the Romaine writers, and especiallie Tacitus, maketh minde that in time past the Brittons obeyed there kinges, and after that, beinge brought under even to the paieng of tribute, weare so diverslie draune bie the cheefe of their strife and factions, that to withstande or repell a common perill scarce two or three cittes woulde agree or assemble to gether; and thus while thei strived, particularlie thei weer universallie confounded and overthrowne. Bie this meanes menne saye that Britaine was broughte into the fourme of a province of the Romaines, and that frome themme weare sente certayne to governe, called rulers or provostes, which should obteine the same. Yeat these selfe same authors made mention of certaine kinges which reigned in Britaine, even then when the Cæsars weare lordes of the worlde. Gildas dothe witnes the same, saing, Britaine hathe kinges, but, etc. Cæsar hathe lefte in memorie that in his time there weare iiiij. kinges in Kente, beinge governors of those parties. Tacitus make the reheersall of Prasutagus and Cogidunus, two kinges; Juvenall of Arviragus, and all late historiens of Lucius. Wherbie it appeareth that ether one or moe bare rule in the Ilond under the Romaines. Contrarie wise the common sorte of menne holde opinion that the cheefe dominion was all waise in the hands and power of the Brittons, and that the Senat of Rome, yearlie receavinge a pension, did of dewtie send there captaines in to the Ile, somtimes to appease the rage of sedition, somtime to defend the invasion of enemies, soe that the Brittons (say thei) did allwaies obey theire owne kinges, till at the length they weare disturbed and dispossesed bie the Englishe menne. But whereas in the vulgar historie the order of
the kinges was to bee observed, as often as it chaunced that there
weare noe kinges to bee placed; somtime ther Romaine emper-
rourues were convenientlie assigned, somtime theire cheefe rulers
whoe weare reported to be made kings of the Brittons; as who
showlde saye the Romaine emperours weare inferior to these
kinges, or at the least waye that the substitute rulers called Pref-
fecti did not governe the province at the appointment and
prescripte of the senat house or emperours, but at theire owne
arbirement and pleasure. But these thinges, as theye sownde and
savor sumwhat to grosslie vulgarlie to be repeted in this place, soe
will I cleene lett them passe, seing that here after, purposelie and
feetelye, wee will admonishe the reader of those thinges which are
worthie the credit and written for trewthe. Nether will I leave
undeclared howe divers and manifolde the fourme of administringe
the Britishe common wealthe was beefor the comminge of the
Romaines. Treulie, Caesar writethe that Cassivellaunus had
dominion in the Iلونde, the boundes wherof the river Thames
didde dissever fromme the borderinge cittees, and that to him was
geeven the title of governement bie reason of his comminge, for
beefore that time hee had continuall warres with the other cittees;
moreover that theare weare fewe ringeres in Kente, that is to say,
peeres, whome at this daye we calle dukes and earles; and allso
that the people named Cenigmani, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci,
and Cassi, didde send ambassadours, yealding themselves to
himme. In the same place he hath these woordes: 'The princes
did assemble oute of all parties, and begann to committ them-
selves and cittes to Caesar, etc.' Wherebie wee maie gather that
suche was the fashion in those dayse of ruling in Brittain as it is
at this presence in Italie and Germanie, (where somme cittees are
reuled of one prince, somm of the nobilite, som of the people,) caulling them kinges which weare of moste puissaunce, as Cas-
svellaunus, whoe for that same cause was called kinge. These
thinges have wee putt before the ieyes of the readers that wee
mighte make the historie verie easie in the understandinge.
HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

But now let us follow our pretensed woorke, that at the length wee maye speake confuselie bothe of the end of the reign of the Brittons, and allsoe of the originall of the Englishe imperie.

THE SECONDE BOOKE

OF POLIDORUS VERGILIUS ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

In the time of the Emperoure Augustus, peace, which elsewhere flourished bie divine Providence, remained likewise sounde and inviolate in Brittaine, untill Guinderius, the sonne of Cimbelinus, brake the sacred lawes thereof; for hee, beeinge a stoute and boulde manne, and his bouldenes accompanied with rashenes, denied to paiie the yearlie revenuue dewe to the Romaines, and enkendeled the people unto newe tumultes; but houe soe ever hee was pro-voked, it soe fell oute that he made an open rebellion, as Gildas maketh rehersall. For the which cause Claudius Caesar decreed to make warre with the Brittons; albeit Suetonius Tranq. seemeth to affirme, that the cause whie Claudius minded to move battayle was, for that there befell an exceedinge broile and uprere for not restoringe certaine run awayse, wherefore it is evident that Claudius was the firste of the Romaine emperoures which tooke voyage into the Ilande after the conqueste thereof bie the Dictator Cæsar, wherein he appeasid forthewith all thinges without fight, returninge into Italie within littel more then vj. monethes after his departure owt of the cittie. The which thing, according to the testimonie of Gildas, is most trew, whoe writeth in this wise of this sodaine defection, or breche of covenant, of the people: 'These thinges (saithe hee) being thus achieved, when suche newes were brought to the Senate, and that with speedie warriers thei minded to bee revenged, here was neither warlike navie in redines to
encounter for theire contrie, nether competent armie, nether politique disposinge of the righte winge, nether uther furniture of bataille planted on the shore, butt thei flieng turned there backes for bucklers and yealded ther neckes to the sworde: there bloode for seare becamm cowld aboute their bones, and effeminatlie lifted up their handes to bee bownde, soe that it is farre spredd in pro- verbe and mokerie, the Brittons are nether stowte in battayle, nether faithful in peace; wherefore the Romaines, slaine manie of the recreants, and delivering manie into bondage, lest the lande shoulde becomme desolate, did retornue againe into Italie owt of a contrie voyde of oyle and wine, levinge certaine cheefe rewers of their owne companie, which showlde torment and afflicte this miserable people, not so mutche with the bende of soldiers as with stripes, and suche as showlde, if neade weare (according to the old sayd sawe,) lay the naked sword to the side, that here after it might bee deamed not Brittaine but Rome, commaunding all gowld and silver to bee figured and engraved with the image of Cæsar.’ This saythe hee. But in the newe Historie a manne mai reade of great bickeringe and manlie conflictes beweeene Claudius, and that Guinderius, being slaine bie treason, that his brother Arviragus renewed the warrs, not ceasinge to prosecute the same until Cæsar hadd geeven in marriage his dowghter Genissa, or Gemissa, to Arviragus, being chosen kinge in the rowme of his brother. But trulie, wheras Claudius, accordinge to Suetonius, of three wives had these doughters, Claudia, Octavia, and Antonia, commaundinge Claudia, not begotten bie him, to be caste beeefore the dores of her mother Herculanilla, whom hee had devorced, mareinge Antonia to Cneius Pompeius the Great and successivelie to Faustus Silla, two noble yong menn, and his other doughter Octavia to his sonne in lawe Nero, surelie it is as unlikelie to bee beelieved as unsemelie to bee saide that Claudius shoulde geeve his doughter Genissa in marriage to Arviragus. Yet, whether hee finished bie weapon or leage his exployetes, truthe it is that after hee hadd subdued Orchades Iles, in the ocean sea beyonde
Brittaine, at his returne to Rome hee triumphed in great pompe, and in remembrance thereof his sonne whome hee begatte on Messalina, firste caulled Germanicus, hee surnamed Britanicus. While these thinges weare attempted, newes weare broughte that in Brittaine there sprang a newe insurrection: whereunto Caesar as embassadowre promised Vespasian, which was an ominus beginninge of good fortune to comm, for at one battaile hee appeased all seditions, and broughte the Ile of Wighte, adjoyninge to Brittain, under the Romaine dominion. Arviragus, lest heereafter enie more hee shoulde bee mooved with vaine hope to rejecte and acquite him of the yoke of the Romaines, and somwhat stirred with olde age (which drewe on), is reported to have confedered in peace with his enemie: but bie the authoritee of Cornelius Tacitus wee maye well gether that the Romaines being princes were wonte to ordayne certaine hedde rewlers, namelie, legats or solliciters in Brittaine, which bie there presence migthe the easlier bridell and keepe under the inhabitants, which thing allso Gildas affirmeth, as wee have saide before. Wherfore, after Vespasian being under the empire of Claudius, valiaunce and corage reentringe in to the herites of Britons, it fortuned that firste of all consuls Aulus Plautius was legate, and next unto him Ostorius Scapula, whoe, at his verie first comminge, hadd great troubles; for a stoute companie of the Britishe people, then named Iceni, accompanied with their borderers, taking lustlie their weapons in hande, pitched there pavilions in place moste likeliest to anoye their adversaries, and eche whear chased the Romaines. But the embassador, well experienced that mistruste or confidence depended on the first casualltie of the battaile, with all haste possible meetethe them, destroienge eche wheare suche as weare straienge, and afterwarde the rivers Anton and Severne hee minded to beesett with his tents, but these forenamed Iceni manfullie withstanded him. Thus beinge frustrate of his hope, he proceeded to the tentes of his enemies, with whome when hee had encountered, he overcamme them manfullie, and, using the opportunitie of his victorie, ledde
his armie in to the Welche people cauled Cangi, ingroching bootie Cangi.
echewhere plentifullie, and thus hasting towards his foes he was
not farre fromme the sea which boundeth towards Ireland,
wherebie it apeareth that that battiel was fought in the farthest
partes westwarde, and that the people whome I called Iceni were Iceni.
dwellers abowte Severne and Anton, as the inhabitants at this
daye of Wells, Excester, Worciter, Shrewsburie, and Hereforde;
and that Anton is the river which menne call Veyus, which run-
nethe bie Hereford and joyneth with Severne not farre from the
entrie thereof, even as it is semblable well knowne that thei which
were named Cangi did inhabite the inner partes of Walls west-
warde. In the middest of these affairs the Romane capitane was
withdraune bie reason of certaine discordes sodainlie enkended
emonge the northen menn called Brigantes, which all hee did
mitigate at his first cominge, puttinge to deathe the cheefe stirrers
of the commotion. In this place al.so, bie conjecture, Brigantes
possessed that parte of the Ile which at this day hath on the
northe parties the diocesse of Yorcke, on the weste the diocesse
of Carleil, on the sea coste Lancastre and Kendall; which thinge
also is moste plaine in Tacitus, whoe reportethe there citte of all
others to have benn most populus, as it is evident that Yorcke
hathe heretofore beene, as maye well bee gathered bie the situacion
thereof. In the meane season the Silurians, a moste feerke kinde
of menne, chose the an armie, trustinge to the noblesse and man-
whode of one Caratacus, a manne moste politique in warfare, and
of all others the cheefe, whoe was reported to have beene kinge of
them whiche were then called Ordoluces. To represse the force
of this manne and others, a newe garison of owlde soldiers weare
brought to the towne then named Camulodunum. And here wee
maye a littell and commodius streye from our race.

I thincke Camulodunum (sithe there maye doubte arise therein) Camuladunum
was in times past in that place whereas now is Dancaster, for the
verie analogie of the woorde, representinge a certaine memorie of
tentes and fortresses, seemethe to reteine the name of a place
CAMD. SOC.
...chosen for refuge and succours in battalie. Likewise Pountfrevye, which is somewhat nearer, xviii. miles on this side Yorcke, hathe a certaine probabilitiee in this case, allbeit the place hathe more pleasauce then natural munitions. A castell is yett there extante with somme signes and remainders of a temple, which was there dedicated to Claudius Caesar, wherein weare two statues or images, the one of the Goddes Victorie, the other of himme selfe Claudius, unto which place it is to bee conjectured that his colonie and armie was broughte on all sides to minister aide and rescawse to his Romaines. This is the opinion of Tacitus, writinge thus in his xivth. booke: Moreover, saithe hee, there was a temple consecrate to the heroi-call Claudius, as an aulter testifiege perpetuall imperie. Nether was it hard to spoile or sacke this place of recepte and harboratione, beinge destitute of all defence, while our soldiers did more endeveor to pleasantnes then neade or opportune. This sayth hee. 'Certis, this place semed marveloussé good to defende the Romaine Province, which at that season was noe small that it extended not to the River Tine, which was within littel after the uttermoste bounde thereof, as the selfe same Tacitus wittenssethe, whereas he mentioneth the Romaine choossetaines which weare sent into the Ilond after Vespasian, writing in this wise in the life of Agricola. The noble Claudius beinge founder of the woorkemanshipp, and transportinge his legions and aides, associating Vespasian in to parte of his affaires, which was a luckie principle of fortunate successe to comme; for the people was subdued, the kings taken prisoners, and Vespasianus hereunto assigned bie destenie. Their firste governor among the consuls was Aulus Plautius, and nexte unto him Ostorius Scapula, bothe justlie to be renowned for their martaill prowresse, bie whom the nearer partes of the region was brought in to the fourme of a province, and a colonie or place of receite and retinueordeined, etc.' Wherefore it seemeth the Romaine province at that time was not verie ample, sithe that onlie the first parte of the Ilonde (as Englonde in our dayse) was in theire
jurisdiction. Nether was the towne which I called Camulodunum out of their circuite, seing that there was encamped the garrison of the olde grande warriers for the defence thereof; as it also well agreeth with Ptolomei, who accounteth it not to bee farr distante from Yorcke, yea allmost in that verie place wheare wee bie likelie argument did make late demonstration. An other testimoniall that it consisted in the first soile of the Ilond is this, that Julius Agricola, whenne v. yeares withowte intermission hee chased with battell the Brittons lienge beyonde the river Tweede, and finallie conquered them, whereof Tacitus writeth the diligentlie, Camulodinum is not once mencioned, which if it hadde benn situat in those costes, the Romaine legions noe doubte wolde have used the commoditee thereof ether in passage, retiringe, or sojorninge their. But now again to the matter. Thus Caratacus, a puissant manne emonge the inhabitants of Cheviot hills, choosing suche place for the plantinge his artillerie, as throughge the mountaines might seeme more hard and greevos to his adversaries, encouraged his menne, surelie affirminge that that daye and that armie shoulde ether attaine aeternall libertie or otherwise incurre perpetuall servilitee; severallie naminge the elders which hadd waged battell with Julius Cæsar, and soe conferring manie things, put them in assured hope of uncertaine victorie. Ostorius at this time used nether silence nor ydelenesse, but after like exhortations drewe towards his enimie and gave the onsett. Beefore hand-strokes thei firste bickered with dartes and slinges, afterward pressinge together in thronge thei used the ministerie of their swordes. The contention for a good season was noe lesse daungerous than douftfull, till at lengthe the Brittons were constreyned to forsake the toppes of the hills, wherunto the lighte harnesed menne ascendinge committed great slaughter. The wife of Caratacus, the dowghters and brothers, yealding themselves were receaved, and he himselfe imploringe the assistaunce and faiethe of Carthumandua, queene of the Brigants or Yorckshieremenn, was yealded uppe faste bownde to the overcommers. And thus Car-
tacis, the trumpe of whose faire was blewne throughge owt all Italie bie cause hee ix yeares maintayned warres with the Romans, was brought to Rome emonge other gregall captives, whoe, in presence of the Emperoure, with presente and bolde spirit, is reported to have spoken to Claudius Caesar in this wise: 'Moste redowghted Caesar, if prosperitee had benn other correspondent to mie will, or hadde accorded with mie fortune and condition, noe doubtte I would have visited this cittie as a manne at free will and libertie, and trulie with all mie hart showlde I have seene it, seinge that I accompted it parte of mie felicitee, for I did allwayse so much abhorre the refussall of peace, that moste willinglie I wowlde have embraced the same beinge once offered; and, next to the francheise and freedom of mine owne contrie, I nothinge desired more ardentlie then the æquall amitte of the Romans. But now chaunce hathe soe served that I showlde fall into thie handes, to this intente (I suppose), that I, being in sundrie wise blessed and esteeming mie selfe in heauen, might the better understande how miche affiance I owght to have in humaine casualties; and that thow beeng conqueror mightes purchase the more renowne, bothe that thow haste conquered, and allsoe spared and forgeeven, for soe I truste yt shall please the to doe accordinge to thie singular grace and clemencie.' With these woordes Caesar beinge stirred to jentines, graunted life to himme, his wife, and brethere; soe that, accordinge to the olde proverbe, fortune is a friend to the valiant and coragius. After these exploits the Silurians (being the nexto people) of a sodaine set uppon the cheefe ruler of the tentes, with the hole bende and legion their left in garison and defence, whome thei hadd taken prisoner if aide had not speedelie beene ministered. Nevertheless manie Romaines were slaine in that howrley burlei, for thei abowe all other did moste deadlie hate the Romaine name, being enkendeled therunto with the cruell saing of the captan, being echewheare spredd and blowne, which was this: 'Even as the Sicambers in auncient time were cleane extripped that thei mighte bee translated in to Fraunce, soe
the verie name of the Silurians muste bee abolished. Wherefore thei entrapped two companies of there garrison, foolishlie spoylinge throwghe the blinde covitise of there guides, and so bie their largesse in geeving bootie and releasing captives, thei allured others to slippe the coller; wherewith encumbered and with manie cares oppresed, Ostorius died, whose deathe beinge intimated to Claudius Caesar, leste the province shoulde want a governor, he substituted Aulus Didius, whoe taking his jorne withoute delaye, fownde great broyles in all estates, perceaving the legion whereof Manlius Valens was lodesmann to bee a littell befoore putt to flighte. Nevertheles in shorte space he appeased all thinges, reducinge the Silurians to conformitee, and defendinge the queene Carthumandua from the injuries of Venusius, who hadd wedded her, and minded to expulse her owte of the kingdom for the late sowne seade of sedition. At this season weare certaine citties francklie geeven to Cogidunus, whoe remained faihthefull untill the time of Domitian.

Avitus succeeded in embassage into this province under the Emperour Nero, at which time alse was receaved noe small overthrowe. Verannius beinge next unto him diid onlie preserve that which was gotten, and died within the revolucion of a yeare. Then Suetonius Paulinus (a mann whome fortune and vertue did contende mooste to adorne) obtained Brittaine; whoe, gevinge assaulte to the Ile Mone, the verie refuge of runawais, subdued the same at his first arrivall, as wee shewed at the begininge of this woorcke and description of the same Ilond. The Brittaines, having gotten the absence of Paulinus, debated amongst themselves the miseries of servage and villanie; thei conferred their wrongs and injuries; they murmured that noe availe cam bie sufferance, but a more open entrie to greater distresse; thei discoursed how the legate spente his dayse in their bluddshed, and the solliciter in the procuringe their goodes used crueltie; in consideration whereof thei all enflamed mutuallie theire hertes to battale, being somewhat more pricked forwarde with the knavishe dealinge
of the rascal soldiers towards them; for Prasutagus, king of the
nation called Igeni, made Cæsar his heire and his two doughters,
supposinge bie suche obeisaunce to attaine the more saftie from
injuries to his stemme and kingdom; but it fortuned himm farre
otherwise then hee surmised, for his kingdom was wasted of the
Centuriens, his wife called Vodicia bannished of the owlde can-
cred soldiers, his doughters distained with lecherie, his piers
cleanse stripped of their substance, his frindes and acquaintance
numbered and recounted amonge bond slaves and peasants.

Moreover the olde servitors, being brought butt a littell before
into the abode or harborow of Camolodunum, did echewhere dis-
turbne manie owte of their houses and grownde, callinge all bie
the reproche of slaves as if thei had ben captives. Besides this, in
the temple erected to Claudius, preestes, under the pretext of re-
ligion, distroyed, spoiled, and consumed the goodes and wealthe
of all menn. Then the terrible woonders and portentuus prog-
nostications which at that time was fixed in the ieyes of all men
did not a littell provoke them; for the image of the goddesse Vic-
torie at Camulodunum turned backe as thoughe it gave place to
the enemies: the ocean sea flowed in appearance like bloodde,
and the printe of menns boddies remained on the shore: the
women, as it weare intoxicate with madnes, did prophesie in
songes that their deathes day was comme: soe that the Britaines
weare animated with hope, the olde Cæsarien warriars dismaied
with dispaire. These and suche like things, whether thei were
donn bie the illusion of menn or devells, or whether indeed there
bee enie force in the nature of things, which the baser sorte doe
som time superstitiouslie note as signes and woonders, I would
gradlie have lett passe, lest wee should seeme to bringe inconve-
nience to that religion which, teachinge all things to be ordered
bie the Divine providence of Godde, dothe rejecte suche vaine
southsaings of things to comme, if the nature of an historie
woulde soe permitte, which will that all things trulie donne
should bie faythefullie written. Wherfore nothing shalbee op-
probrius unto us, ether in this place or elsewheare, declaring suche thingges but to the follie of menne, whoe like olde wiches have gonne abowte with suche fore tokens to attaine the knowlege of things ensewinge; and this have I said partlie to thentent that noe manne should to farre welter in suche fanatike and fond obser-vations; therefore even from the beginninge I thought goodd to speake of suche matters beefor hande, bi cause wee ernestlie minde that the reader shoulde incurre noe error: but now to the matter.

Voadicia emonge the reste didde chieflie exasperate their mindes with great plaintee of her wrongs which she hadd sustai-ned at the Romaines, whoe, bie cause she burned of all others in greatest hatred, it was broughte abowght, herselfe beinge capitane, (for in rule-bearinge there was noe difference of kinde,) that a great parte of the people, persuadinge the menn called Trinobantes to refuse their dutie and homage, didde sodayuelie slide from the Romaines, in hedlong rage with weapon rising against them. On the other side, the auncient fightingmenn astonied at the first commotion of the Brittains, beetooke themselves to a certaine temple, wheras all were slaine from the first to the laste, and consequentlie a newe legion which at the guiding of Petus Cerealis, then embassadoure, camme to their succours, was driven to flie and slaine. Catus Decianus being at the same instance a solliciter for Brittaine, slinkinge in the middest of this feare, passed into Fraunce. This fiercenes of the Brittons streched even to the incorporate towne called Verulamium, throughe the citzizens of Rome and their confederats, bie computation beinge slaine of the feeble multitude about seventie thousands menne. Within short space Paulinus was present, and proceeded to Lon-don, dawbting whether hee shoulde chose that place for the per-fourmance of his battayle: wherefore, departinge from hence, hee tooke a place with narrow entries, and behind soe beesett with woodde that hee might bee with owte guile or danger, knowinge for certeinte that he could not bee invaded but before his face.
Hee hadd abowte x. thousand soldiers with him, in whome having good confidence hee encountered with a mayne companie of ene-
mies. The Britons farre surmounted in the multitude of fightinge
menn, and therfore thei skirmished at the beginninge with sutch
assured hope of victorie that the woomen stoode bie in cartes and
waggons to beehoulde the combate. The place wherein thei foughte
was verie streyght, and therfore commodius to the exiltee of the
Romains; the contention from the first onset was bluddre and
terrible, but in fine the Britains, whoe hindred one another's
strokes through the narrownes of the place, not abell enie longer
to withstande their adversaries, were putte to flighte, and echec where
skattered in great slaughter, for almoste xxx. thousand were slaine.
Voadicia, cheefe governes of the battale, lest shee shoulde fall into
the hands of her enimies, ended her life bie empoysoninge her
selfe. The estate of the Ile from that time forth was more quiet,
being well maintained bie Petronius Turpillianus, whoe folowed
Suetonius, and after that of Trebollius Maximus, whoe, in noe
wise provokinge the Britains to writhe, did tender and preserve
them. Here will I geve sufficiente warninge that Igeni, as thei
differ in one letter from Iceni, soe weare theie a divers people, as
wee maye wel perceave in Tacitus, and that thei inhabited the
northe parties of the contrie, the which in these our daise hath to
name Northumberland; nether was London the citty called Tri-
obantum, as manie conjecture, as it well appeareth bie testi-
monie of the selfe same Tacitus; for Suetonius, having overcommed
the Ile Mone, camm throughe an overthwarte waye to London as
to a place of safetie, which hee wold never have donne if that
towne hadde benne in the contrie of men named Trinobantes,
which broke theire leage accordinge as others didde; wherebie
allsoe it appeareth that the Trinobantes did not westewarde dwell
on this side the townes named Watlingester, which in time paste
was righte over against the village nowe called Sancte Allbanns,
xx miles from London, for even thether reached this furor of their
adversaries. Trulie it hadde benne noe safe passage for Suetonius
Paulinus to have taken his journe to London if that Trinobantes hadd possessed that parte of the Ionde which wee call Essex, whose borders towche the teritorie of London, as Ptolomei writeth, whoe placeth the Trinobantes at the flowinge and ebbing of the river Thames, and termith the their auncient towne Camudola, which now hath to name Cowlchester; yeat are their somme which affirmeth that that was the cittey Trinobantum which at this daye hathe to name Northinghamon, which is well declared bie the corruptinge of the name of the towne in the first two letters, for the ruralls in English call it Tranton, bie the which runnethe the river Nyne, which now hath the verie same name that the towne. But conjectures taken owte of divers opinions are woont bie reasoning and altercation to make thinges dowbtfull, otherwise no thinge to bee dowtbed in; which hathe chaunced in seaking the dwelling places of the Trinobantes: for at the lengthe their chaunced olde monuments in to mie handds whearin this was written, ‘The Trinobantes allso, hearinge the terrible brute of the comming of the Romaines, did speedilie defend their cittee, furnished their shipps with armowre, to defende the borders of their contrie abowte the entries of the river Thames.’ These woordes agree with Ptolomei, and plainlie shewe that wee ought to agree with them bothe, for bie these testimonies it is evident that London was never the towne Trinobantum, but that thei inhabited the este coste bounding on the sea, whose cheef towne is Coelchester. Now may I retiere to mie purpose. Even as I thinke the people whoseof Cæsar maketh mention to have ben in the middest of the ilonde, named then Cenigmani, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, and Cassi, which places are now inhabited of the people of Coventrie, Leicester, Northingham, and Derbie, soe I doe gesse (if it be but a gesse) that besides London this onlie one citte Ordovicum keepe the the primitive name, allbeit wee adding this letter N. to the beginninge call it Nordovicum or Norwiche. Trulie the posteritee, that is to weete, Pictes, Scottes, Englishmen, Danes, and Normans, being lesdes of the Ile, did voluntarilie
chaunge all thinges, esteeming it as a monument to gieue newe appellation to the places which thei hadd conquered. At this time (as wee reherced aboue) was Arviragus cheefe kinge in Britaine, in the dayse of the Emperour Nero. Juvenall, in his iiij. Satire, where hee flatterethe Nero (for it cannot bee referred to Domitian who reigned longe after) for the catching of a birte saith thus:

Of greate triumphe a signe thou haste, some kinge thou shalt spall,
Or from the Britishe chariot Arviragus shall fall.

At which time that same Joseph, (as the Evangeliste Matheue witnessethe was borne in the cittey Arimathea, and buried Christes boddie,) whether it weare bie chaunce, or of purpose, or at the apointment of Godd, with noe small companie cam into Britaine, wheras bothe hee and his fellowshipp preaching the woord of Godd and sincere secte of Christe, manie were trained to the trewe piete, and being indewed with the right saving helthe wear baptized. These menn, surelie inspired with the hollie ghoste, obtaining of the kinge a littel grownde to inhabit, nere unto the towne named Wells, or not aboove iiij. miles distante, did sowe the seade of our new religion, where at this daye is a gorgeous cherche, and faire monasteryre of relegijs menne of the order of Sainct Benet, called Glasterburie. These were the firste principles of Christian saythe in Britaine, which in processe being againe allmoste extinguished, Kinge Lucius beinge baptized (as wee shall here after make rehersall) didde noe lesse woonderuslie lighten then devout increasce. For Gildas witnessseth, that from the verie firste divulga—tion of the holi ghost, Britaine moste desieruslie embraced the same. Marius, next in desc
t from Arviragus, the LXXII. yeare of our Salvation was created kinge, whoe within shorte season hadd great warrs with the Pictes, whoe, as they weare a people of Scithia, and verie neare to the Gothes in contrie and manners, soe weare they a crewell nation and marvelous prone to fighete. Som men have lefte in memorie that thei weare called Pictes, ether of the blewe colours wherewith thei weare peincted, ether of their bluncket heres, ether of certaine marckes made with whot iron,
wherof hee that was more honorable had the most deepest and eminent printes, hee that was more abject and base had lesser and smaller. Somme supposed that they weare the people called Agathirsi, and therfor to be called Picts, biecause thei didd bee-smeere their limmes and visages that it cowlde not bee wasshed awaye. But wherof soe ever the name of Pictes was derived, most certaine it is that thei weare a people of Scithia. For thei on a time, with a goodd companie of shippes and there capitaine named Rodericus, roving abowte the ocean sea for spoyle and bootie, camme into the ile Ireland, desieringe this newe dwelling place of the Scotts, whoe (likewise having their originall of springe of the Scithians, albeit thei derive their descent another waye) weare then lorde of the Ilond. The Scottes, thincking it nothinge for their availe to entertaine a warlike and indigent people, dissembling and counterfeiting a certaine naturall remorse and loove, alleaged the tenuitee and streightnes of the soyle, enformente them that Brit-taine was not farre of, an Ile noe less plenteus then greate, and yet allmoste desolate, exhorting them to passe thither, promisinge there aide and industrie. The Pictes, whoe were more envegeled with the desier of praye then inflamed with the ambition of imperie, in noe wise abidinge, sayled towards the Ilonde, wheare at their first arrivall thei seasoned on a peace of the Northe parte, and their espienge fewe inhabitants, thei practised spoylinge; they used ofte invasions, and beganne to strey farther and farther; which thinge the Britsishe princes forthe with perceaving determined to meate them in armes, and hastelie setting on them which with owt all feare wandered in the fieldes, slewe their capitan, and overcommed at the first conflicte. The Pictes, which weare survivors after this overthrowe, conveyed themselves into the uttermoste partes of the Ile, which wee call Cathnesia in our dayse; whoe as men reporte lunghe after possessed all the grownde lienge betweene the wall erected bie the noble worckemanshippe of the Romaines (whereof I will intreat in som other place) and the mouuntaine Grampius, lienge somewhat estewarde; and bie these
shiftes the Pictes becam great lordes in that parte of the Ilonde, whoe weare the seconde people which of straungers after the Romains entred Brittaine, obteininge dominion therein, which was the LXXXVIJ. yeare of our Sallvation. But after that thei hadde recovered some good successe after this unluckie overthowre of their fellowshippe, thei rejoised that at the lengthe thei hadde established their seates and dwellings in Brittaine; yet did thei easlie foresee that neades it moste com to passe that their stocke showldi consume, and in noe wise surmounte the age of a mann, for wante of womman kinde, (suche is the chaunce that continually there is some defect or obstacle to hinder or withstande the perfectnes and consummation of a mannes felicitie,) for nether hadd they hope of propagation and children at home, nether as yet weare they joned in matrimonie with thir borderers: wherfore bie a common consent they sent embassadours to Brittains, requiering assiaunce and mariaghe for thse strangers. The embassage was hevelie harde, soe much was it contemned of all menn, soe lothe they weare to joyne bloodd and issewe with aliens and foriners; which thing notwithstandinge the Pictes tooke greevoslie, neverthelesse adjudging this injurie ought be revenged at an other time and means, sent unto them in Ireland, whoe were content to exhibite woomen on this condition, that as often as there chaunced altercation in chosinge the kinge, for default of lineall descent of heires male, then they should apoint somme of the progenie of these women, which thinge as it is manifestlie knowne was allwayse observed of the Pictes.

But nowe let us enter into the Actes and Deedes of the Romaines doonne in the Ilond.

Next unto Trebellius Maximus (whoe departed not without ignominie, bie reason of a certaine tumulte ingendered of bestlie sluggeshenes in the Oste,) Vectius Volanus was cheefe ruler in Brittaine. After him Petilius Cereales, whoe hadde to doe with a certaine sorte of disorderd men, whome hee vanquished and chastised for not obeying his commaundements. Then Julius Frontinus,
whoe allso subdued som others refusing to obeye. Finallie, under the empire of Vespasian, Julius Agricola obteined this province, even then trobelus and dowbtfull, bie whose prowess and man-
whode the Romaine armes beecamm mucho more terrible to the Brittons, whoe founde the soldiers recelus and laysie with ydel-
nesse, and the contrie it selfe wonderuslie hastinge to stirre uppe rebellion. For whearas the Norffolke menne hadd allmoste clene destroied one winge of the armie sojorninge in theire quarters, for the same cause the whole region conceaved allmoste assured confi-
dence to recover libertie ; which thinge Agricola understandinge, hasted with maturitee to resiste this eminent perrill; wherefore, crienge sodainlie to armes, after hee hadd gathered a small number, bie cause the Norfolke menn durste nott enter fighte if herin seemed to be enie equalitee, hee therefore sett on them with weapon, bringinge a great sorte to confusion, and nott mindinge thus to cease, as one that well knew how favorable fortune muste bee taken and prosecuted: in the same moment allmos thee tooke the Ile Mone, which beinge woonne a litel beefore by Paulinus, did streyght rebell uppon his departure. After these thingges thus administrd, hee, desieringe to roote owte the occasions of dissen-
tion, did nevertheless exercise and travaile his menne in armes and watchinges, (as he was himsele moste prudentlie experi-
enced in warfare,) leaste the vertue of ther mindes showl languishe and feynt throughe ydelnes of boddie. Moreover hee endeavored to bewtisfe the Brittons, being rewde for the moste parte, with manners and ordinances, encouranginge them to builde temples, marckett places, and bowses, extollinge suche as weare prompte, reprovinge and chasteninge the sluggishe, that bie amulation they might bee enflamed to more civalitee; for wheare as publicke honor is notte attributed to vertewe, their canne be noe zeale ether to vertewe or glorie, he especiallie admonished that the children of princes showlde bee fostered in good artes, preferringe their witts and inclination beefore the Frenchemenn, bie cause that to their power they affected the Romaine eloquence hee gave them lawes
and broughte in were certaine decrees of the Romans, wherebie it came to passe that in littell space the Britaines received excel-
lescie in behaviour, their attire and fourme of life beegaine to bee much more delicate, sowe that even then the magnificence of dinners
and suppers didde passe through outte all honeste houses, beinge
commonlie termed humanitee, wheras indeade, as Tacitus saith, it
is a certaine bondage and superfluitee. I might saie that the same
exquisites in banquetinge did from thence discend unto our
time to Englishe people. This was the diligence of Agricola in the
winter, and his deeds worthie memorall the two firste years of his
embassage. Afterwarde achieving manie and prosperus conflictes,
and triumphing over manie unknowne people, he minded to geeve
assault to that parte of Britaine which wee call Scotlond, bound-
ing towards Irelonde, wherunto noe small number of fugitives
wear retiried, addressinge his armie and furnishinge a navie, that
he might skirmishe bothe on sea and on lande; wherfore, entringe
the river Forthe he passed it, notwithstandinge the bridge was
broken, and assayth expugnation of divers castells, which thing
after it was knowne, the Britons gatheringe eche where menn of
armes, ranne with speed, mindinge bie the demolition of the brige
to entrappe their enemie beettweene the rivers Forthe and Taus.
But Agricola turninge towards them without difficultie putthem to
flighte, chasing them to the flowe of the river Taus. And theise
were the exploits of the iij. yeare. Agricola after this, minding to
serche owte the extreemest borders of the Ilond, at the first race
went to the river Glote and there pitched his tentes, where the
river, in old time Bodotria, now called Levine, runneth into Glote.
In this season the Britons environed him in thicke rowtes, on
whome hee runninge in violent wise, he drave them to suche ex-
treemitee that they were clene beaten owte of the river in to an
other Ile, as hee supposed, bie cause the river aboute the entries
was verie deepe and brode; and these were the facts of his iiiij.
yeare. In the next sommer Agricola, sendinge for a navie, passed
over Glote bie shippe, enforcinge straunge nations to yealde, and
ordering garrisons about the sea costes bendinge towards Ire-
londe. He there harborowed for that winter; thus was the v.
yeare of his embassage spente. After this, takinge deliberation
bie all kinde of meanes howe to enter the inner parties of the
ilonde, hee was greatlie discouraged with the difficultie of the
fennes and mountains, which bothe notwithstandinge in conclu-
sion this invincible warrior overcamme, whoe, as juste rewarde of
his labour and peines, toke noe small bootie in those quarters:
for thether the savage people haunted with theire gooddes and
cattailes as it weare to their laste refuge: and for bie cause hee
understode bie espies that his adversaries satt bie the waies in
sundrie rowtes, mindinge diverslie to bruste forthe on him, there-
fore he distributed his armie into iij. companies. While thes
things were thus ordered, the Romaine navie, being assigned as it
weare to glaunce alongeth bie the Ile, didd ransacke all the havens,
wherebie it camme to passe that the armie on lande and that
which was on sea, to the great delectation of their minds, did often
meate in one place, and there eche manne shewed and recorded
his manlie gestes, extolinge one an other to the heavens, even as
it commeth to passe in prosperitie whereof everie most towarde
will have himselfe partaker, but not of adversitee. The Brittons in
the meane time, which hooved a farre of, as soone as they well
knew the shippes which they hadd espied, thei weare greatlie
agreede, in that the secrets of there sea being disclosed and open
to their enemie, thei accounted that their was noe safe receptacle
for suche as were vanquished, and thinckinge with themselves that
there was noe foyle or spotte of mischief unsuffered, retieringe
desperatlie to their weapons, of a sodaine invaded the newe legion
in the nighte season, as that which was of lesse strengthe and
habilitie to resiste. The fighte was sharpe on bothe sides, untill
suche time as Agricola issuengne owte of his tentes succored and
refresshed his traveled soldiers. Nowe the Brittons beinge againe
putte to flighte, and yeat beeleevenge that their enemies attayned
not the superiorite soe muche bie theire peculer prowesse as bie
the occasion and pollicie of their capitaine, didd nothinge suppress or abate their corages. But when sommer drewe towards his uttermoste date, weapons for a while weare laied aside, bie reason of moste noysom tempestes then fallinge; and so the vj. yeare of his embassage broughte some quietnes. Nevertheless, when as the springe time was comme, Agricola entred into Calidonia, and pitched his pavilions bie the river Taus, the which as wee saide befoere runnithe into the ocean of Germanie, being receaved of the sea in trubelous gowle, more then two miles broade. Then the Brittons, perseavinge their laste daunger to hange over their hedds, were fullie in themselves resolved ether for their libertys to die honestlie, or for the victorie to contende manfullie. Wherefor first of all with sacrifice and solemne othe thei made and celebrated a common conspiracie of all their cittys; secondarilie, thei broughte their wives and children to the mountaine Grampius, and, having a place feetlie selected for the plantinge of their tents, theye revestred their yowthe in armowre; and, leaste discorde might springe throwghe the multitude of governours, which is the onlie plague and hinderance of the goodd ordering and success in bataille, the highest titell of imperie was committed to Calgacus, a mann of noe lesse prudence then valianc, conceavinge the better hope in that the Visipians, of whom an armie was brought to the verie shore, did slippe awaye from the Romains at that same instant, whom being a people of Germanie, and dwellers on Rhene, whereas they weare sente in aide to the Romaines, they traitorualie slewe their Centurien, and, desiers to finde newe dwelлинge places, were all most all utterlie perished and piened with famine. But when as Agricola badd as it were undermined the purpose of his adversaries, hee forthewith pas-singe the river Taus placed his tentes in a level grond on as neare as hee coulde to the bottom of the mountaine Grampius; and thus their mindes being on bothe sides provoked, thei shortlie came to hande strokes. But Calgacus first gave instigation to his

* putte. interlin.
liege menn, in ample oration declaringe how woorthelie libertie was to bee reputed of all sorte, as then the which nothing coulde next unto the goddes bee more leefe or deare unto mankinde, upbroydinge the Romaines in mennie respectes for theyre avarice and pride, terminge them the robbers and theeves of the whole worlde. On the other side, Agricola exhorted his companie aliso in manie woordes, with stowte stomacke to endewre this last labor of eight years, as the finall end of all warres, wherebie they might happelie bee replenished with the abowndant fruited of victorie. Thus the armie of ether partie beinge sett in order, the battayle was see feareselie attempted as whoe shulde say eche mann thristed other's life, which being continued untill eeven tide, nothinge seemed more conuenable to the Brittans then to encompasse their enemies on their backes; but Agricola preparing iiiij. winggs of horsmen for their comming, did cleane disapointe them, and constreine them to flie, of whome weire slaine more than x. thowsande, and of the Romaines aliso a great numbere. Then Agricola taking hostages commaunded his shippes to reteurne, and the residewe of his legion to repare to their winteringe places. These woorthie factes were doonne, Domitian beinge emperowre, which provoked him to hate and envie Agricola, (being him selfe a manne nothing favorable or frindlie to vertewe,) for in shorte space hee was called backe, to bee Leeve-tenant of Siria, now lienge voide bie reason of the dethe of Attilius Rufus. Next unto him succeeded Cneus Trebellius, whom Domitian apointed to bee Præsident of Brittaine. This was the estate of the Britishe affaires when Marius was kinge, of whome Tacitus maketh noe mention.

This Marius reygned xlviiij. years, levinge behinde himme his sonne Coyllus, whoe continued for a longe season at Rome, and Coyllus contrived all his yowthe in the service of their warres, and in other noble qualitees; whoe being crowned kinge after the deathe of his father, all the time of his reynge (which admounted to xlv. years), was greatlie beeloved of the Romaines, and confirminge peace
echewhere bie all meanes eschewed battaile; but the moste divine thinge and woorthy memoriall that ever hee didd to his stocke and posteritee was this, that hee broughte into this worlde his sonne Lucius, whoe of Brittaine kinges becamme the first Christian; for hee in the clxxxij. yeare of our salvation and the xiiiij. yeare of his owne reygne, inspired with the loove of the trew and indeficien religion, in his letters treated with Elewtherius, bishoppe of Rome, that washeinge him and his subjects in the celestiall fountaine hee wold adjoyne them to the nombre of Christians. Wherfore Fugatius and Damianus, menne of singular devotion, weare sent thether: who baptized the kinge, with all his familie and people, and abolishinge the fantasticall woorshippinge of devills, did instructe the nation with the right fourme of sincere pietie and godlines. At that time weare theare in Brittaine xxvij. preestes accordinge to the usage of the Gentiles, and iij. highe preestes, in whose rowmes soe maynie bishoppes and iij. arche bishoppes weare substitute, wherof one had his sea at London, the other at Yorke, and the thirde in the cittie of Legions, or Legicester, whereas weare builded churches as well sumpteus in ornamentes as magnificent in buildinge. Thus Brittaine, partlie through the industrie of Jhosephe of Aramathie (of whome wee made relation a littell beeefore), partlie through the hollie instructions of Fugatius and Damianus, of all provincies was the firste that openlie receyved the gospell: the which pietie they stifflie observed until the tyrannie of themperour Dioclesian, whoe aboeve all other, nexte unto Nero, most cruellie persecuted the Christians eeven allmoste to the verie death. For after that, as Gildas witnessethe, religion becamm soe cowlde through the severitee of persecutions, that unethes the cinders thereof apeared. Some there bee which ascribe the cherche of Saincte Peter a littell withowe London to Lucius, albeit divers other doe attribute it to Sigibert, as wee shall shewe hereafter; declaring allsoe how it camme to passe that these Saxons weare named Este Saxons, Middel Saxons, and Weste Saxons. This place, especiallie re-
nnowned through the burial of kings, is named Westminster, vul-
garlie, bie cause it liethe westwarde; but their are divers other
causes allsoe wherebie it is greatlie adourned and garnished, as the
highe street, the kinges pallace adjoining an abbaye in times
paste of moncks of the order of Sainct Benet, whereof it was
named a monasterie; allsoe an auncient cherche dedicated to
Sainct Stephen, the sanctuarie gevinge immunitie to guiltee per-
s ons, and the common place or barre for the administration of
lawe and pleytinge of causes. I finde in a booke of great anti-
quitee, yeat withoute name of author, that this place in times past
was on all sides environed with waters and called Thornie Ile; the
which name surelie dothe verie well allude with the name which
it hathe in our memorie, notwithstandinge that it is voide of
thornes; for the great multitude of hurtfull and guiltie persons
which weare wont to flie thether as to a sanctuarie, whilst menne
demanded causes and questioned with theim, they weare suffi-
cientlie pricked with thornes, that is to saye, they hadd compunc-
tion of theire vices. But Lucius, striken with cœlestiall gladnes,
that hee hadde trained his people to the perseverance of the true
Godde, least thei might enie more bee envegeled with the sorceries
and prestigiation of devles, he tooke awaye and inhibited to bee
used all prophane service, and, consecratinge to Christe suche tem-
ples as weare erected for the idolls of the jentiles, largelie adorned
them with his munificentie; finallie hee now moste gladlie and
diligentlie referred all his actions to the encrease and fortiﬁenge
of religion, in respect whearof he contemned all suche thinges as
mortall menne are woonte to embrace with admiration. Where-
fore this Lucius being emonge his menn the author of the æternall
light wherin him selfe didde especiallie shine, did leave the kingdom
to his posteritee (which he hadde receaved of his aunciters) not
embrued with the bloodd of menne for vaine glorie, not puffed uppe
with riches wrested owte of all costes, but ﬁrste havinge a noble
principle of quiet and reste, secondarilie established in excellent
orders and customs, ﬁnallie augmented in the divine religion, and
endewed with the moste sincere doctrine of Christe, exceadinge withoute controversie so muchoe all former princes, as things divine surmounte humaine affaires; he reigned xx. years, and dieng withowte issewe of his boddie, requiered the nobilitie to have singular regard of the common wealth, and that they would measure the utilitee of the vulgars bie the performance of their dewtie.

After the departure of Julius Agricola, the Brittons, especiallie suche as dwell beyonde Tweede, weare for a fewe yeaeres quiete, partlie bie reason their force was apaired, partlie beinge bounde bie the former surrender of their hostages. In which space Cneus Trebellius being legate; albeit he was of good forecaste, nevertheless the Romaine soldiers beinge restie, beeganne to quarrell emonge them selves, and not esteeminge the wordes of the embassadoure, became no lesse harmefull then dispiteus to the Brittons, whoe on the other side perceaving themselves overcharged with slaverie, and eche daye to bring increase of mischeefe, they conceaved a great confidence of the recoverie of libertie and preservacion of their contrie; wherefore with stowte stomacke they addressed themselves against the Romaines and straight invaded them; yeat advisedli inoughe, soe that (accordinge to the usage of their contrie) when neade should require they might speedelie convoy them selves into woodds and difficult places. There weare manie slaine on bothe parties, which ministred promptnes to the whole Ilonde to rebell; but Hadrianus, then emperoure, beinge certified of Trebellius as touching this commotion, at the firste utteringe passed the sea into Brittaine with an armie, whoe asswaged all the rage of the inhabitantes, and usinge curteos humanitie towards them made the Ile marvelous quiet; the bowndes and limites wheareof hee first of all prescribed and determined, if wee beleeve Spartianus: for hee neglectinge the region beyond Tweede, which wee call Scotlond, ether for that it was more barraine or that hee thoughte it lesse commodius to bee keppe, hee commaunded the same to bee limited of the river Tine. Wherfore from the entrie thereof to an other river called Eske, hee made a wall eeven to the
Irish sea, for Tine brusteth the forthe into the Germanian ocean. Others attribute this limitation of the Ile to Severus. Yeat after this the Brittons, burns the as well in hatred toward the Romaine legion, as proposing ther owne servile bee before their ies, contended againe to freedom; which thinge being once knowne Antoninus Pius, Emperoure at that season, sent Lollius Urbicus as embassadour in to Britaine, whoe after certaine conflictes caused them to continue their allegiaunce; yeat hee hadd not soo extinguished battaile, or cooled their corages, but that bie and bie they assaied ether to atteine their olde fraunchises, or to incurre farthere daunger. Wherfore M. Antoninus, who succeeded Pius, did after Lollius sende Calphurnius Agricola legat into Britaine, whoe, as Julius Capitolinus writeth, with facilitee vanquished and subdewed his foes. Afterward Pertinax beinge sente of Commodus in to the Ile, appeased all seditions rather bie wis- dom then weapon.

Thus the province was quieted, and Pertinax beinge revoked to Roome, after the deathe of Commodus, was made emperowe. Then to Clodius Albinus was committed the rule of the armie in Britaine, as Capitolinus in the treatie of his life beareth the warranties: after whome Junius Severus succeeded, beinge sent of Commodus, if wee beeleeve the same manne. But Herodianus writeth muche otherwise, whoe saith that Clodius Albinus was longe conversant in the Iland after the deathe of Commodus, and that the Emperoure Severus, beinge verie desierus to procure the distruccion of Albinus, transfreted into Fraunce; and againe, that Albinus pickinge forthe the verie strengthe of the Britishe armie departed owte of Britaine to meete with him, and, joyninge in battayle at Lions, the warlike valiaunce of the Britains was suche, that Severus was at the verie poine to have benne overthrowne, yeat Albinus in the ende was slaine. Then Heraclitus, as legat, was sent for the governance of the province, whoe Spartanus reporteth to have benne promised thither of Severus. But the Romaine estate was suche in Britaine abowte the cxcv. yeare of
our salvation, that, the worthie prince Lucius beinge deade, the
peeres of the realme by and bie entendinge there owne commoditee,
while everie manne was busied in the aspiringe to imperie, thei
began to sowe the sparckes of dissention; the which thing when it
camme to the knowlege of the Emperour Severus, beinge then
greatlie striken in years, hee tooke it nothinge heavelie, for hee
beinge a manie of nature somwhat to propense to the desier of
glorie, after his victories estwarde and in the northe partes, hee
wowlde have benne passinge gladde to have benne surnamed Bri-
tannicus. Moreover for the discorde of his two sonnes, Bassianus
Antoninus and Geta, wherewith he was marveluslie trobled, not
being able to reconcile them bie enie meanes for the greate hatred
which harteburned them, hee determined to leade them with him
into Britaine, partlie that these yowenge menne beinge disjoined
fromme the delicius cittee, mighte cleave together in there trouble-
som tentes, partlie that their eares beinge shutt from the plausible
tales of flatterers (which hee wrongefullie surmised to bee the cause
of their strife) thei mighte the eeslier accorde and fall in favor.
Wherefore, notwithstandinge his great age and that he was diseased
with the gowte, taketh his voyage into the Ilonde, accompanied
with his sonnes, whethe when hee was arrived, gatheringe soldiers
to gather with increase of puissance, he was shortlie at the poinece
to make warre. The Britons being amaze at the sodaine arrivall
of themperour, and feared allso with the great multitude in readines
against them, sente embassadours as towchinge peace and their
owne purgation to Severus; but he of purpose trifelinge with them
and seekinge delayse, and to muche greatie of honor, rather con-
descended to battaile then peace: wherefore manie skirmishes
were made with the Britons, and those more harde to the Ro-
maines then to themm, whose beinge wel inured with the places,
did often as necessitee urged use mockerie for fighte; and thus
battaile beinge discontinued, Severus, what for greefe and sedition
of his sonnes whearwith hee was vexed, and not a littell wasted
with owlde age, hee died after hee hadd reigned xviii. yeares;
whose bodie being burned and ashes put into a littell vessell of alabaster, was carried to Rome of his sonnes. But I am not aggrieved to bee of their minde whoe have lefte in memorie that Severus at the firste pacifenge that parte of the Ile which was tributarie to the people of Rome, didd wage battayle with the Pictes, of whome wee made mention a littell beeefore, whoe like theeves makinge ofte excursions sore annoyed the province. Herodianus dothe manifestlie shewe that they weare Pictes with whome Severus often hadde to doe, writinge thus of their demainor in thende of his thirde booke: 'They knewe not the use of garments, but gereded their weapons abowte their bellie and neckes, thinckinge that to bee an ornament and a token of riches, as other barbarus nations use gowlde; moreover thei peinote theiyr boddies in sondrie wise, in all pointes representinge the shape of beasts.' Thus saithe hee. But Severus, leste his enemies farre driven awaye owte of the region beyonde Tweede shoulde doe skathe unto other Britons, accordinge to the guise of robbers, he is reported to have limited the Romaine province, bileding a wall like a trenche in that place: wheras, according to Spartanus, wee declared that Hadrianus didde bylde it: thus the doctors dissente. Somme there are which as severe that this walle was made of sownde and whole stone, the trackes whereof are at this daye permanent. But Gildas saith that in the beeginninge it was not soe muche made of stone as of turffe, which was the cause whie it coulde not withstande the incursion of enemies; but afterwarde it was reedified onlie with stone, which at this time, althoghbe not wholie, maye bee perceaved bie the littel embattled towers in squall space distante. It was a righte princelie worcke, as bie the which not onlie the rigoure of the Pictes but the Scottes also was for a season repressed. But if wee geeve enie credite to this author, as moste assuredlie I beeleeve wee owght to doe, this wall was not erected by Severus, but more then two hundred yeare after bie Theodosius the sonne of Arcadius, and Valentinianus, the thride time possessinge the dominion of the weste partes, whearas it is evident that it was builded
whan Aetius, being capitaine, warred on the Burgonions, as wee will teache in an other place. In this pointe allmoste all late writers have erred, bie all meanes fallslie attributing this woorkce to Severus. But now I will returne a littell to Severus and his sonnes.

The emperowre Severus disseased in the Ilonde the cccxiiij. yeare of mann's salvation; after whose deathe his sonne, Bassianus Antoninus, surnamed Caracalla, restored peace to the Brittons, and, receavinge pledges of them, sente them unto Rome to the Senate for the better preservation of quietnes, which was the occasion whie the Britons afterwarde the lesse desisted from their dewtie and loyaltie. Afterwarde hee, departing towards Rome, slewe his brother Geta and obtained the empire alone. From this time for the space of lxxxvj. yeares the estate of the Ile was excedinge peaceable and quiet, when Carausius, under the empire of Diocletianus, governed the same the ccxc. of our salvation, of whome wee will speake hereafter; and it is neadeful that wee satisfie theim which noe lesse undiscreetlie then unadvisedlie have dreamed that Bassianus Antoninus reigned over the Brittons xxx. yeares (whereas hee beinge but xliij. yeares of age, regned onlie vj. years), and that he didde fighte in Britaine with Carausius, and finallie was slayne of himme, which one error dependinge on an other hathe caused manie to be deceived. For Antoninus, according to Herodianus and Aelius Spartanus, sojourning at Carris, a cittie of Mesopotamia, visited the temple consecrated to the moone as a goddesse, which being situate in that region but a littell from this cittie was hadde in great reverence of the inhabi-
tantes; he brought thither with himme a small trowpe of horse-
men, wherefore in the middeste of his jornie yt chaunced himme to goe aside accompanied with one manne onlie, to do the neces-
sitee of nature or untrusse a poynte, to the which place Martialis,
a centurien (partelie allured bie the fayre proffers of Macrinus,
livetenant, partelie stirred up with a private grudge, for the empe-
roure hadde slaine his brother), ranne thether speedelie at the
firste becke of his prince, and with his dagger thruste Antoninus throwghe as hee pulled downe his breeches: but wee will returne unto Carausius, whoe, being discended of base lineage, yet re-nommed throwghe his jolitee in warfare, when as Dioclesianus com-maunded himme to fortifie the costes of the ocean environing the Belges of France agaynst such Saxon pyrats as infested the seas, he was thoughte of purpose not to have coped with his enemies untill bee understoode that they weare laden with prays, that hee might semblablelie sacke them; nevertheles suche things as hee tooke didde hee not surrender to his provincials; wherfore being guiltee of his offence, as soone as it was disclosed unto himme that Maximianus Herculeus (whome Dioclesian hadde chosen as his coequall in imperie then being in France) hadd comamunded hym to bee slayne, he sodainlie slipped awaye into Brittaine, whome the Brittaines bie littell and littell, makinge a tyrante, abjecting the Romaine yoke, created him kinge. After which time there were manie conflictes made with him; but biecause hee coulde not bee overcomed he easlie obteined peace, and viij. yeares after possessed the Ile. But Alectus, one of his confederats in conclu-sion bie treason entred on him and slewe him; soe that, according to the olde proverbe, wickednes procede fromme the wicked. Hee also sett himselfe foorthe for the monarchie, whome forthe-with the Brittons saluted as their kinge, who likewise within shorte space after was himselfe of one Asclepiodotus, a certaine cheefe Justiciarie, not onlie defeated of his present dominion, butt allso beerefte of his life. And thus this region after cccc. yeare of our salvation, in which time also Brittaine was crewellie plagued with the crewelltie of Dioclesian moste bitterlie afflictinge the Christians, for theyre churches were overthrowne, and manie godlie persons, tormented with punishments, aspiered to the triumphe of martyrdome. In this raginge iniquitee of that recreant prince, admount-inge to the somme of xx. years (for soe longe he reigned), Albanus, a righte devoute manne, was put to deathe at his incorporat towne Werlamcester, right over againste the same place whareat at this

CAMD. SOC.
daye is a village resoundinge the martyrdome of the hollie manne called Sainct Albans, of the churche dedicated to this saincte, and of late yeares a religious house of monckes of thorder of Sainct Benedicte. This filthines, as Gildas wittnessethe, did so generallie plage the people and soe wasted the christian relligion, that in verie fewe it remained sownde and inviolate. Now to mie purpose.

Not longe after, when the Britisshe afferes beeganne to be in broyle and unstedfastnes, the inhabitants grevoslie bearinge the Romishe burdens, Constantius the nephew of Claudius bie his daughter, whome Diocletian with Galerius Maximianus prownowcnd with the title of Caesar, camme into Brittaine, and forthe with revived quietnes in the same, espousing in matrimonie Helena the dowghter of a certain prince Coill, a virgin of wonnerus goodlie beawtie. I have not thought goodd to agree with them which have lefte in memorie, that Helena was the concubine of one Constantius, of whom hee showlde begett one Constantinus, whoe nothinge more regarded then his favor towards Christians, and the encrease of Godds trewe religion. After this Diocletianus and Maximianus Herculeus voluntarilie beatakinge theimselfes to private life, Constantius and Galerius entred the imperiall throwne, the one beinge constreynd to devorse the dowghter of Dioclesian, the other Helena; Constantius married Theodora the dowghter in lawe of Herculeus, of whom he begat vj. sonnes and brothers unto Constantine. These above said, dividing the emperie betweene theim, Galerius chose the easte parties; Constantinus tooke Italie with all Affricke, Spaine and Fraunce. Neverthelesse, in that he was a prince of great parsimonie, and in noe respecte ambitious, he lived onlie satisfied with the dominion of Fraunce and Spaine; finallie, xiiij. yeares after the beginninge of his reigne in Brittaine, being a while attainted with diseases at Yorke, ended his life, being justelie numbered emonge the heroicall persons. Their was in himme as it weare in æquall balance, gravitee, measure, integritee of life, liberalitee of goodds; for he, greatlie
usinge bowntie and largesse, hadde a minde in no poincte yealdinge to riches, yea, forgettinge his peculiar commoditee, was woont to saye that welthe was muche better in the hand of privat men then in chestes of princes, where thei cowld proffet or availe noe mann; bie the which humilitiee and popularitee of the goodd prince his provinces flourished in moste convenable quietnes. Hee was most prudent and wise in the administration of all functions, and for his skille in warfare verie profitable to Romaines, wherebie his verie memoriall seemed in moste pleasant wise to affect his soldiers, insomuche that with the greate favor of all menne they forthe- with saluted his sonne Constantinus, begotten of Helena in Britaine, in the name of moste puissant emperowre; and in the meane time at Rome Maxentius the sonne of Herculeus of the Pretorian soldiers in sodaine uprose was salued in the titell of Augustus. Here must wee make deepe rehersall as towchinge Constantinus, of whome I thincke it better to use taciturnitee then to speake but littell, for hee, being begott of Brittishe mother, borne and made emperour in Brittaine, noe doubte made his native countrie paretaker of the greatnes of his glorie. Herculeus Maximianus, which surrendered the empire with Diocletian, lived then privatlie in Lucania, who when he harde that his sonne Maxentius was bie voyce denowned emperour, in all haste cam to Rome minding again to take on himme the empire, geever bie his letters instigation to Diocletianus that hee wowlde revoke his owlde dignitee, which thinge Diocletianus, in this poincte wise and warie, refused and abhorred as a thinge moste pernicious and pestilent to manne; but the other in a great assemblee didd reason and debate the matter with his sonne, and beeganne to currie favour with the soldiers, moovinge them to disposses Maxentius, and restore the imperiall power to him. From the obteininge of this purpose hee saw much fayled, that with great reproaches thei justlie upbroyded him, which thinge was bothe covertlie and craftilie donne, leaste the suspicion of enie suche guile as hee intended towards Constantinus shoulde openlie appeare. Wherefore Herculeus bie all meanes having attempted the deprivation
of this younge man, he turned toward Constantinus his sonne in lawe (for to him hadd he married his dowghter Fausta), whoe havinge lefte rewlers in Britaine, didde then leade his life in Fraunce. Constantinus jentilie interteyned Herculeus, but the olde manne greatlie solicited in minde to hasten his distruction, trustinge to the loove of his dowghter Fausta, didde participate his whole councell with her, whoe, partelie fearinge deceyt and treas-
son, partelie moved with the seemelie loove beeteene manne and wife, forthewith disclosed the same to her husband Constant-
inus, noe marvaile, though hee desired to bee revenged; but Herculeus at Massilia, from whence hee minded to have fledde unto his sonne, was slaine by the commandement of the em-
peror. Galerius not longe departed this life, and a littell beefore hee died yealded to one Lucinius borne in Denmarcke the appel-
lation of Caesar. And soe all at one time Constantinus obtayned Fraunce, and the weste costes; Maxentius Italie, Africkie, and Aegypt; Maximian, whoe was a great while beeore created Caesar of Galerius, helde the east partes; Licinius had under himme Illirium. But Constantinus, inflamed with the empire of the whole worlde, passed over into Italie, wheare, five years after the begininge of his dominion, hee raysia warre againste Maxentius; which didd manifestlie prove that noe societie of kingedom canne longe endewre or abide a fellowe and coequall. After a fewe conflictes, Maxentius beinge put to flighte at the lengthe beeore the ende of the vj. yeare of his reigne, at the bridge called Milvius pons, neare unto the citty of Rome, he with a certaine number of his menne were throwne hedlong into the river Tibris, to there utter confusion; and that fortune mighte in all respectes seeme to bee correspondent to the wil of Constantinus, it fell owte verie commoduslie not longe after that hee had taken possession of Italie that the yonger Maximian joyned in battaile with Licinius, whiche Licinius havinge married Constantia the sister of Con-
stantinus for this alliaunce hee grewe in suspicion with Maximian: but death the sodainelie prevented his intente at Tharsis, moste studiuslie endevoringe his warrs. Constantinus, Maximian beinge
deadde, didde straighte waye warre upon Licinius, notwithstanding inge that hee was joined in amitee and alliance unto himme: whome, when after much fightinge hee hadd bereft of all regalitee, he moreover, contrarie to his promise, procured himme to bee slaine at Thessalonica. Leadinge a private life, Licinius reigned under the appellation of Cæsar xv. yeares, which was the ccxxvij. yeare of our salvation. Constantinus bie these meanes having engroched large dominion, entitleted his sonnes Cæsars. This denomination of Cæsars (that wee maye in this place make commodius interpretation) was not so muche the reall dignitee of the empire, as a degree and steppe of preferment thereunto, to the end that (as it weare bie the handdes of himme which was Augustus and Emperoure) those Cæsars mighte receave the government of the empire. This manne, as we have seyde bee-fore, after hee hadd geven the overthrowe to Maxentius and seased Italie into his handdes, proceeded to Rome, unto whome shortelie repaired Sylvester Bisshoppe, of singular and egregius holliness, and with facilitee persuaded himme to deserve well of the Christian religion, whoe of his owne accorde all readie hadd good affiaunce therein; farthermore, beeefore that he went to Rome (as it is crediblie thought) hee was soe instructed of his own moother Helena, that goinge towards battayle he used the sygne of the crosse as a defence. There are which write thus: that the selve same daye wherein he victoriuslie encountered with Maxentius, the wether beinge cleere, he aspiied a crosse and worshiped the same, and harde a voice from above sayinge, 'O! Constantine, in this signe shalite thou vanquishe;' nether didde this oracle lacke effecte. Wherefore this goddlie prince beegonne in all corners of the earthe greatlie to augemente and defende religion; for at Rome in the gardines of one Equitius hee builded a cherche, beautisyng the same with bownteus giftes, offeringe a diadem or crowne of gowlde, richelie beeseene with precius stones, to the ende that Silvester and all the bishopps succeedinge shoulde wear it. But this man, replenished with modestie and verie temperat in ex-
pences, wowlde in noe wise receive it, as a thinge nothinge agreeing with religion, being contented with a white Phrigian mitre. Moreover hee builded the howse called Constantia, at this day named Lateranensis, in the mownte Cælius, adjoyninge there bie a foonte of our sacred baptisme of redde marble; and neare unto that on the hill Vaticanus a cherche to Saincte Peeter prince of the Apostells, and an other to Sainct Paule, noe lesse resplendent in furniture, in the high waye called Ostiensis: allso in the theatre of Sessoria hee builded Hollie Crosse churche (for soe it is termed) beinge beefore in Jherusalem, there bestowinge a peec of our lordes crosse which hee brought from Hierusalem; for Helena, the mother of Constantine, a woman of unspeakable devotion, went unto Hierusalem to serche forthe this victorious banner of our Saviour, which thing trewlie seemed verie harde; for, to thentente that all monumentes of Christes passion (for soe our Divines doe name it) mighte cleane bee abolished, the picture of Venus was set up in the place where the crosse lay hidden of the mischevous enemies of the Christian name: nevertheless when the rubbishe was voyded owt of the place three crosses were fownde confuselie lienge together, the one was our Lordes, the other those whereon the two theeves weree put to execution; but that Christes mighte bee discried from the reste it was engraved with a triple titell: which was this, "Jhesus of Nazarethe kinge of the Jewes," all moste beinge worné owte with yeares. But a greater token ensewed, for the crosse beinge put unto a deade womanne restored life unto her. This noble prince Constantinus beinge mooved with those thinges didde forbedd in this wise to putt enie moe to deatho, to the ende that that thinge whiche beefore was a reproche and villanie emonge menn might now beecomme in estimation and honorable. Helene streyght after shee hadd fowndowte this crosse, ædesied a sumptuous temple, bearinge with her at her departure to her sonne the nayles wherewith Christes blessed corpes was fastened to the woodde, whearof the one Constantinus ware in the creste of his helmet, an other he bestowed as a munition on his horse
for the fielde, the thirde he kaste into the sea to apace the rage thereof, and to chaunge a stormie tempest. But that piece of the crosse which Helena browghte owte of Siria, garnishing the same with gowld and precius stones, he beestowed in his howse of Sessoria, which was also exceddinglie resplendent throughe his munificentie. Hee builded the churche of Saint Agnes with a christeninge foonte wheare his daughter and sister were baptizied, greatlie settinge forthe the same with his riche giftes. He ædified two other churches, the one in Tiburtina via to Sainct Laurence, the other in Lauicana to Sainct Marcelline, beetweene two baye trees, where he made a tumbe for his mother, includinge the same in a sepulchre of redde marble. To this churche, like as to the reste, weare geeven manie precius jewells; but what kinde of giftes these weare, and howe precius, which weare beestowed in suche holy places by the Emperoure, I minde not to expresse, least I showled incurre the envie of evel prelates, sithe that vj. hundred yeare since they weare taken owte of the churches. Withowte the citie he buildid mani churches, one at the towne named Ostia to the two apostells, an other to Saincte Jhon Baptist in Alban, the thirde at Capua under the common name of the apostels, the fowrth at Naples, the fifthe and sixte at Constantinople. Constantinus, biesides these godlie worckes wherof wee have spoken, did banishe Arrius, prelate of Alexandria, with vj. other lewed ministers of wicked supersticions, bie the Nicene Counsell, bie cause hee went abowte to skanne the Christian relligion with mischevus lies and glosinges. All temples of idolls, with the golden tables of Apollo at Delphus, bie the injunction of this prince, weare destroyed. Finallie, he founded noe relligious place but that francklie hee gave thereunto assuered giftes and certaine pensions.

And these are the noble and godlie worckes of the great prince Constantine and his mother Helen (whome the renomed parent Brittaine brought foorthe), worthie of all memorie, and easlie sur-mountinge all the actes of the former emperoures, allbeit I have
towched them sleyghtlie; for others throwghe blooddshed and manslaughte purchased their glorie emonge mortall menne, but these bie their godlines, there trewe relligion, their great liberalite, their justice, obteined of Godde (as it is justlie to bee thought) everlastinge life, and on the earthe everlasting prayse and honor. Constantine (according to the testimonie of Sainct Hierom) beinge verie oulde, or not longe beefore he departed this life, was baptized of Eusebius, Bussshop of Nicemedia, and is reported to have deferred his baptism unto that time, that accordinge to the example of Christe he might bee baptized in the river Jordan. But the notorius batinghe vessell, which he so sumpteuslie made at Rome, maketh a manne (not withoute cause) in that pointe to thincke noe otherwise than Sainct Hierom writethe. For marvaile it weare that a manne soe well deserving of Christes religion, would not at the verie firste broonte enter the gate of Christian pietie, that is to saye, bee baptized, seing that this oracle of our Saviour is well knowne to all menn, 'Whoe so ever beeleeueth and is baptized shall bee saved,' &c. But uppon these thingges, sithe thei are diverslie written, I will not greatlie tarrie. Constantinus was a mann as it weare ordayned to great perfection, as in whom within the remembrance of manne weare the greatest vertewse bothe of boddie and minde, conninge in the warlike sciens, fortunat in battaile it selfe, an ernest embracer of justice; finallie, borne to have praise and commendacion. Some laws hee made profitable to the common wealth, som he abolished. He builde the Citte Constantinople as the counterfaite and like unto Rome, in the coste of Thracia, whearas Byzantium stooke. Hee repaired Drepana, in Bythinia, naminge it Helenople, bie his mother's name. There are somme, which, as concerninge his ende, doe write that as hee went owt of Byzantium towards whote baines for the recovery of his helth that hee lefte his mortall life, wherebie per-adventure hee maye seeme to have ben sicke of the leprye; but their are divers authors, and emonge the rest Sainct Hierom, which testifie that he, mindinge to warre with the Persians (or, as Eutro-
pius saithe, with the Parthians, bie cause thei invaded Mesopotamia,) did die at a common village, called Aciron, bie Nicomedia, the cccxl. yeare of our salvation. Hee was lxvj. years oulde, and reigned xxxi. But see how it ofte chauncethe that longe life is hurtfull to a man; trulie, Constantine, a great patron of Christes religion, at the length, according to the authoritee of Sainct Hierom, was not cleane at defiance with the heresie of Arius. At that time that this emperoure chaunged life for deathe there appeared a great comete, or blasinge starre, of wonderous bignes.

But thus muche hetherto; now let us returne to the opposicion of those things which concerne the state of Brittaine.
THE THIRDE BOOKE

OF POLIDOR VERGILL ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

At what time the Emperoure Constantine departed owte of Brittain into Fraunce, as wee made rehearsall in our laste booke, hee lefte behinde him certaine cheefe officers to ordre the I Lond, and emonge the reste one Maximus, a manne of haute corage: he ledde with him a goodde parte of the youthe and princes, in whose valiaunce, faithe, and constancie he repose his whole confidene : with whome he beinge accompanied and garded passed into Fraunce, and consequentlie into Italie, eche wheare suppresseinge his adversaries. In the meane time the Brittishe contrie, at the lengthe seeminge to have purchased libertie, bicause havinge Constantine, a Brytayn borne, theyr kinge and governoure, the lorde of the whole worlde, it surmounted all others in honor, dignitee, and authoritee, and moste plausible continued in this estate, so that if there were in foretimes enie hatred on their partes towards the Romaines, it was now cleane abolished, seinge that bothe the Providence of Godde and the benefit of the redoubted prince they enjoyed peace, and a luckie principle of suche honors as mighte redownde to their posteritee. Albeit the imperie remained not longe after in the stocke of Constantine (so sodaine is the fall of humaine treasures), nevertheless the maiestie of the imperie coulde not perishe, sithe that even at this presente the kinges of Englonde, accordinge to the usage of their aunciters, doe weare the imperiall diadem as a gifte exhibited of Constan-
tinus to his successors. Thus Brittaine was quiet, as Eutropius witnessethe, at such time as Constantine departinge this life, lefte behinde himme three sonnes, Constantius, Constans, and Constantine, as heyres to the empire. To this laste was allotted Brittaine, Fraunce, Spaine, and the Iles Orchades; but within shorte space contention risinge betweene himme and Constantius, he joyned in fighte at Aquileya in Italie, and was slaine; so that Brittaine and the other provinces fell into the dominion of Constantius, whose dieng laste of all his bretherne, more then xxii yeares hadde the same in his jurisdiction; after which time the province littel lesse then xxiiij. yeares after didde not refuse dewtie and loyaltee, which was the vth yeare of the reigne of the two brothers, Gratianus and Valentinianus, which was the CCCCLXXVII. yeare of our salvation. At the same season Maximus, of whome wee made mention befoore, was made Emperoure in Brittaine throughe the suffrages of his soldiers, albeit som menn reported it to have benne done in Spaine. This manne, enflamed with the desier of encreasinge his power, forthe with toke mooster of his lustie younge menne, in whome hee perceaved sufficiencie of force and might to make battaile, and, limitinge a good quantitee of soldiers, departed into Fraunce. The Emperoure Gratianus goeng owte of the cittey to resiste and extinguishe this commotion, in the conduite of his armie into Fraunce gave preferment to the bende of the menne named Halani (who weare descended of Scithians), and entised unto hime bie goulden rewardes: which ministred suche great offence to his owlde warriers, that not longe after they cleane forsooke himme, and the Romaine trowpe betoke them selves to Maximus. Gratianus beinge amazed at the sodaine alienation and flete of his men, and endovering to retire into Italie, beinge entrapped with disceite was slaine at Lions. Valentinianus, the brother of Gratian, runninge away for feare of hostilitee, went to Byzantium unto Theodosius, which at the commandment of Gratian had taken on himme the rewle of the easte partes. This Theodosius (as Saincte Hierom reportethe) was the
sonn of that Theodosius which was murdered in Affrica at the instigation of Valens, for whome Gratianus sendinge owt of Spaine in those troblesom broyles made him copartener of the empire; wherefore Theodosius, not forgetful of good turnes, entertained Valentinian with fatherlie loove, mindinge beeore all thinges to preferre the revenginge of the death of Gratian, raysed warre against Maximus, whoe as then sojorned in Italie. But all thinges were donne with suche celeritee that hee hadd allmost overcommed the difficultee of the Alpes beeore that it was reported that Theodosius was removed from Byzantium, and Maximus, not knowinge that then especiallie sinistre and evel fortune is to bee feared when it maketh the mooste frindelie and propice semblant towards us, did then securelie sojorne at Aquileia, where he sodainlie beinge beeseeged and apprehended hadd his hedde striken of: suche is the unstabilitee of worldlie matters, that bothe they florish and perishe in one moment. Some writyers doe affirme that three miles from thence Maximus was overcommed of Theodosius and Valentinianus, and so yealde quicke into the handes of his enemies, there receavinge his laste penaltie of the conquerors, one yeare beinge scarslie accomplished after the death of Gratian. Martin the Bisshopp of Towres, a mann of singuler integritee, is reported to have towlde beeore unto Maximus, then abidinge in Brittaine, that hee shoulde ende his life unfortunatlie: besides this, Victor, the sonn of Maximus, was slaine in Fraunce. Thus all the attemptes of Maximus came to small effecte and evel ende. From thencefoorth the estate of the Ilond beegan sore to decaye, for in shorte space the Brittons, as wee shal hereafter declare, loste bothe libertie and empire. Fardermore, it is a common saieng that Maximus while he was in the pursuite and chase of Gratian, in the parte of Fraunce named Celtica, did appoint Conan a Britton borne as cheefe guide over the cittes bordering on the ocean called Armorieke. This Conan, after that with noe small rowte of his Brittons he hadd while made there abode and reigned, to the ende hee mighte there make
assewered continuance of his nation, eche wheare dispossessinge the Gaules, bestowed his Britons in all places, yea, and refusinge with contempte to joyne in matrimonie with the Frenchemen, sent to have wives out of Brittaine for his people, whearbie, as menn saye, it camme to passe that a plentuus assemble of virgins camme thether oute of the Ilond, and at one time, partlie bie shipwracke partlie bie slaughter, perished xi. thousand of bothe kindes, for the barbarus sorte slewe them and took them captives on the shore; emong whome it is thought that sainct Ursula was, the daughter of Dionotus kinge of Cornewall, which was espoused to this Conanus. When the death of Maximus was known in Brittaine, one Gratianus, a man borne in the Ilonde, exercised rewle and tyrannie for a season, who being speedelie exempted from that function, the Romaine soldiers which as yeat weare lefte in garison did elect Constantin, a manne of whome noe accompte was made, nether in stocke noble, nether renownmed in warfare, in whom onlie they seemed to bee draune with the affection of his name. This manne with an armie passed owte of the Ilond into Fraunce, remaininge emong the people called Veneti, and other while emong those which were named Cenomani, and emong other borderers on the ocean sea, endeavoringe to solace quietnes in Fraunce; and beinge desiers with the Vandals, Suevians, and Halans, hee demanded at the leaste wise trowse if thie would not condescend unto peace; but hee obtainede nether, which greatlie endamaged the common welthe: but not longe after Constantius, a man of politeque wisdom, being of Honorius sent in to Fraunce with an armie to restore and defende the maiestie of the imperie, subdued and slew this usurper Constantine, aboute Orleance, beinge farre spente and weried with beeseeginge. But Constans (whome his father Constantine of a moonck hadde pronoynced Cæsar), at what time hee mooved warre agaynst Dyndimus and Severianus, easlie subdewing them which minded to repell Constantine, and the alients which followed him from the entrie of Spaine, within a littell time after marchinge towards Vien,
hee was there slaine of his companion Gerontius: thus at one instance Constantine the father and Constans the sonn did perishe, and Honorius, bie procurement of Constantius, a most valiaunt capitan, receaved in to his jurisdiction the Ilond and Britishe armie. Paulus Diaconus and Bedas are mine authors, who bothe well and diligentlie wrote these thinges. The selfe same yeare wherin Constantine was denounced emperowre of the Romaine soldiers, Arcadius died at Constantinople, and the Rioltee of the empire openlie appaired. After the death of Constantine forthe with deceased his sonne. Then Honorius, retainghe the Britishe armie, did againe derive and traine the Ilande to the empire. After this a fewe yeares ensewing, when as after the death of Honorius, and after that Theodosius the sonne of Arcadius had pronounced as Caesar and Augustus, Valentinianus, the sonne of his aunte Placidia, an importunate number of the barbarus people beeganne to moleste the Romaine imperie, with whome the Romishe capitans hadd often conflictes. In the meane time Brittaine seemed as it weare subject to spoyles and made feete for the invasion of hostilitie, partlie having the cheefe strengthe of soldiers wasted with tyrants, partlie beeing carried forthe to warre on forraine nations, as it is commonlie seene that one discomoditee beesallethe not without an other. Which thinge bie fame being once bloune abrode, the Scottes, whether for the hope of bootie or for the desier of novelties, as Gildas testifieth, hastilie issued owte of Ireland in to this Ile; and with owte delaye makinge conspiracie with the Pictes, and on all sides assemblinge the lostehopes and raskalls, beganne with the thefte and robbarie of their gooddes, they proceeded to spoyle them of their cattalls, and finallie endeavored to plete possession on the Ilond it selfe. This mischeefe daylie encreised, and the bowldnes of these too nations grewe farder then seemed easie to bee resisted in time to comme, see that noe manne but shortli mistrusted the sackinge and distruction of the Ilonde withoute speedie resistance, aide, and remedie. Brittaine was
then, as I shewed before, without garrison; for the which cause
the selie multitude beinge afraide, as farre unable to decline this
tempest, sente embassadowres to desier succoure of Aetius, whome
Honorius a little befoore in the roome of Constantius hadde made
cheefe governor of the armes, a manne discended of the familie
of a senator of Dorostana in Moesia. Aetius, beinge solicited and
moved with the intercession of the Britons, which as yet re-
mained in dew allegiance, did for there defence sende them one
legion owte of Fraunce, of whome the Scottes and Pictes weare
plagued with divers overthrowes, and the Britishe condition was
well reforme; and, leaste this tranquillitee shoulde in processe
bee disturbed of their enemies, it seemed good to the lodesmen
of this armie that the walle wherof mention was made in the
former booke shoulde bee æedefied betweene the Romaine pro-
vince and the borders of the Pictes, which was performed accord-
ing to the testimonie of Gildas; but in that it was more bylde
with turffe then with stone, it was not afterwaere of sufficiencie
to withstande enemies; and thus at this season was this wall
made bie the capitans sent of Aetius, not of the Emperours
Hadrianus or Severus, as manie menne have lefte in memorie
verie falsoie, if wee beeleeve Gildas, a Brittyshe historiographer.
Brittaine was quiet, throwghe the munition of this one legion,
untill suche time as the Burgonions, bie molestinge of Fraunce,
caused Aetius of necessitie to revoke his menn oute of the Ilande,
and consequentlie disposinge one legion emong the Parisiens and
Aurelians, and sendinge an other to their winteringe to Taracon,
with the rest of his power hee marched towards the Burgonions.

The Scottes and Pictes streght after the departure of this legion
or garison invaded the gooddes of the Brittons. They spoyled there
herdes of neate, they robbed them of their sheepe, and, finallie,
wasted their teritories with fier and sworde. Of these sparckes
had flamed a newe and mightie fier of battayle, if at the com-
mandement of Valentinian (who of all things did moste desier to
anticipate warres) the armie which harborowed at Parris hadd nott
ailed them at their entretie for succours. At this time allso was
this forsaye wall fenced againe, and was fortified with stone that
it might be more stronge to repell the power of the enemies, so
that now the incursions of Scottes and Pictes beganne to doe lesse
harme. Yet thei within a while, perceiving the Romaine puis-
saunce to bee greatlie appalled, and allmoste overthrowne, (for soe
fickle areoure treasures that rather they decay then increase,) thei
invaded them with muche more fearcenes then ever they didd
beefore.

At this time Aetius sente noe aydes to the Britons, notwithstandinge
they ernestelie required the assistance of Romains; howbeit it maie be doubted whether he wolde not sende in that hee
was scarce frindlie affected towards Valentinian, or whether he
cowlde not, beinge detained and vexed with greater cares of more
pernicius warres; but how soe ever it was, it did ingenerat great
mischeefe, bothe to the Romans and Britons, yet the Britishe
nation in woordes plaintiffe miserablie lamented their chaunce,
writing in this wise, as Gildas witnesseth. 'The mowrninge of the
Britons sent to Aetius three times, beeinge Consul: Wee implore
and beeseeche thee that thow wilte vouchsafe to sende succours to
us, the Romane province, oure contrie, our wives and children,
being at this instant in extreme daunger. The barbarus people
raginge, drivethe us to the verie seas; the sea repelleth us againe
unto them. Thus are wee extinguished in doble funerall; ether
the swoorde of savage creatures cuttethe our throtes, or otherwise
wee are drenched in surge of water; nether have wee lefte enie
succor or releefe in these misteheves; wherefore generallie wee are
all thie peticioners that, accordinge to the singular disposition of
thie naturall clemencie, it shall please thee to assiste and releeve us.'
Bie these woordes wee may well knowe that the Britons in fine
did not forsake the Romaines but gretilie against their wills, for
now, beinge accustomed to imperie, thei hadd them in estimation
of whome they hadde learned civile and goodd manners, as Corne-
lius Tacitus makethe minde; for the sonnes of princes weare
THE THIRD BOOK.

wholye fostered in liberall sciences; their wittes flourished, not so mucho abhorring the Romaine language as ænestie desiers of eloquence. Emonge other things the Romaine attire grew into reputation, and gownes weare commonlie worn; yea, if it bee trew that Gildas writethe, they learned the sciens of warfare. And thus Britaine was loste of the Romaines allmoste five hundred yeare after the entrie thereunto of Julius Caesar; and thus, allmoste in the same verie momente, havinge attained libertie, entered into moste truculent warrs, wherby he did lese both name and empire, as shall hereafter bee declared, and that was the xvij. yeare fro the beginning of the reigne of Theodosius with Valentinianus Augustus, the sonne of his aunte, the yeare of our Lord ccccxliv.

In the meanete time, while the Britons contrived the time in sending embassadours about the treatie for succours, the Scottes possessed the uttermoste parte of the Ile which boundeth from the mountaine Grampius northewarde, which they have at this daye, naminge the same according to them selves, Scotlond. And this is the thirde people which, after the Pictes, firste, as wee sayd beefore, camm owt of Scithia into Ierond, next in Britaine there placing them selves: The capitaine of the bend of the Scotts, as Beda testifieth, was Reuda. But the Scottishe coronographers make computation that long before Reuda one Fergusius camme into Britaine, who gave to cognisance in his standerde the Redd Lion which the kinges doe now use, and that for his fortunate administration of all others he was first called kinge of his nation, after whome in deade succeeded his nephew Rewthere, in ample wise enlarging his dominion, whome Beda called Rewda. But paraventur there will bee somme which will not a litle bee aggrieved at these things, for of late one Gawine Dowglas, Bishop of Dunchell, a Scottishe manne, a manne as well noble in ligneage as vertewe, when he understooode that I was purposed to write this historie hee camme to commune with mee; in forthe with wee fell into friendshippe, and after he vehementlie requiered mee that in relation of the Scottishe afferaires I showlde in no wise follow the

CAMD. SOC.  

P
president of an historie of a certaine contriman of his, promisinge within few dayse to sende mee of those matters not to be con-
temned, which in deade hee perfourmed, in the which there was a
verie auncient originall of that people in this wise: Gathelus, the
sonne of Neolus, king of the Atheniens, slienge from the harde
servage of his father, departed into Ægipte to aide Pharao against
the Æthiopians, unto whome Moses was sente from Godde, with
the which benefit the Ægiptian kinge beinge stirred, gave his
daughter named Scoota in marriage to Gathelus, whoe forthewith
serchinge new dwellinge places arrived in Spaine, and inhabited
that coste which after him was called Portugallia, as who woulde
saye the porte of Gathelus, terminge his subjects Scotts, accord-
inge to the name of the noble woman his wife, Scoota. Thus hav-
inge issew and propagation of discent, three hundred yeare after,
the Scotts beinge brought into Irelond bie their kinge Simon Bre-
chus, weare the begininge of a newe kingdom, and finallie, before
the comminge of Christe, camme into Albion. It followed conse-
quentlie that the Pictes not longe after camme also owte of Scy-
thia in to Albion, and that these two externe nations had issewe of
stemme and encrease of kingdom in that coste of the Ilond which
is now called Scotlonde, from which time they allways mantayned
warrs with the Brittons, with the Romains, and Julius Cæsar
especiallie, the Scottes remayninge still inviolate, as not disturbed
from their degree. Finallie this was there in written, that owlie
theire Kinge Rewtheres havinge evel succes at home in his troubles
with the Brittons, didde once avoyded his contrie and fledde into
Irelonde; and that within a while after haveinge encreased his
power with Irisshe menne retourned to his former possessions;
and that in this beehalfe Beda was nott of sufficient perseveraunce,
which callyth this retorne the firste comminge of the Scottes in to
Albion. All this was done beeore the comminge of Our Savior.
As soone as I hadde redde these thinges, accordinge to the olde
proverbe, I seemed to see the beare bringe foorth her younglinges.
Afterwarde, when for recreation wee mette together, as wee weare
accustomed, this Gawine demaunded mie opinion. I answered, 
that as towchinge there originall I woulde not greatlie contende, 
seinge that for the moste parte all contrys weare woonte to drawe 
the principles of there pedegree ether from the Goddes or from 
heroicall nobles, to the ende that they which afterwarde beinge 
not easie of beeseele minded to skanne and derive theim, when 
they shoulde hardlie finde thinge of more certeintee, they 
shoulde rather bee constreyned to beeleeve it firmelie then enie 
farder to laboure vainelie. But to bee shorte, this in noe wise 
kanne agree that the Scottes and Pictes, two mightie people, 
shoulde soe longe reigne in the Ilond, shoulde performe so manye 
battaille, shoulde soe often foyle the Britons and Romaines, mo-
leste them, and vanquisshe them, and yet noe antique or grave 
writer once make rehersall of theim; especiallie seeing that Caesar, 
Tacitus, Ptolome, and Plinie (levinge to reherse the others) doe 
eche wheare in the histories make mention of the people named 
Trinobantes, Cenigmani, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Brigantes, 
Silures, Iceni, Ordoluce, Vicomagi, Elgouæ, with the other contrys 
of Brittaine; but of the Scotts and Pictes not a woorde, bie 
cause as yeat they weare not in this region, which forsothe is to 
bee thoughte the verie cause whie late writers have soe slacklie 
used the memoriall of theim. Wherefore I towlde him, even as 
frindlie as trewlie, that as concerninge the Scottes and Pictes bee-
fore there comminge into Brittaine, (which Bedas in his time hadd 
well assigned,) it shoulde not bee lawful for me to intermeddel, 
bie reason of the prescrit which is incident to an historien, which 
is that hee shoulde nether abhorre the discoovering of falsehoode, 
nether in anie case alowe the undermininge of veritee, nether to 
gyve suspition of favor nor yeat of envy.

This Gawine, noe doubte a sincere manne, did the lesse dis-
sent from this sentence, in that it plainelie appeared to him that 
reason and trewthe herin well agreeaed, soe easlie is trewthe all-
waise discolorwred from feyned phansies. But I did not longe 
enjoy the frucion of this mie frind, for in the yeare of our Lord
he died of the plague in London. After this ensued these two kings of Scotts, Eugenius the First and Fergusius the Second. Eugenius was slaine in battayle of the Pictes, being then under the Romaine allegiaunce; wherefore the Scottes, misdowbting their saftie, and mindinge to beestow them selves somme wheare, in sondrie ways fledd owte of the Ilonde. After xliij. yeares the bannished Scottes were reclaimed, partlie owte of Ire- lond, partlie owt of Norway, bie the Pictes, whoe feared the power of the Romaines; and thei camm home under the conduite of their lodesmanne Fergusius. After Fergusius succeeded his sonne Eugenius, whoe, confederinge with the Pictes, beganne so sore to oppresse the Britons that at the verie firste encounter, as wee saide beefore, thei weare constrained to expostulat succors of the Ro- mains. But Eugenius lived not longe, so that in his steede suc- ceeded his brother Dongardus; and now I retorne to mie matter.

The Scottes havinge prosperus successe didd the more licen- tiuslie invade the inhabitants of this Ilonde, more like to raveninge spoylers then noble warriars, contumeliuslie egginge and provok- inge their adversaries to fyghte. The Britons being forsaken of Aetius, albeit they reposed more safetie in enie thinge then in fightinge, nevertheless, caulinge to minde there owld valeaunce, and well perceavinge that in soe greate perturbation of all thinges they muste either geeve wowndes or suffer bloodshedde, they wolde noe longer bee of demisse spirits and abased corage; but beinge as it weare stirred up with the blaste of trumpe, or enraged with some furie, they sodainlie proceeded againste their enemies, which wandered more dissolutelie then they weare accustomed, as they which thought nothing was to bee misdowbted; they caused themme to forsake their grounde whome they firste mett with all, and russeninge into the middest of these miscreantes made great slaughter. The Brittaines wear superiors in this conflicte, most excellentlie conqueringe which were woonte to be conquered; yeat there enemies nevertheless, assaience their chaunce, did againe assaulte them. They tooke booties, they roved heere and there,
THE THIRD BOOK.

they stroyed feeldes, they fiered howses, they slewe all those thei mette, with owte respecte of age; they did all these kindes of injuries as thoughe them selves hadde bee neoYe of all infirmite. With this feare manie weare so astonied that of there owne francke will they ministered all suche things as their enemies hadd neade of, which thinge seemed to bee of soe great force that it mucho more amazed them then battayle it selfe. The Britons in these evels, bie necessitee constreined to doe that which seemed most expedient to keepe away hostility, tooke deliberation and counsell, and forthewith renewed, restored, and enlarged that wall which wee saide beeore was erected bie the soldiers of Aetius. This woorcke for a time restrained the rude raginge of the frenetick Scotts, which notwithstandinge afterwarde burste foorthe, encresed with more beastlie feritee, for not long after they camm to skale the wall, whome the Britons hardeli and not warelie inowghe resistinge, they threwe the wall flatte on the grounde, puttinge there adversaries to flighte, and chasing them with the sworde; nether yet dide the Scottes enjoye this victorie withowte bloodshedde, for their king, Dongardus, was slaine in the fighte, after whom suc- ceeded Constantine. In the necke of this mischeefe was sodayne- lie annexed a great skarsetie of corne, wherebie manie sterved bie famine, for the continuance of warres caused the grownde to be desolate and unmanured; yeat was it a cause that, after over- throwses on both sides, the desier of warre sone waxed cowld on bothe parties, and that plentie more abundantlie ensewed bie the more diligent tilthe of their feeldes. This divine benefit was hurtefull to the Brittons, (as Gildas writeth,) for they beginninge to rejoyse, instead of abstinence and shamefacednes embraced pleasures and vice, wherebie it camme to passe that leaste this nation, which continuallie offended, showlde lacke feare and daungers, bie the juste judgement of Godde, there arose a great pestilence, wherbie (as the same manne purportethe) was exhauste and de- stroied an incredible companie of menne, which diseas was within a littel after annexed with another, for they weare miserablie
oppressed with a sodaine invasion of the barbarus people, and
brought to suche greate distresse, that to their utter undoeing (I
thinke their destenie drawinge them) they weare enforced to
sende for into the Ilon the Saxon Englishemen, noe dowte men
of excedinge stowtenes and valiance, but not soe faytheful, as
they afterward hadd experience, not without there marvelus dis-
commoditee. Moreover the Brittons, seinge soe great broyles
hanginge over there hedds, bothe of Scottes and Pictes, most
feerce and truculent enemies, and fearing least while they maynt-
tained forinseall battayles there mighte spring domesticall con-
tention for the sufferauntee, sithe it is naturallie grafted in the dis-
position of all men bothe highe and low to thirste and affecte
honors and lordeshipp, thei determined to electe somme one
Kinge and sole monarche. Wherefore assembling a counsel, the
more parte bie and bie adjudged that this title and dignitee showlde
he bestowed on one Vortigerius, bie cause that of all men he was
of greatest authoritee, nobilitie, and vertew; which sentence was
not ownelie defined bie them, but approved of all others. Vorti-
gerius is made their kinge, whose, nothinge oblivious for what cause
he was enhaunced to the kingdom in this trowblesom season,
accounted nothinge more better then to beestowe all his cegitations
and care on the common wealth, to provide, to foresee, to caste
all meanes how the fatall ende of his contrie, which was now all
moste commence, mighte bee kepte awaye, or at the leaste wise pro-
roged. Yet, leaste hee mighte seeme to take too muche uppon
himme, he would attempte nothinge withoute the avisement of his
wise counsell, therefore everie firste daye hee tooke deliberation
of his domesticalls and generallie all his princes, conferringe with
themme and measureinge bothe there owne puissance and the
strength of their enemies, diligentlie discussinge, revoltinge, and
cotrivinge what remedie shoulde seeme convenable accordinge to
the inclination of the time. In conclusion, the piers of the
reallme, misdoubtinge their riches and wealth, and especiallie the
kinge himselfe, was fullie resolved to accite and send for the Saxon
Englisheman, a people verie notable throughhe there renowne of
chivalrie. Then were certaine speedelie sent in to Germanie,
which with monnie, giftes, and promises, should tempte, exhorte,
and allure theim to there succours, which if they denied not, they
shold forthwith bring theim into Brittaine. The Saxons assone
as they hadd harde these tidinges, as menn desierus to serve for
stipende, chosing forthe a stowte bende of lustie yowthes, and
committinge them to shippes, under the conduite of the two
bretherne Hengistus and Horssus, forthewith tooke their race into
the Ilonde the ccccxlh. yere of our Salvation. The kinge enter-
teyned them curteuslie, and assigned them Kente for there habita-
cion and dwellinge place, and from thence bie and bie brought
theim to the Scottes and Pictes, distroyenge the contrie on all
sides. For a while the skirmishe was manfullie perfowrmde on
bothe sides, but the Englishe menne calling to minde that this
was the day which showlde ether purchase to theim æternall fame
and glorie emonge the Brittons, or otherwise perpetuall ignominie
and repulse, doobleth there force in suche violent wise that there
enemies, not able to endure there vehement assautes, were put to
flighte and eche wheare slayne. The kinge, obteyninge this
victorie, regrated with woorthie rewarde these straungers, throwghe
whose hardines hee hadd conquered his enmyyes. Somme there
are that write that the Saxons weare not sente for of the kinge,
but bie casualtie arrived in the Ilonde, havinge this occasion of
there voyage. Surelie emonge the Englishe Saxons, a moste war-
like nation, it was the custom that when the multitude adrowned
in suche infinitee of nombre that the soyle coulde not easlie sus-
teyne them, at the commaundement of their princes, bie lotte the
cheefe of there yowthe showlde bee picked forther, and soo exter-
mined their costes, bothe to serche new contries, and allso to
make warrs; thus it fell owte that they arrived in Brittaine pro-
misinge there service under the kinge.

Longistus, a manne of great witte and wisedom, fealinge the
king’s minde, who owlnlie rested in the valiaunce of Englishemenn,
and having good trial in the ferteiltee of the contrie, beganne more profoundlie to waye with himselfe bie what crafte or subtilitee hee mighte bie littel and littel comprise a kingdom for him and his in the Ilond. Wherfore firste bie stelthe he beganne with munition to fortesie the place which was geeven himme to inhabit, to enlarge the bowndes, to confirme it with garrisons, then hee goethe abowte to persuade the kinge that a greater nombre of menne showld bee sente for owte of Germanie, that with the assistance the Ilond beinge corroberat, it mighte strike a certaine terror into the adverse parte, and yealde quietnes to himme and his. The kinge, not knowinge the iminent chaunce, wolde in noewise contemne this device, which in deede was full of treason. It cam to passe, that in shorte time a huge number of people cam into Brittaine, and with them, as menne say, the dowghter of Hengistus was brought, called Ronix, a virgin of woorderfull bewtie, to tempete the minde of Vortigerius, for this Englishe manne didd allredie sufficientlie smell to what vice the kinge was prepense. Bede affirmethe that the Saxons, the Vites, and the Englishemenn, the most feere nations of Germanie, camm togethe into the Ilond, and that of the Vites discended the Kentishe men, and they which at this time inhabit the Ile of Weyghte, bein over against the others; but of the Saxons camme they which are termed Est Saxons, Sowthe Saxons, and Weste Saxons; but of the Englishemen, ether of the place or of there queene so called, discended the Este Angles and they which inhabite the middell of the soyle, and the inhabitants of Northumberland, whose capitaines weare Hengistus and Horssus. Cornelius Tacitus makethe especiall memorie of the Englishemen in that booke which hathe written of the situation of Germanie, yeat callethe them not Anglos, but Anglios, so that the name conteineth three silables, and this letter i is the laste saving one. But let us retorne to our former beginninge. Hengistus, perceavinge his people to bee verie well accepted of the kinge, beganne so like a foxe to deale with him, that hee mighte inflame his minde with loove, which is
the thinge which aboue all others dothe blinde, bewitche with
collie, and somtymes destroye men, yeat with suche pleaouante
poyson that they perishe withoute open greese. Hengistus in-
vided and entertayned the kinge at a sumptuus, pleaouante, and
well furnished supper; and it was soe ordered that when all
things weare warmed with wines the dowghter of Hengistus was
at hande, geevinge the cuppe looverlike to Vortiger, with all the
grace and neatenes that might bee, accordinge to the fasshion of
her contrie. The kinge, assone as hee hadd fixed his ies on the
mayden, sodainlie was enraished with this bayte, being bothe
delighted with her beawtie, and haveinge taken vewe of her be-
avior, in so mutche that now not so wise as was fitting unto himme,
hee divorcing within a littell while after his former wife, maried
this trulle, geevinge therin the moste detestable example within
the memorie of manne. This hainus deade of the kinge bredd
offence in the mindes of his nobles, and hastened the distruction
of the contrie, for the Saxons, understandinge the allienge of ther
stock with the kinge, gathering a great companie, camme in suche
number into the Ilande, and as it weare strivinge whoe showelde
beefirste, that it is not to be towlde in how shorte space they weare
growne to an infinitee, soe that bothe bie reason of the multitude,
and allso for ther hardines in warfare, they beganne easlie to be
a terror to the inhabitants, which at first accited them willinglie.

Now am I in writing cumme thether, as oftentimes elsewhere,
wheras I finde manie thinges lefte doowtefull, bothe of the Italian
and Britishe writers; wherefore, leste like those that wandere
wee should see me to follow uncertainnees, wee will particularie
sett before youre ies the sentence of everie writer as wee shall
conceave that to farre it is not unlike to the trewthe, that bie this
meanes wee may the better preserve the dewe faythe and asewran
cence of an historie. Gildas of the callinge hether of the Saxons
writethe thus: 'Then (saythe he) all the counsellers, with the
insolent kinge, weare greatlie blinded, findinge owte this prepos-
terus safegarde, or rather the overthrowe of their contrie, that the

CAMD. SOC.
feerce Saxons, menn of evel name, hated bothe of Godd and manne, showlde be intertayned into the realme as wolves into a sheepecote, to withstande and represse the northern people, then the which thinge there was never enie thinge more bitterlie or daungeruslie perpetrated; hee allegethe beesides this that they cam as champions for the contrie, but indeade warriers againste the contrie, for breakinge the covenante of societie they toorned ther perfidious weapons on the Britons. But Beda indeede dothe more largelie handle these thinges, who testefieth that the Saxons, after they beganne to bee feared of others, for a time thei made leage with the Pictes, with whome at that time they maintaned warr, and abruptlie torned there force on the Brittons, there frindes and entertayners, and menacinge them with death, commanded them to surrender soe mutche corne as mighte yealde sustinance to theire importunate covente of alieines; which thinge beinge refused of the Britons, they slewe withowte respect of age or kinde all suche as they mett disperpeled in the feeldes; they sett fier on howses; they exercised moste truculent creweltie towards the priestes as worshipers of idolls; so that in fine the Brittons, exanimate partelie with feare, partelie with the desier to avoyde slaughter, like madde creatures ranne here and there into divers wayse, ether hidinge them selves in thicke covertes, or putting there neckes under the yoke. But not lone after, according to the authoritee of Gildas, Beda, and Paulus Diaconus, Aurelius, or Aurelianus Ambrosius (for bothe wayse I finde it written), who onlie was remanent of the Romaine line, putting the purple robe on him, and proclaimed emperoure or capitaine, beganne to warre with the Saxons. Here may a manne perceave that somme minde nothinge lesse then to tell the trewthe, who affirme that Aurelius Ambrosius was a Briton, wheras it appeareth the moste evidente that he camme of Romaine lineage. But now againe to the matter. Afther the alliaunce confirmed betweene the kinge and the Englishe Saxons, his espouse sollicitied himme to have her contriemenne in highe favor, causing them to aspire to great honors, and studiuslie
endeavoringe to exclude the Brittishe peeres owte of their domesticall Senat and preheminence, whearbie Vortigerius harde the evel murmur on all sides, to his great discommendation emonge all the nations adjacent; firste, that he was the fownteyne of one mischife in sendinge for, callinge, and allueringe the Enlish Saxons, a prowde, crewell, and wrothefull nation; and nowe the verie patrone of a muche greater evel, in that hee releved and mayntained people againste himselfe, whome it wolde be to late to withstande, after the encrease of their authoritee, fame, and welthe.

Vortigerius, nevertheles, mindefull of there good toorne, not casting dangers to comme, could not but loove the Englishemen, throwghe whose mighte hee hadde quenched the furie of the Scotts and Pictes, throwghe whose factions hee cowlde not erst have enie fruition of tranquillitee; and thus, accordinge to his owne arbitrement, hee lived a fewe yeares after. The common sorte of menne as yet doe say that Vortigerius did entierlie loove a certaine soothesayer, called Merline, and that in his administringe of things hee didde aske his advise as a prophet, bie cause hee knewe things to comme.

After Vortigerius succeeded his sonne Vortimerius, a yownge manne borne to honor, if continuance of life hadde served. After the deathe of Vortier, the Englishemen, of whome there was an huge nomber in the Ilonde, (for this indigent and boysterus people like ants swarmed thether continuallie, not onlie engrochinge Kent, but allso somme of the weste partes, and a goode portion appertaininge to Scotlond,) supposinge now to be tyme to assaye the fortune of battaille, didd make league with the Scottes and Pictes; and then at one verie pointe of time bente there weapons towards the Britons, and soe molestethe them with injuries as throwghe rather somme evell then goodd toorne they hadd receaved of them. The Britons, albeit they minded manfullie to have withstooed ther enemie, being before of noe suche puissancce, neverthelesse, beinge beesette with soe greate stormes of battayle on all sides, they cowlde not cheuse but bee marveluslie dismayde; for first with Hengistus,
a capitan of haute corage, secondarilie with the Pictes, finallie with the Scottes, ether at once they most fight or incurre servilitee. But in the ende the lothesomnes of servage revived their vertuen, for sodainlie thei gathered their spirits together, and with bowlde stommache eche wheare they made resistance; yet as impotents in this harde case they were skattered, slaine, and put to flighte; and presentlie mistrusting the ministerie of armoure, as disperpeled sheepe, folowinge som one lodesmanne, som an other, they hidd them selve in solitarie places, woddes, and fennes. What shall I saye with Gildas, how they lefte their citties and townes alltogether voyde of artillerie and munitions. Then the Saxons, as lords of all, didd now peculerlie converte there madnes and violence to the cheefe nobles, that after the maistree and confusion of them they mighte the easlier enter possession on the whole Ile, which owlnie thinge they thristed and longed for. But the miserable Britons weare not cleane destitute of the divine favor, for beholde they hadde the presence of Aurelius Ambrosius, as wee shewed beeefore, whoe assone as with trumpett hee hadd pro-nounced open warre, eche manne hasteth unto hime, eche mann humblie beesechethe him, eche sollicitethe him to defende them, and that it woold please him, even the verie firste daye, to joyne with them in battayle againe there mortall foes. Thus a legion being soone gathered, Aurelius marcheth forth against them, and stowtelie setteth on them; within a fewe dayse there was three ernest conflictes, as well bie wrath as power achieved: at the lengthe the Saxons were put to flight, and Horssus, the brother of Hengistus, slaine; yet was there corage soe farre from coolinge, that, within littel time receavinge a new bende owte of Germanie, they entred on the Britons with muche hope. Assone as Aurelius Ambrosius understooode that his enemie camm with stronge force against hime, in noe wise delayenge, proceeded into the highway, minding to goe towards Yorcke, fro whence that tempest aproched; but being in this pretended jorne, hee was certified that Hengistus had taken a resting place xvij. myles from Yorcke, bie the bancke
of the river which is now called Danne, where as is Dancastre: hee tooke the streight way thither, and the next daye settinge on his enemie, hadde the victorie, sleyng Hengiste at the first en-
counter with a wonderous number of Germanians. The fame of that victorie is as yet in memorie emonge the inhabitantes of that place, which marueluslie apaired the mighte of the Saxons, inso-
muche that now they beganne to thincke it a more filthie matter to enjoye peace, then miserablie to accomplishe their battayles. Hengistus lefte these two sonnes behinde himme, Osca and Otha, whoe as thei whome they wheare greatlie aggreeved at this late skorge, gathering a small companie, fleeted into the weste parties of the contrie, thincking that mutche better then to returne into Kente, whereas was lefte a garrison not well apointed to resiste. There they rified and depopulated the territories, they brente villages, they discharged there handdes from noe kinde of creweltie: which thinges being knowne, Ambrosius, leste there his enemies mighte resuscitate their strengthe, hastened thether, and in plaine fight once againe put them to flighte, but hee himselfe receaved a deadlie wounde, whearoof hee died within fewe dayes. The Englishemenne after this hadd quietnes, nothinge againste there wills, within vj. monethes having vj. hundred discommodites; the Britons, nevertheles, intentive to nothinge, and the lesse reade to annoye them throwge there deathe of there kinge, for whome, in the meane time, in that hee hadde well deserved of the common wealethe, thei erected a rioll sepulcher in the fashion of a crowne of great square stones, even in that place wheare in skirmished hee receaved his fatall stroke. The tumbe is as yet extante in the diocesse of Sarisburie, neare to the village, called Aumsburie. In the meane time deceaseth Vortimerius; after whome succeeded Utherius, surnamed Pendraco, whoe did nothinge more fullie determine then clense his contrie from all feare of these aliens, which hee cowlde not well comprise, bie reason of the discord of his citizens. At this time all citties neare to this contrie pitied the infelicitee of the miserable Britaine, in that it hadde bothe
forreyne and domesticall adversaries. But, above all others, this calamitee moved with compunction the Frenche busshepps, whose harde saye that in this heape of miseries there chaunced noe small decaye of relligion in the Ile. For the xvij. yeare before the arrivall of the Englishe Saxons, the Pelagien heresie as a festering canker hadde crepte throwghe the Ilonde, which bie tyrannie of the Romaine Emperours was confirmed emonge Christians, to the greate endamaginge of the true Christian secte. For Pelagius a Briton, borne in the hether Brittaine, was persuaded that a manne of himme selfe didd attaine salvation, and bie his owne free will aspiered to righteousnes, that hee was borne withowt originall sinne, and therefore hadd noe neade to bee baptized, and bie this meanses this wicked creature intended to adnihilat Baptisme. Wherefore the Brittishe bishops, bestood with weapons and enemies, when thei coulde not execute all functions, and perceaved that the prelates their neighbours weare prompte to assiste them, theye treted with the Frenche busshepps bie letters and messengers, that in these times so daungerus to the Christian affayres they wowld vouchsafe to sende them succours; whoe callinge a Sinod of busshepps didd sende into Brittaine Germanus Altsiodorensis and Lupus Tracasenus, menne of singuler integritee, learning, and innocencie, whoe, accordinge to the definitive sentence of this councill, shoulde doe there endeavour to withholde the inhabitaunts in their dewtie towards Godd, whoe, as they sayled in the ocean, notwithstandinge they were strayed, yet partlie throwghe there hollines of livinge, partlie through miracles, weare easlie browghte into the righte waye. Celestinus, the Romaine bishopp, for his parte assentethe to this busines, whoe not longe beeefore hadd promised unto Scotiaunde, having allreadie receave the righte Christian religion, the bishopp Palladius, whoe at the length did there give the rightes of priesthooode, consecratinge one Servanus, a manne of sincere livinge and modestie, with the hollie rights of a bussheppe, whome after he sente into Iles Orchades to instructe the inhabitaunts with the trew relligion of
Christe, which thinge hee executed diligentlie. But Palladius, a goodde, godlie, thanckefull, and verie studius persone, the whiles he was in Scotland did bie all meanes diswade ther kinge Constantine that he wolde natt aide with armes those Englishe Saxons, a moste lewde generation, againste the Britons, beinge Christian menne, seeinge that hee might well perceave that their distresse wold in time to comme redownde to his owne undoeing, sithe it is evident that they minde nether the frindeshire of Pictes nor of Scotts, but the imperie of the whole Ilond; and allso that hee wolde natt so often in other menns names and causes endanger him selfe and his nation with warre, the ende whereof, of all thinggs, is moste incertaine. This admonition tooke suche effect with Constantine that hee promised never hereafter to howlde with the Englishemen, which hee perfourmed, for hee ministred divers aides afterwarde to the Britons; which thinge for a season greatlie releueed the Brittishe strength, preserving them from sodaine ruine. In the mean while, the Englishe Saxons reuenge frindshire with the Pictes, (for they harde say that all readie the Scotts weare alienated from them,) thei assembled in more abundant manner, they invaded againe the gooddes of the Brittons, they ruthshed foorthe in to the middell of the soile, they bended there voyage towards London, mindinge to goe into Kente; whoe, when they camme to the river Trente, (as probablie wee gesse) they pitched there pavilions on the other bancke: they sente there horsemen abrode, out of all corners, to espie if there were enie companie of theyre enemies abrode in the fildes. The Brittans being certifie of removinge of there adversaries, did congregate the owlde beaten soldiers, and delibered as towchinge the meeting with them. There was no want of good will, but rather the lack of hope of fortunate successe, bie cause they hadde noe armie, nether hadd they taken enie mooster beefore; yeat, leaste their hertes showlde altogether fayle, there were certaine named thei made on oste rather of suche as thei gathered newlie, then of suche as were owld approved. The feaste of Easter was at hande, wherof they
weare all exceeding gladde, mindinge to execute the solemnitee of there ceremonies and devotions beefore they wolde cope with their enimies, notwithstandinge that daunger honge over heddes, as whoe say they had more confidence in the divine helpe then in there owne subsaunce. And sure these good mindes of theres were not destitute of goodd counsell; for, whilst they weare intente in the service of Godde, Germanus, a bissoppe of inestimable sanctiteit, not soe well fenced with armoure, as faythe, pietee, and innocentie, professed him selfe lodesmanne of there armie. Wonderful it is to be spoken how mutche the Brittons bie that message weare enhuanced both in strengthe and corage; wherfor, this feaste being finished, hee marched towards the Saxons, plantinge his tents as neare as might bee. The daye enсуeng Germanus, capitan of the ooste, executed the divine functions earlie in the morninge, beeesching Godde of victorie, and, whilste all menn weare occupied in prayer, hee forthewith thrise gave them the watcheworde of fight, singinge with lowde voyce Alleluia: the whole armie didd likewise as often resownde the same voyce, uttering suche clamor that when the adverse partie sawe them comming to joyn with theim thei forthwith weare vanquished with dispaire, and, throwing away there weapon, beetooke them selves to their legges, as thoughe being conquered with longe travaile, and in dispaire of saftie, there weare noe seater refuge then plaine runninge awaye. Thus in victorie achieved bie divine grace there was nether slaughter nor prisoner, yeat manie of the enemies, as Beda testifieth, were missed after the passage over the water, whoe, beinge feared with this miracle of their owne swinge, weare quiet a while. The Britons did the like, so that, as it weare truce made between them, they ceased on bothe sides, untill the Britons bie civil discorde suffered the losse of their libertie. But the Saxons bie all meanes enkendled to dispossesse the Brittons of the Ilonde which they inhabited. Havinge citties and townes (as Gildas purporteth) as things lefte desert. Not longe after thei swarmed uppe into a verie highe hill in that part of the Ilond which butteth
over againste Germanie, which at that time (as also Gildas saith) was called Badmicus. I suppose it to bee that which commonlie is called Blachamore, parteininge to the river Athesis, which dis-severeth Yorkashire from the busshopricke of Durisme, and hath an entrée into the which oute of Germanie menn doe commodiouslie direct their shippes, where the Englishemenne did everie daye looke for succors, for daylie they sent for some oute of there contrie. When these thingges weare revealed to the Britons, they made expedition thither, they beeseeged the hill, they placed garrisons on the sea coste, lease they that camm might have free passage to enter the londe. The Saxons a fewe dayse with helde them selves in those difficult places, at the lengthe compelled with the defecte of victuals, of necessitee, with there ranckes sett in order, they discended into the next plaine grounde, and geevenge oportunitee of fighting they grasped with hande strokes. They fowghte fro the morneinge till the daye was farre spente with so greate occision of menn that the erthe was beespredd with redde bloodd; yet the mucche greater skourge alighted on the Saxons, so that havinge loste there sufferaine guides Osca and Otha, they now seemed to bee shaken out of the neckes of the Brittons; but destinie could not be avoided, as shalbe shewed hereafter. Gildas maketh especiall memorie of this notable confict, whoe as himselfe affirmeth was borne the same yeare, which was the xliij. after the comming of the Englishemenne, and the cccccxciij. of our Salvation.

At this time Vtherius departed owte of this world, after whome succeeded his sonne Arthur, being noe doubte suche a mann as, if hee hadd lived longe, hee surelie woulede have restored the whole somme beeing allmoste-loste to his Britons. As concerninge this noble prince, for the marvelous force of his boddie, and the invincible valiaunce of his minde, his posteritee hathe allmoste vaunted and divulged suche gestes, as in our memorie emonge the Italiens ar commonlie noysed of Roland, the nephew of Charles the Great bie his sister, albeit hee perished in the floure of his yowthe; for

CAMD. SOC.  

R
the common people is at this presence soe affectioned, that with
woonderus admiration they extol Arthure unto the heavens,
alleginge that hee daunted three capitans of the Saxons in plaine
feeld; that hee subdewed Scotlande with the Iles adjoyninge;
that in the teritorie of the Parisiens hee manfullie overthrew the
Romaines, with there capitans Lucius; that hee didde depopulat
Fraunce; that finallie hee slewe giauntes, and appalled the harts
of sterne and warlike menne. This redowbted conqueror, of so
manifolde exploits, is reported to have ben sodainly retrayted from
his jornay with domesticall contention, while hee minded to
invade Rome, and consequentlie to have extinguished his tratorus
nephew, Mordred, who usurped the regall power in his absence,
in which conflict hee himselfe receaved a fatall stroke and baleful
wounde, whereof hee died. Not manie years since in the abbey of
Glastonburie was extracted for Arthur a magnificent sepulchre,
that the posteritee might gather how worthie he was of all monu-
ments, whereas in the dayse of Arthure this abbaye was not
builde.

Next unto Arthure reigned Constantine, a dissolute manne,
whome the hollie Gildas, which then lived, didd hate extreamelie,
that is to saye, he cowlde not but disallowe his corrupte demainor,
yet loving him in that he was a manne; wherfore hee didde as
humblie admonishe himme of his salvation as ernestlie reprehende
his vices, for Constantine, who, contrarie to Divine and humaine
lause, hadd rejected his wife, and was openlie forsworne, did eche
daye commit six hundred haynus offences, with which example he
didd moste harme in the depraving and corrupting his Brittons.
This did Gildas reproove, this hee accused, this was the thinge
which hee tooke so hevile, whoe for the same purpose drawinge
divers testimonies owt of treaurie of hollie scriptures, declared
that Godd didde rewarde everie one accordingly to his facts, som-
times gentlie exorting them to goodnes and resipiscentie, somtime
seducing by menacing like a severe and careful father. After
Constantine ensewed Aurelius Conan, Vortiporius, Maglocimus,
Carentius, Cadvanus, and Cadvallo. These men in those few
years which they reigned had younge to doe to proroge and
defere the exitiall fall of their contrie, oftentime buckeling in
armes with the Saxons, somtimes using good administring, other-
whiles provident consultation; which things Cadwallo especiallie
didde; whoe, when hee perceaved the fatall date to drawe neare,
betoke himselfe to the citie of Legions, which standeth on the
west side; from whence hee makinge often excursions on his
enemies, didd soe deface the Englishe power, that it seemed hee
wold shortlie bring them to utter extremitie, if in the meane time
hee had not been overcome and slayne of Oswalde King of
Northumberlande, as wee will hereafter expresse. After these
kings Cadwalladar, the sonne of Cadwallo, obteined the riall power
of the kingedom, in all places raced with fier and murder. This
prince in the begininghe of his imperie, as well bie good artes and
politik counsell as bie weapon and armes, defended his contrie,
being now at verie pointe to comnie to ruine, from the tyrannie
of hostilitie; but not longe after (for that which is neare unto
cinders muste neades fall and bee dissolved at the lengthe) hee
fell into sharpe sickenes, whearwith hee beinge greauslie tor-
mented, the piers of the realme, mistrustinge his life, beeganne to
contende for the regalite, which was the verie confusion of the
nation; for as soone as the furie of hell discorde beganne to dis-
playe her rayes, all feeldes laye as waste and voyde as it is woont
to bee when the Goddes peace is exiled, and the whole multitude
rashelie propensed to warre and seditions; whearbie it camme to
passe that in a littel time a greate famine arose, and another evell
more daungerus then that, for the pestilence, which is coosin
germaine to famine, did in suche wise accompanie the same, that
the live cowlde not burie the deadd, insomuche that the carkas of
the dead lay in the sighte of men, which all way looked for the
like death, soe that the dead made others sicke, the sicke infected
the whole bothe with disease and feare. Wherfore Cadwallader
recoveringe himselfe, wheras he was beeset with suche difficulties,
hee passed over with a good companie into litile Britayne, whear in shorte time gatheringe noe small nymbre, and being assertained that the plague was ceased in the Ilonde, he addressed himselfe to retorne, but beholde an image havinge somewhat more then earthlie shape is reported to have thus commoned with him as he reposed him to quietnes. 'O king, I saye unto thee, cease enie more to heape warre upon warre against them, whome if thou cowldst withstand, as thow kannest not, yet kannest thow not resist faltall destine. Thie contrie shall fall into the hands of thine enemies, which thie progenie longe hereafter shall recover.' Marvayle it is how mutch credit Cadwalladre gave to these woordes, whoe, accordinge to the olde sayd sawe, seeing silver to bee torned into drosse, layeng aside all weapons, commaundd the Britons which he ledde into Fraunce to retire home, and himm selfe departed to Rome, where he ended his life godlie, which was the xij yeare of the rayne of Cadwalladre, and the dc. of our Salvation. Thus at the lengthe the Englishe Saxons obteining the lوردeshipp of the whole Ilonde, besides Scotlond, and that which the Pictes possessed, distributed the same emonge them, as wee shall hereafter make rehersall; which thing was not ordered bie common cowncell or assente, but as everie manne being moste of mighte youlde lay clame to enie parte, soe did hee institute his imperie.

And to the Britons which hadd escaped the sackinge and demolition of their contrie was surrendred a portion of the Ilonde, bowndinge westeward, which the Englishemen afterwarde termed Wales, and the people Wallshemenn, bie reason the Germanians, as I sayd in the firste booke of this volume, doe call all foriners which have a divers language Walsmen, that is to say, aliens or strauengers, of the which sorte thei, havin engroched the whole type of the region, accounted those Brittons which weare the survivors of the progenie. I will not altogether use silence how David busshop of Meneva, a litell beeefore the excision of the contrie, throughie the singuler sanctimonie of his livinge, as well alive as deadd was notorius in miracles, and as yet is. At this
time Constantine, kinge of Scottes, whome we recited beeore as a fautor of the Britishe affayres, died withowte issew; after whome succeeded Congallus, his nephew on his brother's side. These kinges ensewed, Goranus, a stowte manne, Eugenius the thirde, Convallus, Anitillus Aydanus, Chennethus, Eugenius the fowrthe, for the fowrthe, Donwaldus Maldvinus, Eugenius the fifte, Eugenius the vj. and Ambercletus. These menn did endevor nothing more then continuallie to make warre on the Pictes, and emonge the reste especiallie Ambercletus, whoe in the ende perished in those battayles. I suppose they didd forsee in there imagination how the one in conclusion wold destroye the other, as in the end indeade it camme to passe.
THE PREFACE OF THE III. BOOKE.

We have above expressed the deades and exploits of the Britons unto the comming of Cæsar into the Iлонde, written as indifferentlie worthie the credit; the residue allso, beeing serched forthe with no small travayle, I have hetherto layde abrode accordinge to truthe as thinggs which I have glened owte of goodd authors: and so bie writinge I am comme to the destruction of the Britishe kingdom, founded on littell principels, yeat afterward, when it was growne to great perfection and maiestie, and establisshed with artilerie, lawse, relligion, and councell, at the lengthe it came to ruine, even as in auncient times the mightie dominions of the Assirians, Medes, Persians, Macedonians, and Romans, camme to desolacion; suche is the fickel nature, and propensitee to deathe, bothe of menne and humaine affayres. Yeat the force of nature, leaste it shoulde appeare to injuris is this, that of how muche it beereeveth us in one place, soe muche is it woonte to yeadle and repaye in an other, rendering like for like, or somtimes in more ample wise. Troye, as is well knowne, was raced and consumed, yeat the Troyans which escaped bylded Alba, of Alba sprange that puissant Rome. Even so, after the overthowse of the Britons, leaste the riolme shoulde seme destitute of fraunchise and imperie, the dominion of the Engleshemen, as a fresshe burden and ofspringe of nature, beeganne therin, and bie litel and littel aspired to great welthe and opulencie. But the Englishe princes
from the beginninge partinge the kingdom beetweene them, and after that noe manne being contente with his owne limites and boundes, whilst everie one was over careful for his owne kingdom, they fell into civile contention, which thinge indeade was not soe great a detrement as a wonderus good toorne unto them, a thing marvaylus to be tollde, in so miche that a manne wolde easlie beeleeve that the cheefe piers, while thei skowrged one an other with suche mutuall plagues, didd attempte nothinge ells but of a littell soe to enlarge the common welthe, and to derive it to suche absolute fourme as in conclusion most surelie it camme unto, for at the lengthe the monarchie was devoted to one onlie, whoe encreased the same moste of all others, levinge it most safelie fenced to the successors. Of these thinges I must nowe especialie entreat, which I will earnestlie endeavor, and as trewlie I canne perfourme; but before that, I will particularie expownde and shewe the distribution of the Ilond beetweene the princes, and of the vij. kinges, (for somtimes so manie weare there at one season), strivinge and fightinge together, to the entent that the reader in suche an auncient matter may understande first of all what borders everie of their kingdoms hadde, albeit they never hadd certaine and determinat spaces or limites, bie cause the divers chance and ende of battayle, as hereafter shall bee shewed, did sometime farre enlarge them, somtimes restraine them verie narrowlie.
THE FOURTH BOOKE

OF POLIDOR VERGILL ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

The Kentishe kingdom was the firste of all others; for Hengistus, as beefore wee declared, possessed Kente, callinge him selfe kinge therof. This kingdom hadde on the east and sowthe side the ocean sea, on the northe the river Thames, on the weaste it was limited by the Sowthe Saxons, and finallie it conteined soe mutche grownde in circuite as the dioceses of the Busshopps of Cantwarburie and Rochestre comprehendethe at this daye. After Hengistus succeeded his sonnes Osca and Otha, Hunericus allso, and Ethelbertus, being the vth from Engistus, a manne noe lesse milde in innocentie, then noble in minde, and verie industrious as towchinge warfare, whoe, after he had once attained quietnes in forrein contrysies, in noe wise abiding the restines of ease, was the first that moved warrs againste the princes of his owne nation: wherebie he is reported to have enlarged his kingdome even to the river Humber: nether did he seeme to doe it contrarie to the lawe of armes, because the realme newlie distracted from the Britons semed even as then to lie voyde for suche as cowlde en - joye it: and whoe soe cowlde defete others of enie portion semed to have as good titell as the beste. This goodd prince (like unto whome there werefewe in those dayse) to the perfect consumation of his glorie wanted nothinge but the divine knowlege of the trewe relligion, wherefore it happened bie the providence of Allmightie Godde that hee espoused a wife of Frenche line named Bertha, a most Christian ladie, with whome emonge others camme an hollie bissoppe called Lothardus, whoe bothe afterwarde usinge daylie the
rightes of their religion in the courte and pallace, did begin noe doubt to lighten with the resplendent rayes and beames of celestiall lighte the minde of this prince being overwhelmed in profonde darcknes, and trayned him to the discipline of the Ghospel, which at the lengthe hee embraced. Saint Gregorie aboue that time sent into Brittaine Augustine and Miletus, two monaches of sownde livinge, with divers others, who when they arrived in Kente, thei were verie gentlie entertayned of Ethelbertus, being now well instructed bie his wife and the hollie admonitions of Lethardus that he shoule not abhor the Christian name, bie the preachinge and exhortations of the which menne hee first of all, and consequentlie all the Englishe menne, as wee will shewe in convenient place, didd wholie receave the opinion of our religion. This was the dcllu. yeare from the birth of Christe. Augustine was driven to the Ile in Kent called Tanet, which boundeth eastwarde, and is skarce ix. miles longe and ij. in breadthe lytle lesse, but a fewe yeares since a littel arme of the water was so overcommed wherebye it was disjoyned fro the next firme lande that now a good pece of it is united and woonne to the soyle. Ther is allso an other Ile at the entrie of the Thames not muche bigger termed Heppia. But as touching that pointe whie the Englishe people were cheefelie made Christian bie the helpe of Gregori Bisshop of Rome, it is lefte in memorie that this was the cause: it cam so to passe that certaine bond children of Englond of excellent bewtie wear brought to Rome to be sowlde, whome when Gregorius hadd seene, being then a secular preest, he is reported greatlie to have mervayled at their witte and welsfaerdnes, and as hee was a manne of great sinceretye, soe did hee lament their chaunce that soe goodlie a kinde of menn was ignorant in the trew Godd; wherefore afterward aspiringe to the busshopricke, hee preferred nothing in the world beefore the winninge of Englishemenn to the societe of the Christian common welthe. Thus the religion of Christe was at the lengthe restored againe in the Ilond, which, after that King Lucius hadde firste receaved the same, sometime

Camd. Soc.
it beinge oppressed bie the Romains, sometime bie the Saxons, didde onlie remaine emonge the Brittons, that is to say, Wallsmen, albeit it was never but privatlie celebrated for feare of tyrants. Thus Augustine didde exceadinglie well deserve of relligion, as one whoe esteemed all daungers and discomodites as trifles in respecte of the salvation of manne, and being made an archeboshoppe, perswaded with Gregorius that the see of the archebussopphe, which from the first receavinge of the Christian piete under the reigne of Lucius was allways at London, mighte from thence be translated to Cantaburie. Miletus, the companion of Augustine, was apointed Busshoppe of London dioeces after the transposinge of the archebushopricke. Augustine forthewith, after the disposition of this seat at Cantuairburie, dedicated unto Christe the sumptuous temple which, as the brute goethe, was there erected of the Romaines to their prophane goddes, there placinge the chayer of the busshop metropolitan. Likewise when hee hadde confirmed the foundacion of the Christian relligion emong the inhabitants of Kente, hee consulted with Gregorius as towchinge the promulgation of lawse, whoe made these decrees: that suche things as weare geeven for howsold stuffe, parte therof shoulde be contributed to the busshoppe, wheareof he shoulde maintaine an howse of hospitalitee, an other parte to the other preestes, the thirde to poore folke, the fourthe for the reparacion of churches, that divine service mighte be executed in the best wise; that sacrilege and churche robbers shoulde bee soe ernestlie punished that they might acknowledge their offence, and restore if it weare possible the stowllne gooddes: that in the contracting of matrimonie it shold bee lawfull for the Englishemenn to marie with the fowrthe degree of consanguinet and kinred, or at the leastwise within the fifte, for that is more certaine: that the Bishopps which weare ordeined of Augustine should be consecrated of three or fower Bishoppes; besides this, that Augustine him selfe shoulde clayme no jurisdiction over the Frenche Bishops: finallie, that a woman great with childe, beinge noe Christian,
showlde be baptized, and after her deliverie, according to the aun-
cient usage, after xxxij. or xlvj. dayes shoulde be pourged, or enter
into the churche befoire if shee weare desierus. Not longe after
this Gregorius wrote letters unto Ethelbertus the Kinge greatlie
commendinge his sincere devotion in receavinge the woorde of
Godde, exhorting him to persevere in that hollie trade of life,
whereby he mighte worthelie receive reward of Godde. But now
to the former purpose.

Moreover this noble Prince Ethelbertus, at the request of Au-
gustine, fownded a church to Sainct Peter and Powle the apostels,
adorninge the same with large gifts, which after beecam the more
of renounwe throwghe the sepulture of Augustine himselfe and the
Kinges of Kente; and another pecullerie to Sayncet Powle at Lon-
don (which cittie a littell befoire hee hadde broughte under his
jurisdiction), and another hee dedicated to Sainct Andrew at Ro-
chester, garnishinge them bothe with bounteus liberalitie. Besides
these he dayle employed suche godlie woorckes, at the whicke time
Augustine, whoe hadd as it weare alltogether devoted himselfe to
the fortifieng and increase of religiion at home and abrode, fo-
seeinge that in shorte space hee shoulde bee unburdened of this
life, and fering leaste the sheepe which bie divine power he hadde
gathered in to the flocke shoulde straye into contagius and deadlie
pastures, beinge destitute of a sheepeherd, hee chose his compa-
nion Laurentius, a manne of noe lesse profounde learninge than
excellent demainor, and commended his sheepe to himme, sainge
thus, or like to this: 'I praye thee, O deare Laurentius, that
treadinge under thie feete all worldlie affaires, with prayenge and
preachinge, as it behooveth the goodd bishoppe, that thow wilte
have singuler regarde to the salvation of those menn.' within
shorte time after, this hollie father diseased, the xv. yeare after the
begininge of his residence there. His bodie resteth in the
churche of Sainct Peter and Powle, allbeit it was not as yet finished.
His soule joyfullie no doubte ascended to Godd the Father, to
receave in heaven the reward of his travaile, as it is justle to bee
thought of all men, seenge that for the sake of this Augustine, the veri apostel of the Englishe people (for soe is hee termed of Englishemen), great woonders and grace is daylie shewed. Ethelbertus died the xxi. yeare after hee becamed Christian, and the lvi. yeare of his reigne, a manne surelie at all times and of all men greatlie to bee commended, especiallie of the better sorte, bothe for the receaving of Christes relligion and geevenge the same to his people, and also in that hee was wholie inclined to pietee, for even to the verie laste houre of his life his merites weare singular toward the Christian common wealthe, of the which after his deathe hee was not unworthelie ascribed emonge the sainctes. His corps was caried to the churche of the apostells and there entered, and at this daie is in miracles resplendent.

After that in this maturitee of years Ethelbertus was deceasied, his sonne Edbaldus, being the vj. from Hengistus, was created kinge, being as then but a verie childe, whearie, when he cam to his owne swinge, hee casting behinde his backe the howlsom precepts of his father, gave him selfe wholie to all vicius behavior, and firste of all other thinges maried his steppe mother; secondarilie hee soe renownned the Christian relligion, so dispised and persecute the same, that as a pestilence hee seemed to detest and abhorre it, insomuch that it camme to passe that manie, what for the fear of thare prince, what for thare owne madnes, they chaunged the vertuus institution of their life; notwithstandinge that the archebisshopp Laurentius didd not cease from his accustomed exhortations to the people as towching theire persisting in their former race, for the which cause the kinge was wonderuslie mooved at himme: but the good prelate did longe suffer injuries pacientlie, but in the ende, when he perceaved that hee did but leese his brethe and laboure in preachinge and admonishinge, sithe the ranckeure of this tyrante daylie encreased towards the Christians, hee minded to fleeete into Fraunce, folowinge Miletus and Justus, two busshops, whoe, as wee shall elsweare make rehearsall, departed thither, beinge exiled bie the sonne of Sibertus Kinge of the Est
Saxons. But while hee addressed him selfe to this jornie, in his vision it seemed to him that Saint Peeter greatlie reprehended and punished him, in that hee, being unmindefull of the commandement of Augustine, wolde for the feare of penalltee leave his flocke to bee devoured of woolves; with which thinge he was soe feared that, sodainlie chaunginge his purpose, hee ceased from his enterprise; which thinge, when it was for certauntie intimated to Edbaldus, being stirred with this divine matter, hee asked pardon of Laurentius, and foorthewith disanullinge his filthie wedlocke, entred the trew saving helthe and was baptize; he revoked Miletus and Justus, and soe refourmed his life that it was evidentlie tried that his vitius yowthe was a pleasure unto him; but the Lodoners, which served idowlls, wold in noe wise receave Miletus, and for that reason he made his abode in Kent, and not longe after, Laurentius beinge deedd, he was consecrate archebusshep as third from Augustine, whoe when hee had wrought manie thinggs worthie to be woondered at, the iiiij. yeare after the beginninge of his resiens, he passed from his mortall life into eternall. After Miletus succeeded Justus, worthie of that appellation for his justice. In the bishopricke of London Cedas succeed Miletus, the brother of Sainct Cedda or Chadde; after Cedde, Winas; after Winas, Erchenwald, that righte hollie father, who to the ende hee mighte conferr all his substance to the communitie and participation of the relligious, hee founded two abbayse, one of monaches of thorder of Sainct Benedicte, at Chertsey, a village in the countie of Surrye, an other of noonnes at Barchinge, a village standing on the bancke of the Thames estwarde vij. miles from London. But I will re- tire to mie matter. In the meanee while Edbaldus, when he was becomm not muche inferior to his father in good deeds and sanctitee, died the xxv. yeare after the beginninge of his regne, whome everie mane bothe maye justlie and owghte to prayse and honor excedinglie, for bie how muche it was longer ere ever he attained to the knowledge of the Scriptures, bie somuche didde hee the more ardentlie embrace the same, so that it was not
easie to be discried whoe better deserved of our relligion, whether his father, in that he acknowledged and receaved it before him; or hee, in that hee redressed and renewed it being eche where exploded and contemned.

Next unto him reyned his sonne Ergomertus, not muche unlike to his father nether in loove towards his coontrie, nether in devotion towards Godd; for he, folowinge the example of his grandefather and father, made flatte with the grownde the chappels of the hethe goddes which as yet weare remaininge, that vaine superstition mighte bee clene eradicate and destroied, for as longe as their weare enie remainders of prophane temples dedicat to falls godds, it was not easie to withdrawe the hartes and mindes of men from the fanaticke worshippinge of idolls. Bie these goddlie factes it camme to passe that xxv. years he administrd peaceablly the kingdom which he had regallie furnished with lawse and ordinances.

At this season died Justus the archebisshoppe of Canterburie, after manie his goodlie woorckes for the beawtfienghe of the region, who a littell befoore hadd consecrated Paulinus Bushoppe of Yorcke, the companion of him and Miletus sente longe before into the Ilond bie Gregorius, unto whom he enjowyed this busines to enstructe the people of Northe Humberlande in the Ghospell, which, as it shallbee declared in an other place, hee didde verie well and diligentlie. Not long before, Boniface the Bishopp of Rome hadde geeven power unto Justus to make Bishops, as Bedas witnessethe, and within a little after that Honorius beinge Bishop of Rome sendinge his palle to Honorius Archebusshop of Canterburie confirminge the same, and grauntinge that as often as it shoulde happen the Archebissopp of Canterburie or Yorcke to bee deade and the sea voyde, hee that was the surviver showld concecrate him which was chosen in the other's place; least if that function shoulde be demaund of the Busshoppe of Rome, or the Frenche Archebissshops, relligion newlie sprong among the Englisheemenne might percase suffer detrement. Next unto Justus succeeded Honorius, after him Theodatus, after Theodatus Theo-
dorus the vij. from Augustine, whoe at his verie first takinge his office called a congregacion of busshops and preests, wherein weare made divers decrees to all orders of menne veri conducible to the blessed leadinge of their lives. The cheefe of theire acts and injunctions Bedas reciteth in the iiiijth booke and vth chapiter of his Ecclesiasticall Historie, whereof it is the lesse requisite that I shoulde entreat. After the death of Erombertus, his sonne Egbertus attained the regall crowne, of whome there is noe notable deade in minde by reason of the shortnes of his time: somme there are that have lefte in writinge that bie the meanes and woorckinge of Egbertus, his uncles, two moste hollie menne, Ethelbertus and Ethelbrittus, were put to death, whose bodies weare buried in the abbaye of Ramsie. Notwithstandinge that it is crediblie thought that Egbertus didd sore fore thincke himme of this detestable facte, yeat veangeance was taken on his sonne Lotharius, accordinge to the divine oracle in Exodus, the 34 chapter: visiting the iniquitie of fathers on their sonnes to the thirde and fourthe generation. This manne havinge layde an evel foundacion in the governinge of the realme, within shorte space, bie the procurement of Edricus, the sonne of Ethelbertus, (whoes restles rage pricked him to the revengement of his father's death,) he fell into civile dissention, in the which, emonge the Kentisheemen, who in sodaine uprone rose agaynst himme, hee was sore wounded, and shortly died under the handes of the leches and surgeons. Under the reigne of Lotharius the Archbishopp Theodorus called another convent of manie busshops, wherein the estate of religion and orders of priesthoode were newlie sifted and redressed, for not before that time hadd the Englishe churche receaved those former hollie sinods and counsels kepte amonge the Greekes, wherin manie hereses weare abolished owt of the Christian Churche.

After Lotharius, Edricus, the sonne of Ethelbertus, was made kinge, whoe beinge wrapped in domesticall contention, wherof himselfe was author, two years beinge skarcelie accomplished, hee was
of his owne subjects stripped from the imperie, and beereved of his life; which thinge beinge once blowne abrode, Cedowalla, kinge of the weste partes, beetweene whome and the Kentishe menn was ever deadlie hated, accompanied with his brother Molo, sodaynlie in-
ved the Kentisshe territorie, and, without resistance, made great spoyle, wastinge all that hee couldre reache, burninge in rage againste all men. The Kentisshe menne, feeling themselves wounded with suche sodaine discommoditees, bie necessitee constrayned to aban-
don all feare, ranne upon their enemies with suche a bande as thei coulder gather in that distresse. The westere menne, not able to susteyne their violent incursion, but levinge behinde them a great parte of their bootie, ran awaye, forsaking Molo in the middest of his enemies. Molo, beinge destittute of his fellowshipp, fledd, and hidd himselfe in the yele cotage, whome his enemies pursweing, caste fier into it and stifieled him. Thus the inhabitants of Kente beinge delivered from this present peril, makinge noe deli-
beration or provision for these things, strove emonge themselves for the creation of their kinge. Whilst manie were desierus of the kingdom, Withredus, the other son of Egbertus, when bi dilli-
gence hee hadd extinguished envie, and hadd reconciled the next borderers with monnie, with the great hope of his citizens he was made kinge, beinge the xi. from Hengistus. At this season Theo-
dorus the Archebusshopp yealded upp his life, in whose place was instituted on Brithowaldus, first of the Englishe bushshops, (for the others wear all Italians,) beinge the eighte in order of the busshops. Withredus beinge an approoved good manne, and verie desierus of quietnes, when he understooode that Ina, the westere kinge, prepared to make warre against himm, he procured his frindshippe with a great somme of monnie. And when hee hadd thus obtened peace he fullie fixed his minde on godlines, havinge Godde’s true relligion in great price, and furnishinge the realme with hollisomm decrees, and finallie, that nothing mighte bee wantinge to the unfeyned felicitee, (that which menne accounte noe small matter,) hee begott iij. sonnes, not unlike to himme
selfe, Edbertus, Ethelbertus, and Alricus, whoe reigned most prosperuslie after himme. The kinges which folowed after these didde so degenerat from there predecessors, and weare soe drowned in sluggishenes and impudencie that this onlie worthie the memo-
rie I have to say of them, that throughge their verie supine idelnes
the Kentishe menn weare broughght under the dominion of the
westerne people. There names weare these which ensewe; first
Edbertus, or Edelbertus, whoe, geevinge greater attemptes on
the people named Mercij then was fittinge to his power, was ap-
prehended and bownde of them, and, after beinge releaced, cowlde
not bee receaved of his owne vassales, they made so small
accounte of himme; it is incertaine what was his finall ende: in all
he reigned but ij. years. The next wear, Cuthredus, Baldredus,
and Ethewelphus, whoe was the xvij. and laste in the discours
of these kings, for, beinge taken prisoner of Egbertus, kinge of the
weste partes, yealded uppe his large dominion to the conquerer.
Somm have lefte in writinge that hee escaped, and after ledd a pri-
vate life. Thus was the kingdom of Kente united to the west
Saxons. The time of the reigne in Kente unto the losse of their
libertie, from the time of Hengistus, was aboute ccclxiij. years.

The second kingdom was of the Sowthe Saxons, which tooke the
originall of the Saxon Ella the xxxi. yeare after the arrivall of the
Englishemenn in the Ile; for hee, whilst the Britons weare
tossed with divers and variable waves of battayle, bie littell and
littell engroched on the sowthe partes of the Ile; there ordering
his kingdom, and levenge it to his posteritee, who weare for this
cause termed Sowthe Saxons, biecause the south winde, blowinge
owt of the southe, hadde full recours throughghe there contrie. But
there reigned verie fewe kinges, for as it beganne soone, soe it en-
dewed not longe, for as muche as they, beinge trodden downe in
civile dissention, did first of all enter under the dominion and
appellation of the West Saxons. The greatest parte of men sur-
mise that those weare the bowndes of their imperie, wherin at this
day the dioceses of Winchestre and Chichestre are limited. After
Ella ther ensewed but onlie iiij. kings, Sisca, Ethelvalchius, Berutius, and Aldinus, whome Inas, the western kinge, deprived bothe of life and kingdom, as herafter more plaine declaration shall bee made.

The third kingdom was of the Est Angles, or Englishmen, bie cause they inhabited that parte of the Ile which bowndeth estwarde; havinge therbi there denomination; which space at this daye is comprehended in the dioceses of Norwiche and Elye, beinge devided into three sheeres, that is to weete, Sowthefolke, Norffolke, and Cambrigeshere. Of these Uffa was the firste kinge, after whome shortele ensewed Titullus and Redovaldus; this mann beinge excellent in martiall prowes, achieved a luckie battayle againste Ethelfredus kinge of Northe Humberlande, as in an other place wee will declare in the life of Ethelfredus himselfe, (restoringe that kingdom to one Edwines, a younge man of goodlye disposition,) and receaved the Christian religion after his renowne gotten in warfare, that he mighte semblabie bee as well beloved of Godde as redowbted of menne. But, alas! hee profited not longe in this good purpose, for, beinge invegled with the wicked devises of his wife, a moste importunate and ungodlie creature, he renounced Christe, and so, within shorte time dienge, fell into the societee of the blacke Goddes. Next unto him succeeded his sonne carpwaldus, by instinct of nature verie well disposed, for at the first, beinge baptised, hee beegan to leade an hollie lyfe; but the line thereof was soone cutte in sonder bie the unmercifull treason of malicieux menne. Then didde Sigibertus obtaine the kingdom, as brother unto carpwaldus bie the mother’s side, and fift from Uffa, whose with all celeritee embraced the Christian faythe, wonderuslie amplifienge the same in his dominion. This wise prince, knowing nothinge to bee so complie an ornament to menne as learninge, and that there was great defecte and scarceite thereof in his riolme, sumwhat the more bie the exortacions of Bisshoppe Felix, a Burgonion borne, and a verie skilfull manne, hee fownded schooles echewheware in his kingdom, and especiallie
at Cambrige, that children there from there verie childehoode mighte receave erudition, wherebie in shorte time theye becamme singuler learned menne; and from that time the universitee of Cambrige continuallie flourished in the gooddie knowlge of all disciplines and sciences; wherfore Englonde, in that it hathe al-
ways hadd afterwarde learned menn, it is moste beholdinge and cheeflie it hathe to thanck Sigibertus, as himme whoe layde the first fowndacion of all goodd litterature, which was donne the \textit{dxxxx.} yeare of our Salvation. Sigibertus beganne now to bee of greate yeares, and so mutche the more studiuslie still to muse with himselfe how harde a thinge it was soo to governe a common welthe as it beehooved a goodd prince; wherfor in fine he resolved to leade a private life in the residue of his dayse, wherfor, surren-
deringe the administration to his coosine Egriicus, hee cowched him selfe in an abbay. But within shorte time after, when as Penda, a moste tyrannicall kinge of the Mercians, didde sore anoy Egriicus in warres, Sigibertus, to assiste and releeve his owlde peo-
ple, was constreyned to com forthe of the relligiushowse; yet, leaste hee might seeme unminedfull of relligion and former pre-
tence, carienge a wande insteade of a scepter, and havinge noe other armor but his sworde, hee entred the skermish, there receavinge his death with Edriicus, and allmoste the whole armie. Thus this sincere mann, incowntering with Godd’s adversarie, semethe as a martir to have loste his life. The next king was Annas, being the vij. from Uffa, whome Penda likewise with wea-
pons brought to his bale. Then ensewd Ethelberius, Ethelbal-
dus, Aldulphus, Elwoldus, Beornas, Ethelredus, and Ethelbertus, being the xiiiij. in the order of kinges from Uffa. This manne from his tender age was soe fostered and trained of his father Ethelredus that, being at defiance with vicious demaynor, didd owlnie cleave to the ingenius exercise of goodd artes. Manie, as well his deades as saienges, may suffice for prooфе, in that he was suche a prince that none coulde bee mor industrius, or more acceptable in all respects; none more indewed with humanitee
or popular humilitie, whoe was accustomed to have this perpetuallie in his mowthe: that it beseemed all mannen, the greater and mightier thei weare, to be so much the mor humble and affable, bie cause, quod hee, the Lorde hathe throwne doune the mightie, and hathe exalted the meke harted. Beesides this hee exercised the studdie of wisdom, not so muche in woordes as in sobrietie of manners and continence of life. Bie these vertewse did he quicklie allure to him the benevolence and loove of all sortes, and for bie cause he hadd allreadie bridede his affections, he fullie determined not to make effeminat and weaken his boddie bie the companie of women, for the which cause hee ernestlie refused marriage. But contrarie wise hee hadde vehement instigation of his counsellers to provide better for his posteritie, and the rather therefore to marrie. At the lengthe the matter being putt into the handdes of the cowncell, hee being but one, was dissuaded bie them all, in so mutche Alfreda, the dowghter of Offa, king of the Mercians, was empromised him to espouse. This moste jentil prince, who liked well the loove of all men, beinge desierus to comm in greater favor with his father in lawe, wente him selfe to bringe home this mayden, whoe as hee wente was feared with manie strange things, and suche wonderous tokens as seemed to portende som infortunate ende of his life; for when he tooke horsse the earthe in appearaunce trembled under his feete; and while he jorneyd in the middest of the day hee was soe beset with a clowde that for a season hee sawe nothinge; and, finallie, in his dreame it appered to hime that the chefe toppe and pinnacle of his pallace fell sodaynlie to the earthe. With these portentius thinges albeit he was feared (for, indeed, well he might be astonied,) yeat, fearing noe deceite, as a manne that measured all menn's usage bie his owne, went forward on his waye. Offa entertaigned this noble impe civilie, but his wife, whose name was Quendreda, a wight more wilie then piteus or goddlie, nothing moved with loove, but of audacitee sufficient to attempt enie hainus enterprise, wente abowte to persuade with her husbande that he
showld murther Ethelbertus, and, consequentlie, season on the whole dominion of the Est Angles. The kinge at the first abhorred suche a crime, blaminge greatlie his wife; nevertheless at the lengthe, at the importunate sute and sterne behavior of this wooman, hee was clene turned, and agreeethe to this blooddie facte. The busines of hasteninge the deathe was committed to one of a prompte and bowlde stomacke, which showlde espie time and place to accomplish this purpose, whoe accompanienghe divers other with him, as though he hadde benne sent from Offa to call for Ethelbertus, camme to him in the nighte time, and strangled this innocent younge manne, thinckinge on noe such matter; and forthe with Offa invaded bie force his realme, and possessed the same: but the good virgin Alfreda, knowinge the deathe of her espouse, accursinge her parents in all her praiers, and stirred sodainlie with divine inspiration, did longe beeore pronownce that it wold comm to passe that her mother showlde suffer iuste penaltie for soe devalishe a deede, which in short time happened; and she herselue vowinge herselfe to Godde in her virginitie, convoyed herselfe into a place named Crolande, and lived there moste devowltlie; the which place beinge a marishe grownde, liethe betweene Elie and the river Nine, and in times past, abowte the dcxcv. yere of our Salvation, beganne to bee famus throwge the memoriall of Saincte Guthlake, a monache, where he longe dwelled, and was buried. Whearebie, in processe throwge the miracles there shewed manie menn being browght thither, fownded there an monasterie of reli- gius persons of the order of Sainte Benedict, hard bie the river Nine, which even of late was extant; finallie, the corps of this martyr Ethelbertus was buried at Hereford, wheare miraculslie it resteth. After this the kingdom of the East Angles was sometime under the jurisdiction of the Mercians, sometime under the West Saxons, sometime under Kente, until Edmundus, an hollie man, laste of the Englishe line, obtained the same, whoe, when he aspired to the kingdom, governing with tranquillitee, and using piete and liberallitee towards eche degree, being at the lengthe slaine, throwge the treason of barbarus people, attained
martirdom, wherof this is reported to bee the occasion. Lotheb-ricus, a Dane borne, the father of Agnerus and Hubo, (of whom wee shall hereafter have opportunitie to entreate,) beinge greatlie delighted in hawkinge, as menne saye, on a time, taking a littel barcke, while hee wandered abowte the shore persewending the water fowle, with sodaine blast of the winde was driven into the maine sea, wheare, being tossed to and floe two dayse and two nightes, at the lengthe was blowne to the shore of the Est Angles, and forthewith, for his good skill in fising with haukes, was enter-tayned into hovesholde of Edmundus. Manie dayse weare not passed, but that a servant of the king's, beinge a fawkenere, hadd slayne him for envie, that hee was conningier then himselfe in that qualitee: for the which offence, when he perceaved that hee cowld gett noe pardon of the kinge, hee fledde into Denmarcke, and there, burning in hatred against Edmundus, in that hee would nott release himme, bethoughte him of this develishe* devise. He cer-tified for a trewe the Agnerus and Hubo (too verie sorefull orphans, for the mischaunce of their father Lothebricus) that he was slaine emonge the Este Englishemen, bie the commandment of kinge Edmundus. Agnerus, as soone as hee understode of his father's murthering, is sayde out of hande to have hasted into the Iland with noe small number of armed soldiers to revenge this injurie; and that as soone as hee camme to the Est Angles, that hee sente one of his men as espiall weare Edmundus sojorned, command-ing himme that hee showldl exacte monnie of the kinge, and other necessaries, as one all readie vanquished, declaring more over that hee showldl no longer reigne, excepte withowte delay he wowuld submitte himme selfe to the Danes; and hee him selfe all this while not in farre distance followed the espie as a manne pro-fessinge open hostilitee, and mindinge to make all thinges ether boorne with fier, or swimme in blodde. Edmundus, after hee harde the message, marvelinge not a littel at the unseemlie rashnes of this barbarus people, was marveluslie dismayde and appalled,

* Villainous, mary.
and makinge som delaye in musinge and cogitation, delibered with himselfe what might bee moste expedient in soe sodaine a terror; at the lengthe, this mosteinnocent creature, remembringe the sainenge of Christe, hee that loesethe his life shall finde the same, settinge all feare aparte, made this aunswere to the messengere: Saye unto thie haute capitaine that Edmundus, a Christian kinge, shall never becomme servile to the Danes, abhorringe the ownelie savinge religion of Christe, onlesse hee shall firste embrace the same allso. Hee hadde scarselie said these woordes, but Agnerus was sodainlie present, and russheing into the pallace, slewe divers menn, and apprehended Edmundus himselfe. Somm there are which write that this goodde prince at the firste avoided them, and afterward of purpose turned againe to them; and being demanded if hee knewe wheare the kinge was, made this aunswere: While I was in the court there was also Edmundus, whome you seeke, and when I departed hee voyded likewise, whose whither hee shall escape youre handds or nott onlie Godde knowethe. When the Danes, bie an exposition, understode that Godde was named, perceavinge verie well that this was the kinge, they tooke hime, they frushd him with clubbes all moste to deathe, they roved him throughe with arrowse, and finallie smote of his hedde, while hee called on the name of Godde; and thus this woorthie kinge receaved the noble victorie of martirdom. Yet these rude raskalls, not thus content, raged on the dead carkas, and hidde it emonge thicke shrubbes and briars, leaste the Christians showlde exhibit there accustomable ceremonies therto. But humane impietee prevayled nothinge against Divine providence; for while the Christen menn, which founde the boddie, made dilligent searche for the hedde, beeholde a voice was sodainlie hard in one corner of the woodde, wherunto all menn approched, findinge the hedd sownde and inviolate. There hooved faste bie it a woolfe, which wonderuslie kepte and preserved it; and (that which was to bee marveled at) this raveninge beaste didd not once taste of the bloode, which continuallie dropped from it. This begunn to bee
notoriuous amongst the miracles of Saincte Edmunde. But on the other side divers other have lefte in memorie that sharpe battayles weare fowght beetweene him and the Danes, with great slaughter on bothe sides, befoere hee cam under the yoke of his enemies. This was the yeare of our Lorde DCCCCLXXI. Edmundus lived xxxix. yeare, and reigned xvij. His boddie was enterred in a reli- gious howse of thordre of Sainct Benedicte, founded of an hollie bissshopp of that region called Alswinus, and dedicated unto him in a towne in the countie of Suffolke named Berie. These are the thinggs which certaine authors have alleged as the causes of Saincte Edmundes martirdom, whose opinion I will not affirme to bee althogether trewe, for as much as it is evident that the Danes camme not at that time oute of Denmarcke to revenge the death of the father of Agnerus and Hubo, but weare longe before in the Ile, whoe at the lengthe overcomming the people of Northumberland at Yorcke, (as it shalbe mentioned in the life of Alured, the kinge of the Weste parte,) they invaded the Est Angles, wheare shortlie thei slajnge Edmundus, reyngned over them certaine years. The which thinge one Saxo Grammaticus maketh especiall mention to bee trewe, who writeth of the Danishe gestes. Trulie he affirmethe that in the beginninge, firste, one Frotho, and then Amlethus, subdued the Britishe kinges and Scottishe, and in fine that the Englishe kings allso, whoe before vanquished the Britons, weare over commed of Frotho the thirde, Iverus and Regnerus, to [whom] at the lengthe was geven a valiend ruler, called Agnerus, whoe sharpelie afflicted the people which weare unfaythefull unto himme. This man of the Englishe cronographers is unfytlie called Juguare, even as of this Saxo hathe evellie termed the Englishe kinges, I thincke throwghe the defaulte of the printer; but let us retorne to the purpose. The Danes, when they hadd geven the overthrow to the East Angles, they made kinge one of their capitains, called Guthurinus, whoe, as hee was a prowde mann, soe hee governed crewellie, mindinge to extirpe bothe the stocke and name of Englishemenne; but, beinge preventing with
death, hee cowlde not fullfill his bloodie intente. After him suc-
ceded Ericus, likewise a Dane, whoe in that hee alltogether fol-
lowed the stepps of Guthorinus, bie his insolent rewlinge, within
littell after the beginninge of his regyne, the Englishemenn being
brought to the utter deseperinge of all thingges, in a furie slewe
him; which thing nevertheless proved noe great commoditee to
them; for what with the Danes being desierus to revenge this
murther, what with the westerne kinges desierus to enlarge there
dominion, they were so terriblie affected beetweene them, that in
conclusion they weare faine (as I will shewe ellswhere) to sub-
mitt themselves to the westerne kinge, called Edwardus, surnamed
Senior; so at the lengthe loste bothe their kingdom, which had
leasted longest, and their name bothe at once.

The fourthe kingdom was of the Este Saxons (if wee beeleeve
Beda, who maketh a difference betweene Saxons and English-
menne). There kingdom tooke his originall of kinge Erchenwinus;
the head and regall majestie therof was at London, which cittie
(as wee shewed beeefore) the Kentissh kinge Ethelbertus afterward
enjoyed; it was limited with those veri bowndes wherewith, in
our memorie, the dioeces of London is determined. But other
writers (unto whome I rather assent) surmise that the kingedom
of the Est Angles and Est Saxons was but all one in effecte, yeat
to have somtimes benne administered of two princes, in that they
are annexed; for it is well knowne that London was the cheefe
and rioll seat of them both. The kinges, which in the beginninge
succeeded Erchenwinus, wear theas, Sladda and Sibertus. This
laste was baptized of Miletus, bussshopp of London, to whome
they ascribe the abbay of Westmonaster. Howbeit, som authors,
to whome I easlie agree, do rather suppose the same to bee the
worcke of kinge Lucius. Sibertus begatt iiij. sonnes, Serredius,
Sewardius, and Sigibertus, in whome shined nether sanctitee,
nether the feare of Godd, nor enie sparcke of relligion; they soe
dispised the Christian name, they ranne to suche wonderus madd-
nes, that havinge in contemplte the eucharisticall sacrament, moste
grosslie and dispituuslie they receaved the same, in so muche that Miletus, denieng that he could ministre it to suche as hadd not ben sprinckled with the celestiall dewe of helthefull baptisme, was commaundd bie them forthewith to departe owt of the kingdom. Miletus being thus exiled, made expedition towards Laurentius, archebissopp of Canterburie, wheare, when the good prelates hadd a while consulted as menn ignorant what was best to bee done, and how they might sustaine the relligion, being now eche-wheare in extreme distresse, in the ende they agreed rather to geeve place to this unbridele tyranne, then to bee afflicted with soe menie scathes, and nothing to availe the Christian common wealthe; wherefore, Miletus and Justus, the bissop of Rochester, went with all speede into Fraunce, as Bedas is author. In the meane time, Serredius havinge warrs with the West Saxons, was slaine, bothe hee and his brethren; thus it was the pleasur of Allmightie Godd that cruell tyrants showlde bee regrated with juste penaltie for there great impietee.

After Sirredius succeeded Sigibertus, surnamed Parvus, that is to saye, littell, the sonne of Sewardus, whoe, farre dissentinge from his father in judgement, willinglie receaved the Christian relligion; but suche is the worlde, that no mann knoweth whome hee maye safelie truste, for not longe ateree hee was of his one people prevelie murthered at home, bie cause hee was mercifull to his enemies, folowinge this precept of Christe, wheare he saithe, Doe well unto those which hate you. Next unto himme reigned Suthellanus, Sigerius, and Sigehardus, of whome, saving that they weare baptized, I have no notable thinge to endite. After that these menn hadde runne the short race of their life ensewde Offa, the sonne of Sigerius, being the ixth. from Erchenwinus, in the ordre of the kinges, a yownge prince of excedinge goodd nature, who moved with devocion, wente unto Rome to be absolved, wheare he yeelded uppe his ghoste unto Godde. Hee made Colredus his heire. After whome succeeded Suthredus the xi. and laste of the Este Saxon kings, of whome wee will speake more afterward, in our
THE FOURTH BOOK.

Treatise of Egbertus kinge of the West Saxons, who, with this dominion of Est Saxons, joyned also Kente and the kingdom of Northumblerande unto his power and jurisdiction.

The five kingdoms was of the Mercians or Middel Saxons, havinge originall of Crida the Saxon, which was farre the greatest and moste riche, both because they inhabited the moste plenteus soyle of the Ionde, and also that theye cheeflie flourished in the prosperus propagation of menne. Of the breadthe and lengthe thereof is noe certeynite lefte in memorie, but menne doe well accounte that they inhabited those places wheare now are Lincolne, Coventtree, Lichefielde, and Worciter diocesses, and that parte of Hereforde dioces was within the limits of this kingdom, as it is to be seen in oulde monuments, for in the moste auncient cronacles wee maye reade that it was distributed into v. dioceses, even as there are som that put a diversitee betwene the Mercians and the Middel Saxons, which wheare on this side the river Trent, wheare as the others say thei, namelie the Mercians, wheare placed more westwarde, albeit indeade I thincke them to bee all one people. Crida, beinge a manne bothe opulent in treasure and renowned in fame, in bickeringe with the Britons, bie littel and litel obteyned that kingdom, which at the lengthe hee surrendered to his sonne Vibbas; whoe, beinge in haute corage nothing inferior to his father, did not oulalie preserve the same, but allso augmented it, eche wheare over comminge the borderinge Brittons. Then Cearlus seased on the kingdom; after whome succeeded Penda the sonne of Vibbas, the fourthe from Crida. Som write that this man was the author and beginner of the Mercians, which I am not able to saye. Hee was a man of great wisdom, witte in foreaste, easlie brideled with reason, yet in stoutenes of stomacke and warlike valiance passinge excellent: these vertewse weare counterpeased with the equalitie of vices. He was verie sharpe in manners, sterne of nature, exceeding crewell, verie fallse and deceitfull, wonderuslie dispites and enviuous towards the Christian name. With this trust and confidence of his vertewse and vices, the firste day that ever hee was crowned king, as
though the whole Ilonde hadde ben dewe to himme, thinckinge noe occasion of battayle to be refused, hee beganne to provoke with warre as well his fiers and confederats as his enemies, soe that partelie bie force, partelie bie guile and deceyte, he overthrew and slew with sworde Edwinus and Oswaldus, kinges of Northumberland; and Sigibertus, Egriclus, and Annas, moste noble princes of the East Angles. Nevertheless, it camme shortlie to passe that intollerable covetise to longe raging on his oune nation, at the length lighted uppon well deserved punishment, for Oswinus kinge of Northumberlande, more bie the provision of Godde then puissance of menne, did firste putt himm to flighte, and secondarilie with all his armie allmoste destroyed himme. Penda thus dienge lefte vij. children beeinnde him bie his wiffe Chineswid, namelie, Peda, Wilferus, Ethelredus, Wedas, Merwaldus, and two others whose names are not extant. Merwaldus bie his wife Ermenburga begat iij. dowghters, Milburga, Mildreda, and Milwida. These moste continent virgins, partelie throughe the hollie leadinge of there life, partelie throughe there godlines in relligion, wherein continuallie they inured themselves, were thought worthie of our forfathers to bee numbered among the Saintes. Likewise Chineburga, and Chineswida, whoe, as mention is made, weare canonized. Peda, a verteus younge mann, succeeded next unto Penda: from whome Oswinus winning Mercia bie the right of battayle, graunted him againe the sowthe parte thereof, and his daughter Lluchefreda in mariaghe, uppon this condition, that he would beecom Christian, the which thing with in a littell while after hee performe bie the exhortation of Alfredus or Egfredus, the sonne of this forenamed kinge Oswinus, whoe had espoused his sister Cunberga. This manne was the first of the Mercian kings that was christened, whose example the Mercians followinge, within the compasse of two yeares weare allmost all baptized; notwithstandinge there are somme which fallselie ascribe this facte to his brother Weda. In the meane while, after the deathe of Peda, the whole companie of the nobles beinge heevie and sadde, and soe mutche the rather in
that three yeares, verie sore against there wills, they hadde obeyed not soe mutche there owne kinge as their conqueror, desiered bie all means to retorno againe into libertie: what showlde I say? they forsooke Osquinus, and pronounced kinge one Wilferus, another son of Penda, a man well knowne to bee of singuler godlines. The estate of Mercia beeganne well to amende, for Wilferus, endevoringe the generall commoditee of the whole people, firste made moste profitable lawes, secondarilie never ceased to persuade them to religion till thei all hadde received baptisme. Hee mooved one battayle againste Cenovalchius, kinge of the West contrie, whome when hee hadde overthroune, hee ammerced himme with the surrender of the Ile of Wighte; which was in his jurisdiction, and not long after hee tooke leave of this mortall life. Hee begat of his wife Ermanilda, Chenredus and Wereburga. This mayden was brought bie her mother to the nonnerie at Elie, where being dedicated unto Godde, shee perpetuallie kepe her virginitie unspotted, and after her departure owte of this worlde, for her goodde life, was reckoned emong the sainctes. But as towchinge the foundacion of this college of Elie, we will heereafter make convenient declaration. Chenredus beinge now destitute of his father, and yet unripe to beare rewle, it pleased the nobilitie, that, till his nonage weare expired, his uncle Ethelredus, as protector, taking his tuicion, showlde governe. Thus Ethelredus beecam kinge as vij. from Crida, a temperate prince, and suche one as justelie mighte in richteousnes and religion bee compared with the former kinges. Hee was of as honest dealinge in his riall maestee as in his private condition, gentill towards all estates, soe excellinge in the sciens of warfare as one that rather desiered to defende his riiolme then to enlarge it. He foute in sundrie battailes for the exercise of his warlike knowlege; the one with the Kentishemen, leaste hee mighte bee noted of cowardise emong his borderers: the second with Egfredus king of Northumberlande, rashly invading Mercia, whome at the firste encounter he put to flighte; and afterwarde ceased from armes, mindinge to bee a soldier under Christe: wherfore hee renowncinge the life of
a kinge the xxx. yeare after the beginninge of his reigne, restored
the kingdom to his nephew Chenredus, and toke on himme the
profession of a monache. Chenredus in all pointes following the
stepps of his uncle, at the last, the vt. yeare after, tooke his voyage
towards Rome with Offa kinge of the Est Saxons, whare entringe
a religius hows with his companion died the ccx. year of our
Salvation. As concerninge these kinges, which of devotion went
to Rome, Platina maketh mention in the life of Bisshop Constan-
tine. After him reygned Celredus, and then Ethelbaldus, whoe in
the beginninge of his life enjoyed great tranquilitie, but not soe in
the ende, for having noe troblesom tempestes did a great while
rest peaceable, which turned him to great displeasure, for the
Mercians beginninge now to be wearie of their longe quietnes (for
suche is nature of the common sorte to bee desierus of novelties),
after hee hadd reigned xl. years, didd trayterusie murther the
goode kinge, who in all menns opinion was accounted blessed.
The author of the facte was one Beruredus, which usurped the
regall dignitee: doeng noe feat worthie relation, saving that hee,
beinge overcomed bie Offa, in recompence of his hainus offence
was rewarded with crewel deathe. This Offa, after the overthrow
of his enemie, possessed the kingdom.

In this manne was in his yowthe a certaine proportion, or rather
contention, of vertewse and vices. Hee extreamelie thirsted after
riches and the ampliſſe of his dominion, bie reason wherof hee
somtimes vexed the princes adjacent with warres; somtime he
entrapped them with deceits. On the other side, there was all-
moſte noe vertewe which hee didd nott ernestlie practise. He was
industrius in the feats of armes; hee was of suche stowntenes of
minde that who soe at that time was moſte coragius was unethes
able to countervayle him. Then, when maturitee of yeares drewe
on, in commendable demaynor and modestee, yea, in innocentie of
life, hee surmounted all menne. Yet in the beginninge of his
reigne, when hee was fresshe from the slaughter of Beruredus, hee
was of audacitee sufficient to adventure on all things; hee chased
with warres the people of Northe-humberlande and Kente, miser-
able afflicting them; he maintayned a right mightie fighte with Cenewolphus, the westerne kinge, wherein of longe time the contention passed betwixt them in equall balance. At the laste hee departed conquer. Which thinges the more noblie hee achieved the more hee was puffed with pride; the more incended to wade farther in creweltie; for Ethelbertus, a most innocent kinge of the East Angles, hee procured to bee murthered, bie treason entringe upon his kingdom, as more openlie wee specified in the life of Ethelbertus. Emonge the reste hee conceaved this hawties: he wolde neades translate the See of the Archebusshopp from Canterbrwrie to Lychesfieles, that his riolme might excede all others, as well in the pontificall dignitee as regall maiestee, envieng not a littell the Kentisshemenne the prerogative of their archebissopricke. Nevertheless his successor Cenulphus made to them restitutution of this preeminence, whearof they were unjustlie abredged. Bysides this hee founde oute manie covetus sleyghtes, wherebie hee might encroche as well the goodds of the prelates as also the commonaltees; but the beste was that in the vices hee persevered not longe, for firste perswading with himselfe that hee ought to have somme feare of menn, hee confirmed amitee and societee with the people adjoyninge, for hee maried his dowghter Egburga to Bitricus kinge of the Weaste Saxons. Hee earnestlie procuered bie embassage the frindeshipp of Charles le Mayne, the kinge of Fraunce, not forgetting in the meane time to allure the benevolence of his owne liege menn. One of his legates is thought to have beeone one Albinus, or Alchuinus, bie whose instigation Charles founded two universittees, or common schooles, as wee will shew in the life of Alured. But now againe to mie purpose. After this, for the feare of punishment, whearwith hee thought hee shoulde be plagued, to the intente he mighte the better appeace Godde's wrathe, hee forgave the prelates, and all indigent persons, the xth parte of their gooddes; hee beestowed large giftes on a magnificent churche, beinge then extant at Hereforde; he caused with great diligence to bee serched forthe the reliques of the boddie of Sainct Alban, and to bee transposed into a golden shrine garnished
with precious stones, and placed in the abbey which hee had erected to Saint Alban, enrichenge the same with large possessions, and in that place he edified an other relligius howse of thorder of Sainct Benedicte. Somme menne doe also thincke that the monasterie at Bathe was his woorcke. Yet Offa, whoe hadde trewe compunction of his sinnes, thincking that as yeat heehadde not made full satisfaction for his offences, departed towards Rome, that bie the sequestracion of his worldle riches hee might the easlier obteine remission of his crimes. He made his riolme tributarie to the Romaine busshop Hadrianus. The tribute was this: that everie howse shouild pay a peec of silver, usuallie called a pennie, which was the yeare of our Lord DCCXXV. Of this yearlie pension I will speake more heereafter in the life of Ina, kinge of the weste partes, whoe at the same time, or littell beeefore, gave the same gifte to the Bisishop of Rome. Offa, retieringe home from the cittee bie reason of age, which now drew on, when in all respectes hee hadde shewed him selfe a goodd prince, he, as it weare with his handes, yealded uppe his kingdom to his sonne Egfridus, and died shortlie after. Egfridus, being a yonge mann well enclined of nature, beeganne fro the beginninge of his rewle to followe the goodde doings of his father, and to stirre greate expectation to all menn of his yeares ensewinge; but, peradventure Godd havinge conceaved displeasure with the stocke, it cowlde not be perdurable, as the virgin Alfreda, dowghter of Offa, didde divine, as I shewed beeefore. For there were scardslie fower monethes passed when this yonge impe, skarsse ripe for deathe, departed owte of this transitorie life. He ordeyned Cenulphus his heyr, who derived his stemme and line from Penda. This manne, beinge in magnamithee, in pollice, and sincere life able to bee compared of right with enie other prince, hadde one great conficte with the Kentishe people, and tooke prisoner alive there kinge Edelbertus or Edburtus; but afterwearde, beinge moved with compassion, he graunting himme libertie. Hee allwayse hadde in greate honor his lorde and peeres of his riolme: he was allso a great patronne to the Christian relligion, for at the village named Winchecombe hee builded a sumptuus churche, with an howse of
relicious menne, of the ordre of Sanct Benet, enrichinge the same with faire possessions. Thus he reigned xxij. years. After this goodd father ensued a moste excellent sonne, named Chenelmus, but a verie childe, yeat of laudable demainor. Within fewe yeares, hee beinge gowned to mucho godlines, and onelie intenteive to divine matters, bie the procurement of his sister Quendreda, a moste execrable viper, in his veri childehode was bocherlie mothered of his instructor and bringer uppe; and, leaste this horrible crime mighte at enie time comme to lighte, or bee prejudiciall to the devilishe trespasser, the corpes of this innocent was prevelie buried in a place unhaunted. But according to the owlde saide sawe, nothinge is soe covertlie donn but at lengthe it will be knowne; so this was not soe closelie wroght as after openlie perceaved, for when the childe was not accustomable seene the suspicion might easlie arisse both of the slaughter, and of the slear and homicide; yeat, biecause miracles did well please antiquitee, they reported not longe after that a certaine skrowle of paper, entituled with gowlden letters, was layde bie an uncertaine author on the cheefe alter in the churche of the prince of the Apostels at Rome, wherin were conteined divers thinges of the martirdom of this moste innocent Chenelmus, and in what place his boddie did lie; and that bie this meanes it was miracularlie knowne of this hollie childe. The boddie was afterward founde, and reverentlie and solemply enterred in the abbay of Winchecombe, whereas at this daie that blesid martir is devoutlie worshipped, for manie miracles are donne there. But Quendreda, which had gieven noe small mayme to her stocke and contrie, bie the crewel distroigne of her naturall brother, was not admitted to bee governesse of the realme, as she hoped; but within shorte time, bie the juste plague of Godd, was striken with blindenes, and miserablie finishinge the date of her dayse, was tormented with manifolde and condigne afflictions. After this hollie Chenelmus, the kingdom of the Mercians beinge greatlie shaken and weakened, did manifestlie incline towards ruine, after whome folowed these kings: Cewolphus, Bernulphus, Ludicenus, and Uthelacus, menne neither notable in the
integritee of life, nether deades of armes, for Bernulphus and Ludicenus were ignominiously slaine of the East Angles; and Utelacus, being conquered bie Egbertus, the westerne kinge, was yoked with servage. After these succeeded Bertulphus, who a few years governed well at home, yet nothinge prosperus in battaile. Once, at the beginning, hee fowght hand to hande with Egbertus, the prince of the weste parties; but finallie, beeinge overcommed of the Danes, and bereved of his kingdom, hee fleeted from thence into Fraunce, and there ledde a private life. The Danes at that time camme into the Ilonde, under the conduit of their capitan and king Regnerus; and, being noe lesse desierous of spoile then to inhabit the Ilonde, ceased not to annoye the inhabittants, and soe muche the more biecause they wear farr from home, thei lived of spoyle, embracinge all things with slaughter and blood, greatli fearinge nether weapon, nether violence, nor treason; insomutche that afterwarde, when they beganne to have the maystrie over the Mercians, whileste they weare to carefull to enlarge their dominion bie the subdueng of the whole Ile, and good abear-ing of the inhabittants, a certaine valiaunt manne, named Buthredus, whoe was noted of singuler indurie, for that bie the right of lawe the Mercian kingdom was apperteyninge to him, with great number of armed menn sodainlie entered the bowndes of Mercia, eche wheare afflicting his enemies, and bie so sodaine feare putting them to flight, proclaimed himselfe kinge; which thinge was not a littell acceptable to the Mercians, bothe for that thei wer acquitted of the yoke of alienes, and allso bie cause thei hadd gotten a kinge of their owne progenie. This Buthredus rewyned xx. yeares, havinge manie rigorous conflictes with the Danes; but finallie hee receved so sharpe a plage that, beinge expelled owte of his contrie, for the performance of his vowe hee wente to Rome, and within short space died a private manne. The Danes re-entering the riolme of Mercia, fell into great anxiete and dowbt whom thei shoulde make cheefe rewler of the Mercians, for they hadd them in great distruste, thinckinge it more for their avayle if thei sett up a kinge of their owne lineage; yet in fine, misdoubting that thei
coulde not bothe withhoude Mercia, and sufficientlie besides susteine the burden of suche warres as mighte happen one in another's necke, in a lande so eche wheare abownding in hostilitee, they ordeined for there kinge one Cevolphus, an olde servant to Buthredus, binding him bie his othe at their pleasure and will to be deposed. Cevolphus was the last kinge of the Mercians, and xxiiith from Crida, the first kinge, a prince, trulie, under whome the realme coulde not possiblie but decline to ruine and utteranue, for the fatall destruction of this monarchie well accorded with the prince, as well obscure in stemme as voyde of all vertewse. This manne was oppressed bie Aluredus with great facilitee, beinge kinge of the weste parties, who soe enjoied the kingdom of Mercia. This was the year of our Lord dcccxxi.

The vj. kingdom was of the Northe Humberians, or people of Bernicia, which was also divided into the kingdom of Deira. It hadd the beginninge of Ida, the first lorde of that soyle after the arrivall of the Englishemenn, which was the lxxviiij. yeare of the comminge of Englishe people, and the dvij. of our Salvation. Some conjecture that, at the first, Dukes weare the governors of Northumberland, who sufficientlie enlarged the bowndes thereof, and consequentlie Earles. Wei maie justlie surmise the largenes of this riolme to have ben of as ample wise as at this day the dioceses of Yorke, Carleyle, and Durisme. It was named Northumberland, bie cause it bowndethe northwarde, and is full of shaddowe, throughghe the heighte of the hills wherein it abowndethe, and is divided in two partes, that is to saye, Bernicia, which joineth upon Scotland, and Deira. It is thought that Alla or Ella did first pos sess the same, reininge therein xxx. yeares. But Idas, which was a stowe and warlike manne, to the intent he might well deserve the name of a kinge, and that his kingdom might agree thereunto, soe bestirred him with weapon that he enlarged it from the river Humber to the Scottishe sea, vanquishinge Lothus, prince of the Pictes, and subdueng Coranus kinge of Scottes. Thus within the revolution of xij. yeares of his government their
befell so great maiestee to this kingdom that to the confines and borderes it was noe lesse terror then in admiration. After Idas reigned his sonne Addas, Clappas, Theodulphus, Freodulphus, Theodoricus, Ethelricus, within the space of xxxij. yeare. After Ethelricus succeed his son Ethelfredus. With this Ethelfredus it is lefte in memorie that Ethelbertus the Kentishe kinge treated streyght after the begininge of his reigne to confeder with him in battaile against the Britons (whoe betoke them selves in to that coste which we call Wales), and especiallie against the monaches of Bangor, which weare aboute two thousand in number: whoe albeit thei receaved the Christian relligion, under the reigne of Lucius, yet being mindeful of their injuries, did not onlie not ædesie the Englishemen with Christian relligion but denied moreover to assiste eeven Augustine himselfe preaching the Ghospell. Trewlie the relligious persons, accountinge them there mortall enemies, did undowbtedlie beeleeve that, accoridng to the divine adage, it was not lawful to bestow that which was hollie uppon dogges. Nevertheles I surelie beleive that Ethelfredus, partlie throwghe desire of rule, partelie bie reason of the owlde festered canker of hatred, did moove this new atteempte towards the Britons. The Britons at this time held the cittey of Legions, which the king mindinge to assaute endevedore to plante a sige rownde abowte it. But the citizens, which preferred enie evell beebefore beeseechinge, and in nothing misdoubtinge their power, issued forthwith scattering on thier enemies, whome Ethelredus entrapping bie deceite did easlie putt them to flight, usinge cheeflie extreemite towards the monaches of Bangor, which resorted in great rowtes into that place, mindinge to make suppliccation to Godd for the prosperus successe of their companie. Hee did moreover put the Scotts to flighte, whose desierus bie warrs to abate his faelicite had ministered releefe to the Brittons. After these exploites, thus luckelie achieved, hee now having noe forayne enemie, to the ende he might at home likewise acquit himselfe of all daunger, hee beeganne to deliberat and kaste with himselfe how
he might dispatche owte of the waye Edwine the sonne of Alla
king of Deira, whome his father hadde made heire and he hadde
beerefte of his kingdom; for well hee perceaved this yownge impe
to bee indewed with singuler vertewes, and daylie occasions whie
hee showlde more bee feared then that hee showlde feare: for in
ridinge hee was noe lesse skillfull then stowte, the darte hee
threwe artificiallie, he for exercise contended with his squall, hee
gave himselfe to noe vice, neither sufferinge him selue to be cor-
rupted with riott nether with sluggishenes, to the ende hee
might becomme worthie of a kingdom: this disposition to goodnes
was a terror to the kinge, knowinge that ech man as hee was
most valiaunt so was hee naturallie moste desierus of imperie,
yeat at the lengthe, judginge that it showlde not goe well with him
if bie treason hee showlde destroye suche a yownge manne as was
wel beeloved of all men, hee seynedlie pretended a great crime
towards himme, and in this coloure banished himme, think-
inge that hee bie this meanes beinge brought to miserie shoulde
have the waye more open to offende, but it fell owt farr other-
wise then hee surmised. Edwine fledd to Redovaldus kinge of
the East Angles, of whome hee was gentlie intertayned and well
estemed, for well perceavinge the vertews of the yownge man, hee
cowde not but embrace him as a father, for his parte purposinge
to aide him with his advise, authoritee, yea and with weapon ra-
ther to protect him then bie enie injurie hee showlde bee hindered
of his adversaries. These tidinges, as soon as they were brought
to Ethelfredus, he determined bie some meanes ether to make an
ende of Edwine or of him selfe, wherfor in all haste he sent am-
bassadours to Redovaldus requiring him to send back Edwine, or
otherwise to bedd himme to battayle. Redovaldus, when hee hadd
harde the entente of the legats, denied ether to infringe the aun-
cient rightes of hospitallitee or to surrender the nobel yownge
mann to soe dispiteus an enimie. The legats having their aunswer
departed home and pronouncned warrs. Within few dayse after,
there mindes were so enchafed on bothe sides that the kinge
camme to handestrokes. After long contention Ethelredus was slaine in fighte, with a great number of his men. Redowaldus after this conquest liberallie restored to Edwine his father's kingdom. In the meane space Oswaldus, Osmius, Enfredus, Osricus, and Offa, the sonnes of Ethelredus, hearing of the death of their father, fledd speedelie into Scotlond, whome Eugenius the Forth jentellie entreated, causing them to be baptized, ministring to them for his time riches and succors, especiallie to kinge Oswaldus, against his enemies. The Virgin Ebba followed her brethren into Scotland, and was browghte to the entrie of the river Forthea, of whome the next promontorie toke the name, being at this day called Ebba. Edwine streyght after the entrie of his kingdom enlarged the limites thereof on all sides. For hee subdued the iles lieng abowte himme, which Bedas (as we sayd in the first Booke of this woorcke) callethe Mevaniae, som others Hebrides: he overcam the Scotts, and compelled the Picts to abide in their allegiance; he overcamme in plaine field Cadwalle, a kinge of the Britons, a man naturallie crewell, and stowe bothe in boddie and in minde. These thinges when hee hadd abrode honorable perfourmed, at home alsoe with like diligence he disposed all things, and browghte to passe that in his riolme and dominion ladie justice might bee the governesse in all thinggs: soe that to the obtening of the trewe glorie, this mann, no lesse valiaunt than wise, seemed onlie to lacke the knowledge of the Christian religion: the which also to the ende hee mighte embrace, firste he hadde occasion throughge an oracle, by the which (as he eschewed the raginge furie of Ethelredus, as hereafter shall be shewed) he was admonished to have goodd hope: secondarilie, the societie and alliaunce which hee hadde confirmed with Edbalde the Kentishe kinge; finallie, the moste helthefulle advertisments of Paulinus bussshopp of Yorcke. For Paulinus, a manne of sincere livinge, abowte the dcxxv. yeare of our Salvation, was sente bie Justus archebussshopp of Cantuarburie, with Ethelberga the sister of Edbalde, unto her husband Edwine, as yet not seen in the di-
vine scriptures, that he mighte instructe the men of Northum-
berlande in the Ghospel, and execute his hollie ministerie befoere
the Virgine, for Justus thoughte that in shorte time it woulde so
growe in use, that bie thease meanes bothe the kinge and people
woulde the lesse abhorre the name of Christe; which forecast
toke goodd effect, for Edwine willinglie promised that his wife
woulde live accordance to the Christian rightes, promising of his
owne accorde to enter the felawship of the Christians, if so be
that the Christian sect, being well examinéd of his menne, showl
d bee fownde more sownde and hollie than the reste. In the mean
time Ceoloulphus the V. kinge of the West Saxons repined at
the presente felicitee of Edwine, for he sent a certaine villaine,
ready for suche a purpose, forthewith to slaye himme. When the
ruffian camm to the kinge he marched towards himme as one
that wolde have declared somme great matter, and, drawinge owt
his dagger, strake att himme. The kinge, misdoubtinge some
treason, went backwarde soe hastelie that one of his familiars
entered betweene the stroke and himme, and was therewith thruste
throghe the boddie; nevertheless, the stroke was so sore and
vehement, that throghe the bodie of this friendlie manne the
kinge was hurte, albeit verie little; but this varlet in the verie place
was torne in peeces. The selfe same daye Ethelberga brought
forthe a daughter named Ethanfreda; for bothe the which giftes
Edwine thanked his fonde godds, whome Paulinus admonished to
acknowledge these benefits as receaved of Christe, not of vaine
godds. The kinge easilie herde the goode busshopp well enfourm-
inge himme, and againe promised that in all haste hee woulde re-
ceave the trewe religion, if bie the goodd assistaunce of Christe,
according to his minde, with his hande hee might well revenge the
injuries which hee hadde receaved of the westren kinge: and to the
ende he might shew assured hope of keepinge his promise, hee
delivered his late borne daughter to Paulinus to be consecrate
unto Godde, whoe forthwith baptized her, being the firste chris-
tened of all the Northumbrians. Paulinus againe warned the
kinge that he should not aske vengeaunce of Christe, shewing bie example that wee owghte to spare, yea and to loove our enemies. Edwine, as sone as he hadd receaved his wownde, prepared an armie, marched towards his enemie Ceoloulphus; he overcamme him and chastened him with crewell death; which busines being luckelie ended, Paulinus, who studiuslie en-devored to winne the kinge unto Christian pietee, getting opportunitee, drewe neare, and shewed to Edwinus that the All-mightie hadd heard his praiers, requiring him not to contemne relligion, nether seeke delayse therin, but that he wowlde incontinent beecom Christian. The kinge, which ordered all things with prudence, alleginge himselef to bee a straunger in the case, caused all learned menn to bee sent for, that they mighte dispute with Paulinus of the Christian relligion, to thende that he might well perceave whether that weare better then his idolatree or nott. While these things of Paulinus weare in hande, the kinge receaved letters from Honorius, the Romaine busshop, wherin, bie divers reasons, he was moved to receave the worde of the eternall Godd. But the king’s minde stickinge in the secte wherin it was fostered from his tender years, didd allmoste no-thinge encline to enie new relligion; which thinge trulie I wowlde saye was don bie divine providence, for peradventure, Godd wolde that this prince, which at that time was accounted moste wise, showlde firste well ponder bie doweblinge the relligion, as longe beeore Sainct Thomas the Apostell did in the firste beginninge in the encrease of the Ghospel, beeore he wowlde receave the same, to thentente that therbie others, nothing mistrustinge the trewthe therof, might most desieruslie affecte the same. Emonge these things, while learned menn wasted the time in disputacion, Edwine remembred the former oracle, wherbie hee was the better induced to beeleeve, which revelacion was of this sorte: at suche time as hee beinge expelled his contrie, lived with Redovaldus, and was desiered bie the legats of Ethelfredus unto deathe, hee beganne to stande in great ambiguuite of his saftie, fearinge that if
THE FOURTH BOOK.

hee shoulde tarrie to incurre the handes of his enemies; if hee shoulde preveli departe, hee shoulde bee noted of unfaythefulnes for mistrustinge so thanckefull an entertainement. In this perplexitee [he] beehelde sodainelie at midnighte a certaine manne of strange countenance and attire approchinge unto himm, demaunded what rewarde hee wolde geeve himme if hee should shewe him the thinge which should clearlie dispatche him of all languor and sorrow: unto whome Edwine (allbeit hee finallie trusted the wordes of an unknowne person) made this aunsweere, that what soever hee cowld lawfullie desier, or he himselfe justlie performe, willinglie hee wolde graunte. Then streight hee opened how it shoulde comme to passe; firste, that hee shoulde escape the traines of his enemies, and consequentlie recover the kingdom of his auncitors, enlarging the same on all partes bie the overthrowinge of his enemies. After this hee layde his hande on his hedde, sainge, 'O Edwine, when thow shalt bee-comme conqueror, as often as enie mann shall come unto the, and shall laye his hande on thie hedde, then well remember to keepe this faythe and promisse.' After these woordes this divine sowthe-sayer sodaynlie vanished owt of sight, that it might evidentlie apeare that it was noe mortall mannes prophecie whose minde is ignoraunte in the things to comme, but the verie messenger of Godde. The younge manne, beinge wonderuslie delightsed with this oracle, revolvinge it longe in his minde, durste nott of a goodd season utter it unto enie manne. Wherefore, when as afterwarde of purpose hee delayed these affaires, nor was not flexible, bie the procurement of enie manne, Paulinus, whose profited nothinge for a longe season in his advertisements, came unto himme, than beenge at Yorcke, and throughge hevenlie instillacion, as it is to bee thought, laide his godlie hande on his hedde, requiringe himm to call to minde what this acte shoulde portende. Edwine, bie and bie, as one afraide with the wonderus successe of this oracle, withowte delaye fell prostrat beeefore the feete of the bishop, and lookinge uppe into heaven, is reported to have sayde in this wise,

CAMD. SOC.
'Yeat at the lengthe, O Allmightie Godde, this present daye doe I acknowledge thee, through the noble worcke of thie sonne Jhesus Christe, wherfore moste humblie I desier the of pardon for mie soe longe impietie, that beinge hetherto soe perverslie driven, I have not so mutche as yelded the thanckes of thie divine benefittes; and successivelie turninge towarde Paulinus, sayed, 'And thee, allso, O reverend father, I desier, that first thou wilt vowchesafe to gieue mee a littell space to consulte with mie liege people as towching this erneste matter of relig ion; and then, with all speede, associat mee to the blessed number of Christians;' and for beecause there was noe convenient place for divine service in Yorke, beinge a cittie full of idowls, the kinde, bie necessitee, was compelled for the season to byld a churche of woodd, which he wolde have consecrated to Sainct Peter the Apostel; wherfor at the last, in this temple, after longe contention as concerning the Christian fayth, Edwin, the xi. yeare of his reign, and the cl.xxx. yere after the comminge of the Englishe menne, which was the ccxxxvii. of our Salvation, with a great number of his menn, was baptized of Paulinus; and after he was lifted owt of the fonte, he layed the foundacion of square stones, but beinge intercepted bie deathe, lefte this worcke to be accomplished to his successor Oswaldus. In this churche Paulinus placed the see of the archebusshopp. At this daye it is a sumptuus temple, and inferior to none in magnificence of the worke. Edwine having consecrate bothe churche and cittie to Godd, bie this example and diligence of Paulinus, Carp-waldus, kinde of East Angles, with all his people, were allured into the Christian common wealth; which things, as soone as they weare knowne, Honorius, bisshopp of Rome, beinge greatlie delited thearwith, did incontinent for a reward sende unto Paulinus the moste notable robe or mantell of the arche busshopp, and unto Edwine and himme directed his letters, full of grace and humanitee, wherin especiallie hee commended the integritee, diligence, and pietie of the prelate, which hadd soe well deserved of the relligion: and the kinde, allso, even unto Heaven he extolled, that not onlie
hee hadde embraced the Christian opinion, but also had a president and example to others for the receavinge of the same; exhortinge him stoutelie and saythesullie to defende the same, even with patience, unto the death, in consideracion that of our Lorde hee showde receave worthie rewarde. Thus it cam to passe that the North Humbrian kingdom especiallie flourished, and that, bie the industrie of the prince, peace in all costes was purchased untill the sodaine breche and uprose of Cadwallo disturbed the same; for soe daylie experience teacheth that nothinge is bie manns power donne, but commonlie bie the same it is undone; for Penda, a moste cruelle tyrant of the Mercians, being to muche agreed at the prosperus successe of Edwine, suborned Cadwallo to rebellion, whoe of his owne swinge didd hevelie beare the dominion of the North Humbrians, and they bothe togetheres unitinge their force and gooddes, didd in great violence sett on the menn of North Humberlande. This fierce and coragius prince, on the other side, as sone as he herde of the comminge of his adversaries, hee camm forthe of the cittie with a small troupe of horsemenne, more to discer the number of his enemies, and to knowe their purpose of his neighbours, then to joyne in handstrokes; nevertheless, wheras his enemies were not farre of, and in multitude seemed muche lesse then indeed they were, hee was nothinge dismaid with the smallnes of his companie, but manfullie invaded them: theis fowghte sharplie on both partes; neither were the soldiers of Edwine appalled, biecause at the first fronte they perceaved the rowtes of the parte adverse to be augmented, but rather everie one beinge enkendeled with the example of the stowte and prncelie capitaine, with great travaile endeavored to withstande the sodaine irruption of the unwildely multitude, and beinge in the verie assured hope to attaine victorie, Edwine, in the middeste of his manful and worthie assault, was striken downe starcke dead. This ruthfule death of the haute prince didd interrupt a moste noble victorie, for the fighte revolved moste lamentablie to the North Humbrians, and the fightingemen,
astonished at the slaughter of their prince, weare miserablie putt to flight and slaine; and in the same moment Offredus, the kinges sonne, was slaine in the battayle. Edfredus, his other sonne, for the preservation of his life, yealded himselfe unto Penda, whome hee, breaking perjuriuslie his vow, afterwarde murthered. Ethelberga, the king’s wife, for as mutche as thinges fell owte so infortunateli, moste piteuslie lamentinge the death of her housbonde, accompanied with Paulinus and her two daughters, Enfreda and Ethelereda, fledde unto Edbaldus her brother, then kinge of Kente; and thus in one littel instance of time the estate of North Humberland was cleane defaced. This was the dcccxxxiiij. of our Salvation. Edwine lived xlvij. years. Paulinus, at his goinge to Cantarburie, was jentelie entreeted of the archebusshop Honorius, and was endewed with the diocesse of Rochester, in the steede of the Romaine busshop, being latelie dead, wheare he liv’d moste continentlie. Trulie herebie wee maye see that in times paste other busshops hadde noe riches at all, as a thinge nothinge necessarie to preestehoode, or at the least wise that thei regarded them not, sithe that Paulinus, renouncinge the archebusshopricke of Yorcke, did take on him the meane bisshopricke of Rochester, being mucche lesse in revenues. The diocesse of Yorcke a certaine years after, emonge the persecutions of tyrants, was administred bie the busshops of Lindisfarne; at the lengthe Ceddas, a right hollie busshop, toke the charge on him. Wilfredus succeeded next after himme, who suffered manie discommoditiees, in so mutche, that twise within the space of xlv. yeares, whearin hee was resident, hee was deprived. Hee and Ceddas alsoe, for that thei bothe well deserved of the religion, after their sownde and sincere life were ascribed emonge the sainctes. The fayre churche at the village named Ripon is the worke of this saincte Wilfride, where he erected a college or chantrie of pricestes, in which place of late dayse his corps was reverentlie observed. Bosas succeeded next, and after him Ihon, being vt. from Paulinus. After that Edwine was slaine in fighte, it appeareth that the kingdom of Northe
Humberland was divided between Osricus, whoe hadde Deira, and Enfredeus, who had Bernicia. These menne, albeit they were Christians, yeat were thei soe drawne of their vices wherein they were notorius, that in shorte space they detested their religion. But Godd would not longe suffer this impietie, or rather atheonisme, for scarstlie one yeare had runne his race, that thei were both with weapon slaine bie Cadwallo kinge of the Brittons. And for this cause their are som which, bothe for their uncleane life, and also for the shortenes of their dayse, doe not accompte them emonge the Northehumbrian kings. After this, Oswalldus, the thirde sonne of Ethelfredus, being the x. from Ida, was created kinge of Northumberlande, whoe, after the decease of his father, was longe banished in Scotlond, wheare beinge made a Christian, hee passed the flower of his yowthe in good artes emonge good menne, and especiallie throwghe travaylinge and exercise he learned the arte of warfare, which he esteemed as certaine religion, never mindinge to put the same in ure without great provocation; whearbie it camme to passe that Cadovallo the Brittishe kinge hadde him allmost in contempte, for in that not longe beeore hee hadde overthrowne two princes, he wasted and spoyled all things more freellie and crewellie, whearas noe manne was prompte to encounter or resiste his hedlonge temeritee, his stomacke was enhaunced, his minde becam orgulus, in comparison of him selfe; all Englishemenn he contempted, neglected, and dispraised, accusinge them of cowardise, securitie, and soggishenes, so that openlie hee bosted himselfe as borne to their utter distruction. While his minde was overwhelmed in this pride hee feared noe-daunger; thus this lustic Britton chalenged Oswaldus in battayle, nothinge waienge how puissant his adversarie was in armes. The English prince withoute delaye broughte his soldiers into the plaine feelde, whearas in times paste the menne of the Romaine Actius hadde builded a wall to repressse the incursion of the Pictes, and notwithstanding that of his adversarie hee was provoked to fighte the firste daye of his comminge, yet hee kepte him within his tents,
and in the meanse time caused the crosse of our Savior to bee carried round about the tentes, and the armed menn earnestlie to pray for the good performance of their assayres, which beinge donne, the cross was there placed as a monument of the victorie to comme. The name of the place was afterwardes called the heavenlie campe. The nexte daye, after the execution of divine service, hee browght it forthe towards his enemie, desiering to skirmishe, and, after the onsett was blowne moste seerelie, he gave them battaile. The fight was stoutlie maintaine with equall strengthe on bothe parties, until the force of the Britons beganne somewhat to bee abated and diminished, which as sone as Oswaldus apperceaved, hee renewinge the battayle, firste putt this his fierce enemie to flighte, and afterwarde apprehending himme, slewe bothe him and allmoste his whole retinue. This was the final ende of Cadovallo, a moste impatient adversarie of the Englishe name. Of nature and countenance he was mervaylus terrible, and for that cause mean say that the Britons made his portraiture and image, that it might bee a terrou to their enemies beeholdinge the same. After this mann succeeded his sonne Cadowallader, whoe, in that the Britishe estate semed to encline to the fatal daye, leaving his kingdom went to Rome as we sayd before, and there died. After the fortunate accomplishinge of his battayle, the godlie prince Oswaldus endeavored nothinge more intentivelie, to the ende he might seeme to regrate Allmightie Godd for his victorie and others his benefites, then moste studiulie to encrease the Divine service and establishe religion in all his realme; for the which cause bye embassadours hee sollicited the bishopp Aidanus, a man moste excellent in all respectes, to come unto hime, and caullinge to minde how well hee hadd instructed him with his hollie advertisements while hee lived in exile in Scotlond, moste willinglie, lovinglie, and jentillie he enteretyned hime at his comming into North the Humbrians the
perfaict foundacion of the eternall relligion, and for that cause required of the kinge a place convenable for the see of a busshop, and whereas divers menne harped on divers places as expedient for soe godlie a ministerie, he thought the Hollie Iland, then named Lindisfarnis, to bee moste feete, bie cause it lay farre from all concourse and haunt, so that therein, as in a certayne desert, hee might intende to the Divine function. In this soyle Aidanus placed the see, ordeyninge and providinge all things apperteininge to the dignitee of a busshop. This was the dcxl. yeare of our Salvation.

This place is aboute the borders of England and Scotland eastwarde, in the shore lieng on the right hand of the Ile, which everie daye twise bie the flowinge and swellinge of the sea in the space of xii. howers, is on all sides environed with waters, so that it is made a plaine Ionde: nevertheless, when bie sequalle time the waters departe, summe parte of the grounde remaining drie and annexed to this londe. The whole compass is aboute three miles. At this daye of the Englishe nation it is termed Hollie Iond, bie cause there lieth the entred the bodies of Aydanus, Cuthbertus, and divers other saincts. The place as yet keepthe his nature, so that it appeareth howe they were deceaved, which thought Lindisfarnis to be that Ile which is now called Farnem, being vij. miles distant, wherof wee will speake more hereafter. In this place when as Aydanus hadde established the Pontificall See, this sincere mann seeing not to instructe the people with the hollie Ghospell; in all his preachinges there commonlie chaunced matter worthie the beholding, for when as Aidanus declared the Christian faith, whoe as yeat was not skilled in the Englishe tongue, (which was then rude, altogether intermedled with the Saxon phrase, not as yet garnished with trimme pronunciation, nor in noe poinct agreeing with the Scottishe language,) the kinge, which was conninge in the Scottishe speach, receaving the wordes from the mouthe of this goodlie manne, didd evidentlie expounde them to the people, whearbie it camme to passe that the kinge
and the busshopp didde bothe at once preache the Ghospel, and that the vulgares, partlie throwghe the goodnes of the prelate, partlie throwghe the maiestie of the kinge, didd the more diligentlie attende, receive, and digeste the same. Bie this meanes religion daylie more and more increased emonge thinhabitants of Northe Humberlande, cherches weare ædisfed, and especiallie in the cheef and celestiall fielde ther was erected a temple of magnificent worckmanshiopp, whearin as soone as the devowte prince hadd made the crosse of our Lorde, the place becam notorius throwghe manie miracles, for in the whole contrie abowte Bernicia, before the erection of this crosse bie Oswaldus, there was nether churche nether enie monument of hollie things; nether didd the other affayres of North Humberland enie lesse increase then this piete, for Oswaldus, throwghe his godlie love mixed with his noble corage (in the which as in æquall balance hee shined towards all menne), allmost withowte slaughter or bluddeshedde, the Brittons, Pictes, Scottes, and Englishemenn, being nations different in speeche, ether hee frindelie receaved into amitee, or stoutlie repressed with the yoke of servage. Thus Godd blessed with riches the good kinge, thus he directed him toward hevenlie rewardes who allredie hadd entered the jornie; but nether the greatnes of dominion nor the abundance of treasure cowlde ever alienate or withdraw his minde from humanitee and mildenes. There was in this manne greate hollines, and marvelus affection towards mercifullnes; he never repayed to enie manne evell for evell, but accordinge to the example of our Savior Christ, the highe kinge of kings, he wisshed well and prayde for them of whom he hadde receaved injurie; he was not unmindefull of that owld texte, bie their fruites yee shall knowe them, desiering generallie to deseve well of all men, to visite the chambers of sicke persons, to releeve the diseased with woordes and gifts, to ransom the bonde and set at libertie the emprisoned, bie payeng dew debtes to the dispayring creditors, to norishe withe fatherlie pietie the selie widowse and orphans, defending them from the injuries of the decepytful,
and punishinge the deceavers. Emong these charitable deads one is especiallie worthie of memorie. On the daye when Jesus Christe had troden death under foote and resumed life, as he satte at dinner with Aidanus, he was certified bie his servaunts, that beeore the dores of his palace the pore people were assembled begginge for meate, whereat this charitable prince beinge moved, hee reched the silver vessel with meate which stode nexte to himme, and commaunded the same with the contents proportionallie to be distributed to his neadie Christian bretherne. Aidanus for so munificent and liberall a deade turned him towards the kinge, and takinge him bie the right hande sayd, Now Godde graunte that this hande never putrifie. Which thinge it is to bee thought that this goddlie manne sayde not withoute the aspiration and assent of the Hollie Spirit, for trulie this hande, after the corruption of the boddie, didd allwayse remayne uncorrupte, being reverentlie preserved in a decent inclosure, in the kinges cittie and Saincte Peeter's church. We will in processe make mention in what place the kinge's cittie was. At the lengthe Oswaldus, when he hadde reconciled the mindes of the mene which inhabited Deira, and the people about Berwicke, (for in feretimes thei maynteyned contention as touchinge the Christian rightes, wherof he hadd exceedinglie well deserved,) hee nowe minded to move warres with his adversaries, not knowinge how neare his laste daye approched. It fortuned that one Penda, a moste cruel prince of the Mercians, did assaulte rigoruslie the Christians, spoyling there churches of their riche jewels, noe lesse desieringe then endeavoringe to abolishe the verie appellation of Christianitee. On this tyrante, thus develishelie enraged, Oswaldus bente his force and weapons; but alas, in the verie beginninge of the fighte, he beinge on all sides beesett with the tracherie of these rude athenickes, hee was sodainlie slaye, while hee ernestlie warred on these wicked persons. The Northe Humbrian armie, as all astonished at the death of their soveraine, torned their backes. Oswaldus reyned ix. yeares and lived xxxvij. whoe in that hee hadde passed this mortall life with-
owe mortall spot or crime (bie cause that above all things he worshiped and esteemed the maiestie of our Lorde, finallie in that for the behoofe of relligion he suffered death not unwor-thielie of our ancient fathers), he was accompted emonge the sainties, whose memorie at this daye is not cleane voyde of miracles. His cheefe cittie in owlde time was named Sebba or Bebba (for I finde them bothe in writinge), soe named of a certaine queene, as testisfeth the Bedas. After this, at suche time as other North Humbrian kings hadd possession therof, thei called it the pallace; it was situat eastward on the right side of the Ile against the Ile Farnis, lieng two miles from the same. At this day there is noe trackes or tokens of a citte, onelie there is remnant a castell, which, whether it weare then byleded or afterward it is not surelie knoune, but of Englishemen it is termed Bamborowgh Castell: this littell Ile Farna or Farnis is continu-allie environed with water, the circuit therof scarcelie containing a mile; wherfore seeing that Lindisfarnis, which I called Hollie Ilonde, may twise in a daye on fote be safelie passed unto at the ebbe, and retire of the waters, as wee sayd right now, it is cleane divers from Farnis, albeit the similitude of name repres-enteth the noe difference; which in deade hathe beene the cause that manie have erred, thinckinge Farnis to bee that which in times paste was called Lindisfarnis, and surelie they bothe in the beginninge weare named Farnis; but the one afterward was cleped Lindisfarnis of the river Lindus, who having close passages under earthe unto that place dothe there burste forth into the ocean. There is also a third Ile in the same discourse of the sea x. miles from Farnis, called Cochett.

After the receavinge of this miserable scourge, the kingdom of Northe Humbleand was againe divided. Osuuius, the brother of Oswaldus, beinge the ix. from Ida, obtained Bernicia, or contries abowt Bernicia, and Osuvianus, the sonne of Osricus (whome befoere wee sayde to be slaine of Cadwallo), withhelde Deira, or parties abowte Deirham. These two at firste with great concorde beganne to communicate in cowncells to associat
there power against their enemies, but not longe after the
impatient desier of imperie did drive them to domesticall con-
tention; insomuchte that, after they hadde gatherid together
armies on bothe sides, they minded shortlie to encounter;
but when as this hotte rage of them bothe, which is wonte to
blinde and perverte the mindes of menne, waxed somewhat cowlde
on bothe sides, and that ether wayed the burden of present dawnger
with greter circumspection, it pleased them of purpose to delay
the daye appoynted. In the meanes while, Osuinus, being farre
the lesser of habilitee, thincking it to bee more saftee for him to
flie presentlie then to fighte, in the nighte time, being accompanied
onlie with one servante, departed prevelie from his armie to the
house of a certaine manne whome hee accounted his verie frinde;
but hee being a covert traytor bewrayed this noble younge impe
yealdinge unto slaughter to Oswus. By this means Osuinus, hav-
inge obtained the whole kingdom, thinckinge therebie that it weare
beste to attempte greater matters, in all speademined with fire and
weapon to invade Penda kinge of the Mercians, whoe wee sayde
aboue brought to their bale his brothers Edwinus and Oswaldus,
except he cowlde firste happilie asswage so fierce an enimie biegiftes,
as all menn stoode in great doubte of; this hee firste tried in
vayne, and nott prevaylinge thought to use the opportunitie of armes,
which battayle albeit it seemed excedinge perilous, yeat havinge
the Divine favor, not withstandinge that his feers and companie was
moche lesse then semed to suffice for so huge an enterprise, hee
settinge on them with owte tarienge, at the firste claspinge putt
them to flighte, whose horsemen so bestirred them in the chase
that emonge the reste himselfe Penda was slayne. Osuuius forthe-
with receaved the Mercians yealdinge them selves, thus preservinge
his honor unstained, and worthilie revenging the skathes of his
brethren and frindes. This victorie moreover greatlie restored the
wealthe of Northe Humberlande, and muche avayled the Christian
faythe, which sustayned suche damage bie the deathe of Oswaldus
that near hande it camme to distruction bie the crewell tyrannie
of Penda. After these affayres, Osuinus, being sufficientlie contented with the prosperus sucesse of his present estate, layde armoure aparte, and to wipe awaye the infamie, and allso to make satisfaction of his crime, whereof he was muche noted for the late murther of Oswinus, he beganne moste devowtlie to serve Godd, with muche lamentation to desier pardon of his sinnes, to geeve francklie to the poore, and finallie verie ernestlie to doe goodd to all menn; bie the which obsequies, as it is convenient that wee beelev, hee became moste leefe, bothe to Godd and manne; for beesides other his devowte doings he was the occasion that the Mercians at the lengthe, abandoning their obstinate sturdines, entred into the Christian societee, for he noe doubte, streyght after the overthrove of Penda, studiuslie procured that the people mighte be inured with Christian manners. Hee gave in mariaige to Peda, the sonne of Penda, an egregius yonge jentilmanne, his doughter Aluchufreda, assigninge for her dowrie the sowthe parte of Mercia, as it is sayde beefore, on this condition that hee showlde embrace religion; which thing this yonge impe executed with great maturitee, especiallie at the exhortation of the kinge; the like did the Mercians allso, accordinge to his president. Osuinus reyngned over the Mercians onli three years, for they, beinge desierus of libertie, did sodaynelie slippe the coller rebelliuslie. This worthie prince builded an abbay at the village named Wittbie, and a nonnerie, assigninge for the cheefe governesses one Congilda, a very hollie womanne, gevinge to her his doughter Edelfreda, to bee instructed, who becam a nonne. But within a goodwhiles after this religius house was destroyed bie aliens and straungers, and was restored and inhabited bie monachs Benedictines. Owte of that place there sprange moste famus religius persons, which afterward placed that notable abbay nere to the walls of Yorcke, and dedicated the same to the divine virgin Marie; albeit there are somm which ascribe the worcke to Alanus earle of Richemonde, but I knowe not how trulie they do it. But wee will beetake us againe to our matter. After this,
the goodd kinge didd onlie endevor that which might profet Christes flocke. Hee was attaynted bie a disease, and therof quickelie consumed the dccc. yeare of our Lorde. He lived lvij. years; hee reigned xxvij. He engendered of his wife Enfreda, the daugther of Edwinus, two sonnes, Egfridus and Alvinus, and three doughters, Ositha, Aluchufreda, and Edelfreda. Hee made his sonn Egfredus heyre, as well of his kingdom as of his vertewe; whoe having attayned the realme, shewed himselfe in all poinctes a good prince, and worthie to howlde the sterne of a weale publique. Hee didd first of all thinges procure that Cuthbertus, a manne verie notable, bothe in leadinge his life, and allso in learninge, showld be consecrate busshop of the Hollie Ilond, and consequentlie espoused Etheldreda or Audrei, the doughter of Annas, kinge of the East Angles, a virgin of no lesse corporall bowtie then endowed with heavenlie grace. This one mayden hathe shewed unto all ages an example of chastitee worthie the memoral; for, notwithstanding she was twise maried, yeat didd she reserve her boddie untowched for the embracing of manns sensual desiers, which thing was somwhat ease to bee donne with her former husbande, whoe died shortlie after the marriage; but in that she lived xii. years with Egfridus, a yonge manne of flowrishinge yeares, and never intermedeled with himme, that thinge truelie deservithe suche admiration that allmoste a manne cannot discrive whether more weare to bee commended the constancie of the virgine, or the intollerable continencie of the yonge manne soe extreemelie burning in loove; but noe dowbte æquall glorie is incident to them bothe. O how fewe are there which know like unto her how to withstand the tickeling pleasures of the frayle fleshe! Howbeit, in conclusion, the matter cam unto contention, yeat without all violence, for Egfridus havinge great remorse for the wante of issewe, sumtimes in the waye of flatterie, sumtimes in roughe and threatening speeche, incended his wife, that, accordinge to the rightes of lawful wedlocke, she woulde employe the honeste busines of procreation. But Audrie, on the other side,
whoe hadd espoused her verginitee unto Godde, wold not reverse from her purpose, nether for the sweete poyson of pleasure, nether for the rigorous instigation of wordes. The kinge, which naturallie was of meke disposicion, albeit, the more his wife withstode, the more hee burned in affection, (for suche is our nature moste vehementlie to desier the things moste ernestlie denied us,) yeat he refrayned owtragiue demaynor, and, to the end he mighte leave noe conclusion untried, he committed the charge of perswading with her to one Wilfredus, archebusschop of Yorcke, in whome this heavenlie creature hadd great affiance; but never a whitt hee profited in his travayle, so unmovablie persisted her minde: nether did she sease in the meane time with continuall intreatie to sollicitc her husbonde that voluntarilie hee wowlde vowchesafe to unknitte the sacred knotte of matrimoine, and that it might be lawful for her to leade a privat, single, and chaste life, which at the lengthe hee obtained, for hee cowlde nott but love verginitee in his wife, which he knew certainlie to bee vowed unto Christe. This virgin havinge purchased libertie, repayred to the noonne Ebba, the aunte of her husbande Egfredus, whoe was noted to bee of great sanctitee in livinge, and abbatasse of the nonnerie which stooде in the borders of Scotlonde, even there whereas in our time stode the village named Coldingham, and there beecamme a nonne. In processe of time this godlie creature, beinge zelus to encrease religion, retorned to her owilde Est Angles, and with all speede in the Ile of Elie bielded a relligiuous house, ordeyninge therein a college of noonnes, of whome herselfe was cheefe; but finallie, accordinge to the tenor of nature, she died, and was ascribed emonge the sainctes. It is lefte in memorie that this place of religion at the firste was erected bie the meanes of Augustine archebissshop of Cantuarburie, in the honor of our Lady, at the charges of Ethelbertus, kinge of Kente; and that besides there was fownded an howse of Benedictines, aboute the dc. yeare of mannes Salvation. But after that time, when as Penda the Mercian tyrant did exceedanglie waste the Easte Angles, that
abbaye was also raced, which Audrie renewed, as wee sayde beefore; and not muche after, abowte the dcccclxxx. yeare of our Lorde, at suche time as the Danes, having Agnerus to their capitan, raged on these East Englishe menne, the alters werethrowne downe, the temples wear lamentablelie defaced, the religius howse was made equall with the grownde, which was yeat againe afterwards repayred of certaine good prelats, and a chauntrie of preestes therein ordained. But finallie, aboute the dcccclxx. year of our Salvation, a monache, named Ethelwoldus, bishope of Winchestre, soe pleted bothe with kinge Edgarus, and also with John the xiiij., busshop of Rome, that hee caused them to be displaced, and browght in his monachs, which even of late inhabited the same.

This Ile of Elie, encompassed on all sides with sweete waters, standethe sowtheward, within the limitts of Cambridgeshier; northeward, it buttethe on Northefolke; it bowndethe mucbe eastward, from whence the lengthe thereof westward conteineth xxvj. miles, and the breadth the xiiiij.; the whole compass and circuite thereof excseedeth not lxxx. miles; and for that it abowndethe in fennes, especiallie in the wintre season, thersore somm menne surmise that yt was termed Elie, biecause ελος in Greeke signifieth a fenne. There are somme famus townes therin, and cheeflie that which is named Elie, in auncient times a cittie, and now the residence of the busshop, as successivlie shall be declared.

Egfredus lived afterward whole iiij. years, and all that season never acquittied of warres: first, hee encountered infortunatlie with the Mercians, then hee transported his armie into Irelond, unmercifullie afflicting the Irishemenne, beinge unwares; after that hee molested in battayle Eugenius the vth. kinge of Scotts, notwithstandinge his nobles ernestlie required him not to hurte his frindes: finallie, mindinge of likeliehoode to sustaine juste penaltie of his defualtes, hee moved warre against Brudeus, kinge of the Pictes, albeit hee hadd contrarie advertisement bie the goodd busshopp Cuthbertus; but, beinge shortlie entrapped with guiles, hee perished with no small portion of his complices. Egfredus reigned xv. yeares, and lived xl.
Alfredus, as menne say, the base sonne of Osuinus, was created kinge as the ixth. from Ida; whoe livinge in banishment all the reigne of his brother Egfride, throwge his pregnante witte and continuall industrie in letters becam exceedinglie well learned. Wherefore, as sone as hee was seased in this kingdom, which was raced throwge the injuries of his adversaries, he procured the same to be restored with good artes, polishinge, and mainaininge it with singuler diligence, and being contented with suche limites as withoute strife hee cowlde gette of the Pictes, usinge owtragius-li the commoditee of victorie, after the overthrow of his brother, hee endevored honeste, tranquillitee, and peace, havinge intermission from forinsicall and externe broyles the whole xix. yeares which he reygned. At this presence Ihon, archebussshop of Yorcke, did greatlie florishe in the celestiall science of divine theologie; whoe beinge were and at defiance with the publicke and politeque life, renowncinge his archebishoprice, went into Beverlaye, where hee builded a churche and college of priestes, passinge most chastlie iiiij. yeares as sequestred from all wordlie cares, where at this daye he is remembred with miraculus memorie, for longe since it is sithe he was canonized a saincte, after his residence of xxxiiij. years. Beverlake is a towne in the northe east partes, standinge in a levell groynde well fenced. After this, Ihon succeeded his disciple Wilfredus the second, who ended his life after he was resident xv. years; after whome ensewed Egbertus, beinge vij. from Paulinus, whoe deceasinge after accomplishment of xxxij. yeares, hadde these successors, Albertus, Embaldus the First, Emballdus the Second, Wilfius, Vimundus, and Wilfus, beinge xiii. from Paulinus; these continued the archebushoprice of Yorcke abowte an hundred and xx. years. After them succeeded Adelbaldus, Lodevardus, and Wulfstanus the xvij. from Paulinus, in the order of bussshops, of whose hollie gestes I will make minde in the life of king Adelstanus as a place more convenient. After Alfredus, these were kings, Osredus, Chenredus, Osrichus, and Celoulphus the xvij. from Ida: unto this manne did Bedas write
the ecclesiasticall historie of the Englishe nation, who died also at that season; moreover he writ a booke uppon the Acts of the Apostells, on the Ghospell of Marcke, and as concerning the variete of times, with certain homilies, which lacke not their use at this day emonge Englishemen; allso on the vij. canonickall Epistels, on the Apocalips, on Genesys, on Ezdras, on the bookes of Kings, and many other things which are now wanting. Coloulphus, after hee hadd reygned vij. years, yealdinge the imperie to his uncle Egbertus, lived afterward a relligious life. This laste allso, after the xxi. yeare of his reygne, renowncinge his kingdom, becam a monache. The affayres and estate of Northumberland after this inclined to utterance and destruction bie the division of the people into factions. Next unto him succeeded Osoulphus, whome domesticall strife soone brought to his ende. Altredus folowed hime, who semblablie, after tenne yeare, bie civile discorde, was compelled to forsake the princerlie diademe. In his rome entered Ethelbertus, who in shorte time being disturbed from the governance, had to his successor Aswal- dus, who likewise with sinistrus fortune obtained the regall sceptrre, for after xi. yeares hee was oppressd bie the intestine sedition of the people; bie whose example Osredus the Thirde, which succeeded him, gave himselfe to private life before one yeare weare clearli passed. Finallie Ethelbertus, or rather Adelredus, beinge the xxiiiij. and laste from Ida, was bolde to take on him the charge of regaliee, which had benne hurtfull and exitiall to so manie his predecessors. Nether cowld hee avoyde the like destenie, for after the forthe yeare of his reign he was semblabie murthered of his owne loyals. The regall dignitee laye vacant for a season, no manne daring to arrogate the same enie more, for like unto the owlde Seyans horsse they feared it. This thinge surelie deserved wondrus admiration, sithe noe imperie hathe benne erste so pernicius but that divers men with ambitius desier have affected the same. Thus Northumberlande beinge shaken with civil warres aboue xxx. years, after laye open to the injuries as well of barba-
rus straungers as evill neighbourws, for the Danes coming into the Ilond withhelde it, until at the lengthe thei being overcommmed, Egbertus, kinge of the Weste Saxons, united it unto his dominion throughe the voluntarie yealdinge of the Northe Humbrians, extinguishinge all dissention, and extirpinge the foreine creweltie, as wee will shew hereafter. Thus the Northe Humbrians ceased to reigne the dcccxxviii. yeare of our Savior. But afterwarde Alured, as shall be specified in his life, made the Dane Gorman cheeferewler, and bie that meanes the lande cam agaime into the power of barbarus people, which at the lengthe Adelstanus delivered owt of their handds, annectinge it to his owne jurisdiction.

The vij. kingdom was of the West Saxons, which beginne abowte the seventie and one yeare after the arrival of the Englishemen in this Ile, and the dxxx. yeare of Christs nativitye, having the originall of Kinge Cerdicius. The bowndes of this kingedom fro the beginning weare not small, for, as we may well gather bie conjecture, it conteyned so muche as dothe in our dayse the diocesses of Bathe and Wells, Sarisburie, and Excitre. Yet had it in processe greater amplienginge, for the westerne kinges, not satisfied with suche partes of the Ilond as at the first was allotted them, layde claime to the whole monarichie that beeore the Brittons possessed. Cerdicius cumming laste of all others into the Ile, with greate garrisons owte of Germanie, to succorroe his confederates, was receaue with sharpe warre, butt with ease hee repressed and putte to flighte the unwildie multitude inordinatlie runninge on himme, which good primitive successe purchased him muche quietnes; for after that daye the beaten Britons weare of lesse corragge to stirre upp warres; soe that Cerdicius bie littell and litell seasoned on the weaste partes of the Ile, there begininge his government; and for the same reason was surnamed the westerne kinge; whoe encroched to him and his posteritee farre the moste faire and ample riolme, well enriched bie himme. After this mann regned his son Cenricus, and consequentlie Cawlinus, then Celricus, and Ceoloulphus, or Quichelmus, for I finde them bothe
written in authors whom I follow, which doe not altogether agree in the names of such princes. These two are reported equallie to have divided the kingdom, and bothe of them justlie and jentlie, with like will and pleasur, to have governed, which thinge is as rare to bee seene as to bee harde, and not easie to be donne; and to this there singuler integritee was adjoyned a Divine grace, for they bothe becam Christian; and, finallie, as they beganne to reyne at once, so they are thought to have ceased and have died aboute one time. Yet Celoulphus, as some others have thought, (whose sentence I refuse not,) did otherwise bothe dispose and end his lyfe, for at the verie beginninge, when as he lay in embushement, awaiting Edwinus, kinge of Northumberlande, (as it is specified in his life,) afterwaerde encounteringe with him he was slaine. After whomes succeede Ciniigillus, under whose regaine the westerne people receaved the Christian faith, through the industrie and advertisementes of Berinus, whom the bishop Honorius at that season sente into the Iond to preache the Ghospell. This Berinus was an Italian, and the moste hollie father that chaunced within the memorie of manne, who placed the pontificall see firste of all others at Dowchester, which towne laye vij. miles from Oxford, which was afterwaerde, aboute foure hundred and three score years, be king William Rufus, translated unto Lincolnne. But let us prosecute the premisses. Next unto Ciniigillus, Cenovalchius reygne, being vij. from Cerdicicus, whom, at the beginninge of his imperie, might have benne conferred with the baser sorte of princes, but in the ende he might justlie bee compared to the beste; for streyght after the enrie on his dominion hee entred alson a moste filthie trade of livinge; and being well pleased with nothing, least of all with quietnes, he foughte a battayle with Wilferus, the Mercian kinge, of whom being overcommed, he was tasked with the forfature of the Ile of Weighte. Hee neglected religion; he made a lewe de divorcement with his wife, being the sister of Penda, the Mercian kinge, which thinge so fell oute that it was bothe a calamitee and a saftie unto him, for Penda, for the injuries
donne to his sister, forthewith assayled himm in fight, and de-
prived himm of his regall maiestie. Cenovalchius after this foyle
fledde unto Annas, kinge of the East Angles. Annas first inter-
tayned the younge manne jentelie, and afterwards blamed him, in
that hee hadd so contended relligion that hee hadd kaste of his
wife, that so filthilie he hadd gven himselfe over to uncleanes.
Then hee, repentinge his former life, it is not to bee thought how
soone hee becamm goode, thowghe the holsons precepte and in-
crepations of Annas. Suche is oure nature, sooner to acknowlege
our defawites in adversitee then in prosperitee. In all haste hee
embraced the Evangelicall faythe; he reclaymed his wife; hee bee-
cam mpre acceptable to Godd, and, consequentlie, soone recovered
his whole kingdome: and again, not being unmindefull of suche
benefits as hee hadd receaved, as one which dearli loved Godd’s
honor and glorie, hee builded the sumptuus churche at Winchester,
wherin consistethe the see of the bissop; but that was afterwarde
divided, and from thence the busshopricke of Sarisburie was insti-
tuted. Thus the kinge, as a manne allltogether fixed on godlines,
died, after the xxx. yeare of his reigne. His wife, named Sex-
burga, rewled allmoste a yeare after, who, allbeit shee was of
corage sufficient for the rigiment, yet, being intercepted bie death,
she cowlde not utter fullie her vertewse. There succeeded to
yonge princes, Elcvinus and Centinnus, bothe notable in valiance
and armes, for the former miserablie skirged the Mercians, the
later afflicted the Britans with warrs; but the shortnes of their
life shadowed the continuance of there felicitee, for thei hadde un-
ethes reigned ix. years when they departed this life. I finde in
somme authors that they reigned in commune, with whome Bedas
consensethe not, but affirmeth that thei divided their kingdom.
Cedovalla next obtaine the realme, being xth in thorder of kings
from Cerdicius, whoe from the beginninge, being desiers to bee
avauenced for his nobel feats, thought good to warre on his bor-
derers, wherfor with speede hee sett on the Sowthe Saxons, and
greatlie endamaged them. The Kentishe menne hee oppressed bie
the gatheringe of bootie in their territories, howbeit in that con-
flicte hee loste his brother, named Molo. He entered the Ile of
Wight with sharpe hostilitie, insomuch that hee hadd neare de-
stroyed the same. Finallie hee soe bent himselfe towards libera-
litee, and deserved soe well of all estates, that all moste a manne
cowld nott desier more perfection in one which as yeat was not
seasoned with owre religion. Yet not longe after, desiering to
comm into the Christian fowlde, he wente to Rome, whear he was
baptized of Bisshop Sergius, and named Peter; and within shorte
space he died, and was buried in the churche of Sainte Peeter,
prince of the Apostells. Somme menne thincke that he was not
baptized of Sergius, but he was beefore becomm Christian, and
now, annoynted with the hollie chrisme, as the custom is,
chaunged therebie his name; which sentence of divers others is
fallsified.

After this mann Inas, as xi. from Cerdicius, was chosen kinge,
a mann of great policie, and noe lesse valiaunce. Hee, as sone as
hee hadd aspired to highest type of the weale publique, as a stowt
prince, mindinge to attain the commendation of warlike knowleage,
with an armie riall hee bidde battayle to the Kentishe menne; but
his enimie, all dismayde with this sodaine terror of warre, weare
so abhorrent from joyninge hande strokes, that with a great somme
of gowlde they rather desiered to fall to composition then to assaye
the chaunce of battayle. After these his prosperus exploystes with
the Kentishe people, he bent his force on Aldinius, the kinge of
Southe Saxons, and enemie to the name of Weste Saxons, whome
he easilie overcamme, and enjoyed the riolme of Sowthesax. At
the lengthe, haveinge wonne renowne bothe at home and abrode,
appliege him selfe wholie unto learning, for that he loved in all
respectes justice and righteousnes, whan he perceaved the admi-
istration of commone wealthe to bee wonderus troblesom, despis-
ge the porte of a prince, not longe after, accordinge to the precept
of Christe, hee tooke upp his crosse and folowed himme. But be-
fore the execution of this purpose hee minded to have suffulted
and relieved religion with his goodds, for he thought it a moste
tewde follie to perimtte to an other man's curtisie suche goodds as
he himmsele, which hadd gotten them, mighte franckelie con-
trive on suche uses as unto himm weare likenge; whearfore he
builde the churche of Wells with great magnificence, and conse-
cratted it to Saincte Andrawe the Apostle, assigninge therin to con-
siste the see of the bussshop, supportinge the same with great pos-
sessions. In late memorie there florished a famus college of priestes,
menne of honest beehavior, and well learned. Wherefore I ac-
compte it noe small woorschipp that I mie selfe, xiiij. yeares since
Archedeacon of Wells, was elected one of that college, and have
suche jurisdiction in the dioces of Wells as make the me muche
the better somtimes; for, having a charge to looke to the good liv-
inge of others, I muste necessarilie prescrive mie selfe suche rule of
life, being an overseer, that other menn maye the better measure
theirs bie mine. The auncient cittie, Wells, is in the weaste
partes of the Ilonge, and situat at the foote of the hill called
Mendeplis, which from the northe side, like a continuall wall,
hangethe over it, verie commodius for the broode and feeding of
cattayle; but now to the pretensed matter. This prince builde
the churche of Glastenburie, with the abbaye of monachs Bene-
dictines, geving great londes thereunto. But surelie this abbay, bothe
for the singuler hospitalitee, and allso for dew observaunce of the mo-
nasticall function, excelled all others. Wee made mention in the se-
cond booke of this our woorcke that the common brute goethe that
Joseph of Aramathie, whoe buried our Lordes boddie, didde
founde therin a littel chappell, whearebie I conjecture, in memori
thorof, that Inas did erect this abbaye in that place. There are
lefte in writinge infinite deades as concerninge the goddlie worckes
of this kinge. Yeat will I not forgette that he made his realme
tributarie to the Busshop of Rome, fininge everie howse at a cer-
taine peece of monie called a pennie. Offa, the Mercian kinge,
didde the like, beinge allured, as I thincke, bie his example, whoe
reigned not longe after that time. This was the DCCXL. yeares of
our Salvation. This tribute, as somme menne write, was encreased bie King Ethelwolphus or Atulphus, who, as shall bee specified in the next booke, obtained all most the monarchie of the whole Ilonde. The whole contrie at this time for devotion and zeal gave to the busshopp this pension of pietie, which was gathered of everie house, and the monie was termed Sainct Peter's pence, which was gathered bie the busshops questor, whoe of good reason was named the collector. I mie selfe bare that office of exaction a certaine years, and for the same cause was mie firste coming into Englonde. But to bee shorte, Inas beinge desierus to dispose in better order his reolme, to the ende he mighte [bring] his subjects to a more blessed trade of livinge, he promulged moste sincere lawes, which of his wicked posteritee weare bie littell and littell disannulled. Finally, partelie at the instigation of his wife Ethelberga, a verie discrete matrone, and partelie havinge tasted more then satietee of worldly things, he resigned the princelie power and diademee to his kinesman Ethellardus, noe doubtte a goodd manne, whome beefore hee hadde made his heyre, which beinge, as somm thincke, he wente to Rome, and there, beinge revestred with habit and orders of a monache, hee died. Queene Ethelburga did semblablie geeve upp the ghoste amoung the noonnes of Berching, a village standinge on the bancke of the river Thames. I have nothinge worthie the relacion as towching Ethellardus. Next unto him succeeded Cuthredus, a manne of stowte corrage, whose beinge endamaged with manie injuries by the Mercians in the beginnings of [his] reigne, insurged mannefullieagainste them, and noblie turned the foyle on their owne neckes; after which time hee was free from externall cares, usinge alwayse the commodites of peaceable tranquillitee. In this verie time lived a virgin at Oxford named Frideswida, the dowghter of a certayne Duke named Didanus, whome it fortuned that a certaine prince Algarus soe ardentlie loved that he profered to deflowre her, yea, and that which is more, havinge deniall at her handes, he minded to use violence, but almighty Godd, the verie juste
revenger of suche villanie, semed not to bee farre absente, for at such time as hee pursuwed her, avoyding his temptacion and trecherie, as sone as she hadde recovered the towne, the gate was shutte againste himme, and the sighte of his eyes in the same moment taken from him. But forthewith this meeke virgin, in the beehoofe of Algarus, appeased our Lorde with her prayers, and hee in shorte season receaved againe his sence of seeinge. And for this cause the fame hathe benne that there grewe a certaine opinion in the headdes of suche kinggs as ensewed in soe muche that they feared to entre the cittie of Oxforde; soe easlie is the minde of manne drawne into the fowle lake of fonde superstition. But trewlie in our time Kinge Henrie the viij. rooted this scrupulousitee owte of mens brayns, whoe being armed with the shield of goodd conscience marched stowtliie into Oxforde without enie detriment, to the great confort of gladnes of the beehowlders. There was of late an howse of regular chanons at Oxforde (as menne say) consecrated to Frideswida; but mie pen shall returne fro whence it hath strayed.

Sigibertus did nexte obteyne the kingdom, a manne in domesticall affaires of muche asperitee and tirranie; in forayne matters full of cowardise and slowthe; whoe, beisides that hee wold not geve ear to his sage counselors, hee did moreover brutishelie slaye one Cumbranus, geevinge to him even from bottom of his harte moste goodlie advertisements; at the which thinge the reste conceavinge woorthie indignation, assembled in conspiracie, and dejected him from his imperiall throne, the first yeare of his reygne. Then Sigibertus (as hee was of timorus disposition) fearinge worser matters bee tooke himselfe to wooddes and forestes, but not bie this meanes coulde hee eschewe the pursute of misfortun, for even there of a most abject slave of this saide Cumbranus was he murthered. Cinevolphus, a noble yowng impe, and discended of the regall stemme, was substitute in his roome, as xvth. from Cerdicius. Hee hadde one battayle with Offa, king of the Mercians, wherin hee was inferior, but not greatlie to his losse or damage.
The Fourth Book.

Afterwarde, having attained quietnes, he exiled Cineardus, the brother of Sigibertus, a jollie young manne of handds, for that he had him in distruste; whoe, on the other side, not being unmindeful of this injurie, intentive to revengement, not lone after privilie retiered into the contrie with noe small rowte of loste hopes, and findinge the kinge in the house of a certaine noble wooman whose companie he liked well, of a sodayne hee beset himme round aboute. Cinevolphus, amazed at this unhoped danger, commanded the gates to bee shutte in all possible haste, hoping ether to mitigate his enemies with fayre language, or at the leastwise to feare them with his maiestie. But when he understode that neither of them wolde take effect, and that there was noe comforte to escape withowte fightinge, hee, foaming for anger, dashed open the dores, and russhed on Cineardus, who stode formoste, and allmost wounded himme to the verie deathe.

Thus whiles he had allmost revenged sufficientlie his deathe which honge over his hedde, hee died in manfull fighte. This heynus offense, when it was once knowne, his companie and servitors, which were not farre of, hasted to these manquellers, and renewinge this broyle assayed to requite the slaughter of their soveraigne lorde. The contention was mayntayned for a season on the one side for theyr life, on the other for their honor, untill Cineardus, whoe in this calamitee at the leaste hoped for victorie, was slayne fightinge, at whose fall the residew became soe hartelesse and exanimate that fro the firste to the laste they were all slayne. Then was Britrichius created kinge, as xvith in the ordre of kinges from Cerdicus, a quiet and modest manne, and more desierus of tranquillitie then to bee beholdinge to the goddesse Bellona, and for the same cause he marvelouslie misdoubted the valiancse of Egbertus, whoe succeeded him in regalitee, for the blood riall which had lineall descent from Cerdicus at that time was soe confuselie disparkeled, that eche manne as hee was moste of puissance and mighte, soe did he thincke himselfe to have beste titell and clame to the westerne kingdom, in which number

Camd. soc.

2 b
was Egbertus. Howbeit hee in deede was of the regall stemme and line; therefore this kinde, to the ende hee mighte live securelie, he banished this springefole as relagate in Fraunce, which thinge he accepted verie pacientlie, as a thinge which hee divined wowlde toorne himm to greate pleasure, as in deade it chaunche in processe of time. Thus Britriciuis used securitee untele a certayne number of theavishe Danes arrived in the Ilond at the entrice of the river Humber, firste wastinge on the sea costes, and afterwarde spoylinge and robbinge the inner parties of the contrie. The kinde sente at the first tidinge a good companie of harnised menne to repelle the Danes from their recourse to their shippes; whose when theye espyed the people runninge on all sides, levinge their bootie behinde them, they ranne with all speede to their naveewe, and returned thether from whence they camme. But this thinge was the begininge of a great mischeefe ensowing, for the Danes perceaving the fertillitee of the soyle, within a litell while camme againe into the Ilonde, and waged so longe and sharpe battayle with the Englishe nation till they had possessed a goodd parte thereof, as shall bee made rehersall ellswhere. Britriciuis in the xvij. yeare of his reigne, and DCCC. of manns salvation, ended his mortall life; whose deathe beinge in all places divulged, Egbertus coming speedelie into his contrie owte of Fraunce, bie a generall consent was made kinde.

But beefore I entreate of the reste, I thoughte goodd somewhat to say as towchinge the Scottishe estate at that instance of time. After that Ambercletus was slaine in the battayle of the Pictes (of whome wee speke in the ende of our thirde booke), these menne ensewed, Eugenius the viij. beinge his brother, Mordaius, the sonne of Ambercletus, Etfinus; menn as well in there owne nations as other landes perceaving quietnes, and well tried in politique administration: then Eugenius the viij. Fergusius the iij. whose bothe continuallie weltered and turmoyled in fillthie vices, and bothe weare repaied with dewe penaltie, the one beinge slaine of his daylie wayters, the other of his citizens: after them
THE FOURTH BOOK.

167
governed Solvatius and Achaius the sonne of Etfinus. This prince, who merited eternall commendation, fearinge the wealthe and power of the Saxons, which daylie encreased, confedered in league with Charles the great, that they shoulde mutuellie helpe one an other. Truelie they boste that it was never donne withowte the Divine power of Godde, for as muche as at this presence amitee remayneethe unviolate betweene the Frenche menne and Scotts, soe that the one continuallie agreeethe with the other. Som other impute it as remidee for the malice and hatred of there confines and neigbour, and to bee as well common to them bothe against the Englisheman as to the Englisheman against them bothe. Moreover, whereas Charles, mindinge to erecte new Universitees, didd sente for learned menne from all costes of the worlde, this kinge sente unto him Clemens and Ihon, exceedeing well learned menne, bie whose helpe Charles procured that at Ty- cinum and at Parris all men shoulde bee instructed in good letters. Then enseeved Convallus the seconde, Dungallus, and Alpinus; who valiantlie prosecuted suche warrs against the Pictes as were taken in hande bie Dungallus; but in the ende, infortuntatlie bick- eringe with them, he was taken prisoner, and withowte all respecte of the princelie maiestic hadde incontinent his hedd striken of with an hatchet, at the which facte his ij. sonne Chennethus takinge great indignation revived the warrs, and ceased not from his pur- pose befoere he hadd taken Druschenus the kinge of his adversa- ries, and hadd chastised him with the like severitee. Hec so used the oportunitie of his conquest, that bie litel and litell he hadd neare hande striped the whole stocke of the Pictes. And bie suche meanes the Scottes obteyned a greate while since suche kingdom as they have at this daye in Brittayne; this was the DCCCXL. yeare of our Salvation, and the decliii. yeare of the reigne of the Pictes. Notwithstandinge, if wee beleeve som Englishe cronicles, the estate of Pictlande hadd not this ende, for in them it is to be redde, that the Pictes weare not overcommed bie warrs, but bie male engine and treason, for, say thei, their cheefe menne and
princes weare, under pretext of civilitie, invited to a sumptuus supper of the Scotts, and there perfidiuslie slayne. This thinge of others is esteemed as a fable, for as muche as it is uncreditable that one supper coulde suppe uppe so manie bothe nobles and people. After Chennethus suceeded his brother Donaldus; for cause that his sonne Ethus, bie reason of his age, was not meate for the regiment of a weale publique. This man, albeit hee weare dissolute, and for the same cause died of his owne hands when he had ruled vj. yeres, yet in foretime, beinge well helped bie his people, hee urged with battayle the remaynders of the Pictes, whoe beganne yet againe to shake their weapons, and cleane rooted them owte. After this Constantinus and Ethus wear made kings. This laste bie Gregorius was expelled owte of his kingdom, yeat mindinge to recom-pence this evell deade with goodd woorckes, hee wonderfullie augmented the Scottish welthe, bringinge Irelond under their domi-nion. Next to Gregorius suceeded Donaldus the second, and after Donaldus, Constantinus the thirde, the sonne of Ethus, of whome wee will say more in the life of Edwarde kinge of Eng-lond: but now lett us end this booke.
THE FIFTH BOOK.

THE V. BOOKE

OF POLIDORUS VERGILIUS ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

In our former booke wee entreated of the beginninge of the vii. kingdoms, and of the finall end allso of vi. of them, namelie, of the kingdom of Kent, of Sowth Saxons, of Est Angles, of Este Saxons, of the Mercians, of the Northe Humbrians, allso of the battayles and contention of the kinges; now it remaynethe that we make treatise as touchinge of the Westerne realme, declaringe at what time the other regions weare adjoyned thereunto, that finallie bothe the order of the kinges and the discourse of matters incident may eche wheare bee correspondent. Egbertus, a man of great hope and singular vertewe, as we mentioned erewhiles, bie the common assent havinge the suffrages of the people and princelie crowne, beganne moste prosperuslie to use this obtayned dominion as a mann well skilled in the warlike knowledge; for while in his exile he sojourned in Fraunce, hee labored that science, and em-ployde the feates of warre, wherfore at the verie beginnings of his governinge he daunted the Brittons, that is, the Wallshemenn, whoe as yeat greatlie desierus of libertie, whens enie small occas-sion offred it selfe thic slipped from the Englishe nation and made daylie incursions on them, as they who albeit bie all meanes they weare vanquished yeat bie noe means wowlde they seems to be overcomed; when with noe lesse felicitee then celeritee hee hadd achieved this exployte throwghe the fame of the facte, throwghe auctorite and renowne, hee flourished and was a terror to the borderinge princes; for thei perceiving him to bee suche an
one in martial facultee had this conceit, that even allreadie in harte he was in the middeste of their treasuries. This thinge especiallie pricked the conscience of Bertulphus, a moste stoute kinge of the Mercians, whose notwithstandinge he understode howe daungerus a matter it was to cope with so puissant a prince, and one that was soe skillful in fighte, yeat knowinge it to bee muche more honorable valiantlie to die then shamfullie to live, hee minded to have adoe with Egbertus, and indeade spedelie raunginge his armie, hee bidde himme battaylle. The western lustie prince made noe refussall, but speedelie leadinghe his companie as it weare in a ringe, set upon his adversaries: the fighte was continued sharpelie on bothe sides in doubtefull balance; at the lengthe the Mercians, who weare weried with their longe jornie and skirn-mishinge, beeganne a littell to geeve backe, which thinge as soone as the western menne perceaved, in greater thronge and violence thei pursewed the repulse and committted great slaughter. Egbertus, bie the gettinge of this victorie, gathered suche stomache and hope that hee persuadde himselfe that verie caslie hee mighte subdewe his neighbor, well perceavinge their estate to encline towards ruine; and beefore all others he minded to invade the Kentisshe kinge Ethelwolphus, a manne surelie of smalle name and lesse aestimation in Kente. Wherefore, enteringe his teritories with an armie riall, finding noe mann a great while that wowlde withstande, hee didd on all sides destroye the region, deliveringe all the villages to be spoyled and sacked to his soldiers. Ethelwolphus, whoe had small affiance in his owne power, astonished with the sodaine commotion of soc strange broyles, was soe farre from enie affection to fight, that (as somme menne wright) he fledde in haste, ever afterward banishinge himme selfe. Butte others have lefte in memorie (with whome I rather agree) that he with all celerite, gatheringe the beste rowte of menn that he coulde, didd righte manfullie encounter with his enimie, and was taken prisoner while hee skirmished valiantlie; but, howsoever the game wente, soe it fell owte that Egbertus conquered, and possessed the
Kentishe kingdom. Thus the welthe of the Westerne people wonderuslie increased, and they beecam terrible to there confines, so that all menne the more easlie becam obeysaunt and servisable to Egbertus; who, to the intente he might also abate the strengthe of the Mercians, he wiselie pricked forward the East Angles, (whose amitee and societie he hadde a littell beefor confirmed bie league,) that with an armie they shoulde make irruption into Mercia, which thinge they weare nothing lothe to doe, bothe to thende thei mighte satisfie the expectation of the kinge, and also bie cause they wolde revenge suche injuries as latelie they hadd sustaine of the Mercians, whoe but a few dayes beebefore hadd annoyed their borderes with incursions. In this skermishe, albeit it was exceedinge daungerus, yeat was Bernulphus, the Mercian kinge, slaine at the firste conflicte; within a littell space after, they beinge pricked on bothe sides with two stinggs, the one of wraethe the other of hatred, theye bickered againe, and in that conflicte Ludicennus the successor of Bernulphus was slayne. Thus, when the force of the Mercian realme was appaired, Egbertus in open field sett uppon Uthlacus who succeed Ludicenus and toke him prisoner, yokinge hime with captivitee. The Northe Humbrians, as menne all amazed at suche successe in all thes affayres, weare soone dejected from theyre estate, and weare more desierus to yeald them selves then ether to suffer or to prove the weapons and powre of their enemies; but rather ether expelling or sleaing their kings and renouncinge the yoke of the Danes as menne weried and afflicted with domestical dissention, and tormented with the oppressions of aliens and strauengers, they sent ambassadours to Egbertus concerning their voluntarie yealdinge, surrendering to his faythe and tucion townes, citizens, lands, and goods, private and commune. Kinge Egbertus eureteuslie receaved this yealdinge, bidding them to have goodd hope, promising moreover that they shoulde never more bee tormentede with the injuries of forreiniers. Thus in fine the noble reame of Northe Humberland camme into the jurisdiction of the Westerne princes.
Ye are there which write otherwise as touching the endinge of that kingdom, sayeng that the Westerne monarch chalenged in battayle Ethelbertus or Adelredus the laste North Humbrian kinge, and that hee being overthrowne, and his contrie cam bie that means in subjection, which I cannot thincke to bee muche untrew of the computation of time were agreeable, for, as we men- tioned in our laste book, it is evident that there ware thirtie years betwene the kinges and the time that Egbertus tooke possession of Northe Humberlande. At the same verie season Egbertus beerefte Juthredus kinge of East Saxons of his imperie. Bie this means the happie condition of the West Saxons soe daylie en- creased bie the unitinge of three most riche and frutefull riolmes, that the residewe of the Iland (alwayse exempting Scottelond), that is to saye, the monarchies of Mercia and the East Angles, weare of non accompt or valewe, but as things which, threatened with ruine, wold shortelie fall into handdes of Westerne menn; as indeade not longe after it chaunced, according to the expectation of Egbertus, whoe as a man whose thoughtte himme selfe all in all, partelie that bie the extinguisheinge of the Britishe name his fame mighte eternallie bee engraved in the region, partelie that all the people might have the use of one onlie name, and one kinde of lawe, hee firste termed Brittaine Englond, and the whole multitude Englishemenne, bie proclaama- tion streightlie enjoeing that it showlde soe continuallie endure. After all these things, this wise prince, beinge nothinge the more puffed with pride for so fortunate successse, (which is wonte easlie to enhance menn’s minde,) was of equall clemencie, grace, liberalitie, towards all degrees, and moste studius of peace and tranquilitie, till in the lengthe the Danes did crewellie disturbe the godlie quietnes of this contrie (for suche are humaine affaires that in everie minute of an howre they are subjecte to sixe hundred casu- altees). These menne, with a navie like pyrats abowte the sea, and being driven to the shores of the English ocean, thei tooke the londe, and beeganne to season on botie; which thinge beinge
once manifested, the kinge assemblinge a fewe soldiers, (as it is
the guise in sodaine tumultes,) proceadeth to meate them as
rovers, and, finding them without all order, sette uppon them.
The fighte in the beeginning was more adverse and perilos to the
Englishe menn; yet the kinge urged his people, bothe with remem-
braunce to fighte stoutelie, and aliso used the rehersall howe fowle
a shame it weare that they showlde be overcomme of theeves and
robbers, who hadd overthrowne divers kinges. In the meane sea-
son, the Danes perceavinge howe harde it was to resiste, and that
there was noe hope to werie their enemies, they lifted upp their
corage, and dubbelde their force, and, sleainge on all sides, thei
beesett Egbertus rownde abowt; but the night drewe on, where-
fore the kinge, whose was in great dispayre of his life, with a smalle
number fownde the meanes, with mutche to doo, to flie. The
Danes, albeit they understode them selves to bee superiors at that
presence, yeat, fearinge close embushements in a londe so abound-
ing in hostilitie, they ceased to chase enie farther. The Westerne
kinge, beinge nothinge appalled with the detremeinte of that
nighte, wherein he hardelie escaped daunger of deathe, forasmuche
as divers remained unhurte at that conflicte, he gathered together
and refreshed the relliques of the disparckeled armie; and manie
besides, heeringe of this unluckie conflicte, armed themselves
forthe with, and voluntarilie drewe unto the kinge, wherfor, beinge
furnished with a sufficient bande, he broughte them forthe into
playne fielde, and gevinge them battayle againe, he putt them to
flight with oute enie great travaile, beinge allredie spente with
foraine contencions. Somme of the Danes weare there slayne;
somm others escapeinge to their shippes, didde adventure them-
selves to the windes. (After this victorie Egbertus, whome the
sownde glorie of vertewe made coequall with the Godds, whose in
moste ample wise hadde enlarged the seelie littell kingdom, which
at the firste hee receaved, didde departe owt of his mortall life the
xxxvij. yeare of his reigne, and the dcccxxxvij. of our Salvation.
Hee lefte behinde him his young sonne Ethelwolphus, whoe suc-
CAMD. SOC.

2 c
ceased himme. His father, well knowing how it beehoved a prince (that would deserve commendation) to be stowte, righteous, severe, grave, of haute courage, liberal and beneficent, did so instruct him from a childe that righte well hee merited this prayse and honour, whoe, moreover, was from the beginning addicted to religion, havinge the orders of a subdeacon; but shortlie after, hie the authorite of Leo the Romayne busshop, hee was losed of that bandde, and espoused a moste excellent virgin named Osbuga.

Before wee procede to write enie more of this mann, wee thinke it convenient to write of the originall of the Danes, whoe, issueinge owte of their contrie, somtimes like theves, bie wastinge of there teritories, and overthrowe of howses, somtime bie the verie rightes of warre, soe afflicted the Englishe nation that in conclusion they obtayned a kingdom in the Ionde. But more of these things in more convenient place. Now wee will make discourse of the principles of this so feerce a nation.

The Gothes, a most cruell kinde of Germanians or Scithians, (for in that poynot writers doe not agree among them selves,) of auncient authors weare otherwiles termed Getes, otherwiles Danes. Emonge the rest Strabo, in his viij booke of Geographie, asseverethe the Danes to have a divers contrie from the Getes, and that the Danes possessed places more adjoininge to the middell of the soyle land bendinge towards Germanie, and nearer to the fowmenteines of the river Ister, in antique yeares being caulled Dawin; but the Getes to be more nerelie planted to the sea and east partes; wherfore the Getes and Danes seeme to bee all one nation, and onlie to bee dissevered in habitation, for as muche as according to his testimonie thei bothe hadde the use of one language. These menne hadde peace graunted them of Augustus, and were prohibited in enie wise to passe the river Danubius, or Dunoise, who, not longe after, breakinge this inhibition, and exceeding the prescribed limits, of two Romayne capitanes, first Oppius Sabinus, then in the time of Domitian of Cornelius Fuscus, being sent to acquite that trespase, weare, with all there garrisons, clerelie confounded and destroyed;}
after that the Emperour Trajanus drave them owt of the Romaine bowndes into their owne costes, with noe small scathe and affliction. Then Antonius, surnamed Caracalla, conductinge an armie againste the Parthians, assayled of a sodaine and plagued the Danes, for that thei semed not contented with enie kinde of tranquillitee; and in processe Gordianus the younger abated their pride, while they endeavored noveltes and immutation. After this there ensewed more troblesom tempestes with this generation of vipers, for under the empire of Philippus, who was the first christened of the Romaine emperors, manie wilde contries, transgressing the Romaine prescriptes, didd tumultuouslie annoye Thracia and Lysia, at the which time, or at the least not longe after, when as fallallite drewe the pompe of the Romaine glorie towadres the laste date, these dregges and abjection of all menne burste forth into all partes of the worlde in greate assemblies; for the Gothes invaded Asia, having firste wasted Bithinia, with noe small portion of Macedonie and Thracia. At the lengthe Claudius the Seconde, Emperowre of Rome, brought allmoste to extremitie these slavishe rovers in Misia, slainge and apprehendinge three thousands of them. Yet weare they not greatlie quiet enie weare, butt afterward stirring in commotion, in mayne fighete weare vanquished of Aurellianus beyonde Dunowe at the firste battayle. Thus in fine the Gothes, beinge tormented with so manie overthrowes, didd longe absteyne from bickering, till they weare conquered and put to flighte of the Hunnes, at suche time as the Emperowre Valens obtained the governement of the este partes.

This people, notwithstandinge at the first thei weare called Gothes, yet, bie reason that of owld historiens they weare som time called Getes, somtime Danes, it is not to be doubted but that the Getes and Danes weare the cheepest people which, under the conduite of the Gothes, invaded the Romaine bowndes, under the reigne of Philippus; and, consequentlie, it is justlie thought that they beinge beaten out of their owne possessions, while thei searched newe places of abode, at the last rested in the northe partes of
Germanie, naming it Dacia, or Denmarcke, according to their owne appellation. This parte beinge extended into the ocean, like a man's arme, hath the forme of Cheronesus, or of an halfe Ile. And, least the name of Getes and Danes should bee discouered from the Gothes, they are reported to have termed an Ile in the ocean sea (not far from Denmarcke, lienge towards the sterre called the beare) bie there owilde name Gothia, which peradventure other then presentlie or after thei possessed: soe that as well this place as that same Cheronesus is inhabited of them; and, the olde name beinge cleane inveterate and exchanged through thei dominion, it is called Dacia, or Denmarcke. Trulie the Cumbrians, whome Caius Marius overcam longe since, withhelde this londe, which allmost was never inhabited of one onlie people, wherebie I suppose the auncient name to have perished, for the old contrie of Dacia was neare unto the Pannonians, now called Hungariens, and at this daye is termed Valachia, bie reason that the Danes, beinge expelled from thence to serche newe places, the Romaine colonie was sente thether as planted in their roomes, for Valach in their speeche signifieth Italion. Of theis Valachians there were two contrarie factions, that is to weete, betweene the people called Dragulæ and the Danes; but the Dragulions beinge farre to weake for the Danes, within the remembrancie of our fathers, browghte in the Turckes into thei londe, whose hadde allmoste overrunne the Danes, but they weare restored againe bie Ihon Huniades, the father of Matthias kinge of the Pannonians, whoe delivered them from the Turckes to their owne libertyes and Christian name. Herebie wee maye easlie discerne whoe are the right Danes, and that wee oughte not to call them Danes which inhabite Cheronesus in Cimbria, consideringe that they as yeat remaine in Valachia, but rather those whoe, beinge tossed and disturbed owt of their contrie, didd finallie repaire in that forsayde peece of an Iland; which thinge, even bie this example, may bee prooved, biecause that the lorde of that region in his title and charters pronouncethe himselfe not Dano-
rum rex, but Dacorum, which thing noe doubt ministerethe error to those that intermeddell with the histories of the borderers of that ocean; and, among all other, Saxo Grammaticus, a coronographer of the gestes of that nation, is especiallie deceaved, if the booke which is sette forthe bee not mervayluslie fallsce. Wherefore, lest wee semblablie showlde wander in the same erroneous shippe, I thought not good in this point to followe suche authors. But now more of our purpose. This fierce people, which now borderethe on the Germian ocean, which in auncient years lived beyonde the river Ister, beinge dayle more and more overcharged with their owne multitude, soe longe with continuall warrs and incursions persecuted the Englisshemenne; for the ocean makethe noe great distance betweene England and Danmarcke; that in conclusion they gatte the better hande. Let this compendious brigement suffice as towchinge the originall of the Danes.

Now let us retorne to Ethelwolphus. This moste redoubted prince, (who was comparable to his father,) as one whome nature did fabricate and bringe forthe as an image of humanitee and justice, did regarde nothinke in the world so mutche as without intermission to deserve well of his subjectes, alwayes preferring suche unto administration as were juste and equall dealers: a great peecce of the occasion thereof weare Sainct Swithinus and Adelstanus, at that vereie time menne of sincere livinge and grate wisdom, and of the kinges preevie counsell, bie the meense wherof æquatee and tranquillitee flourished echewhere, untill an huge number of Danes departinge owte of their contrie wandered for prayes abowte the Ilond, plaginge the inhabitants with a thousand evels; for remedie of the which injuries, the kinge was necessarilie driven to use the ministerie of weapon, which naturallie hee abhorred, and oftentimes sharpelie persecuted themme; nevertheless, these wicked rascalls rinnin g hither and thether like the savage beaste, and exercising crueltie towards all sorts and contries, didde especiallie depopulate the fruitfull province of Kent. Howbeit, finallie they weare driven owte, laden with noe small store of bootie. The king, after his
deliverie owte of trouble, for devotion wente to Roome, whare, beinge jentellie entreated of Leo the forthe busshoppe of that name, hee made all that parte of the realme tributarie to the see of Rome which his father Egbertus had annexed to his native inheritance, folowinge the example of Inas, as beefore we men-
ioned, and made a lawe that they whose possessions soever ad-
mounted to xxxd. or hadd divers howses, they showlde paye a pennie for everie one which they inhabited yearlie to the Romaine busshop at the feaste of Saint Peter and Powle, or at the utter-
most at Lammas, which lawe somme menn falselie do attribute to his sonne Alured; this was the yeare of our Lorde DCCCLXXI. He is reported to have re-edified a certaine schoole at Rome, which was nearlie consumed with fier a littall before his cominge to the cittie; the same was firste of all erected bie Offa kinge of the Mercians; but that schole at Rome, wherein onlie Englishemen sojourned in their studdies and litterature, I suppose to have stoode even in that place whare the hospitall dedicated to Saint Thomas consistethe, whereunto the English peole have accesse and succoure. Kinge Ethelwolphus, after hee hadd made his abode at Rome the greatest parte of the yeare, he reversed homewarde, showinge him to all his not onlie a merciful prince, but also a verie patronne and father, referring all things to the sup-
portinge of honestie and mayntayninge of modestie. Hee becausathe his wife Osburga these sonnes, Ethelbaldus, Ethelbertus, Ethel-
redus, and Aldredus, or otherwise Aluredus, all yonge men of no lesse excellencie in disposicion then comlines in beawtie, whome hee procured to bee fostered in good arts, yeat nothinge he more endeoved than that they showlde beecom bowntaus and large in geovinge; for this most prudent prince well perceaved that there couldle none so fowle and unseemelie a vice beefall to a kinge as avarice, which commonlie goethe not unaccompanied, beinge the novice of all crimes, which, if it showlde be in a ruler, it most needs creape through and devoure the substance of manie. Wherefore thesee rioll impes, being well informed of their parent,
not unworthille everie of them reigned after his decease. Ethelwolhus, temperinge all things with this sobriete and integritae, was attainted with an easie sickness, and nevertheless died thereof the xx. yeare of his reign; his corpes was carried to Winchester, and there, with honorable buriall, intumiled. At that verie time there flourished iij. virgins of moste pure and clene life, Modevena, in Ireland; Achea and Oisitha in England; this laste was tormented unto deathe of the Danes: the two others never felte the deadlie darts of frowning fortune; yeat as well Modevena and Achea, as this innocent martir Oisitha, weare in time enumerated emonge the Saintes. Ethelbaldus bie succession hadde the monarchie as xix. from Cerdicianus, wherin hee persisted onlie the space of v. monethes, for hee sodainlie falling into a fever died thereof, leving his diadem as dewe to Ethelbertus, a man moste worthie of his father, grandfather, and suche his noble predecessors. Streyghte after the beginninge of his dominion, the Danes in greate rowtes made irruptions in the Iond; and raunginge throwgh the province of Kente, they aggrieved the inhabitantes with infinite mischeves; with whome the kinge, not longe after, valiantlie encounteringe, did not leave to persecute them till after miserable occision he skoureged them all owte of this region; which things prosperuslie achieved this prince, revolwing daylie with him selfe thinges of great importaunce, and conducible to the quiet estate of his contrie, hee was prevented of forecast bie the immaturitie of his deathe, skarctlie having accomplished the vt. yeare of his reigne. Then was Ethelredus the brother of Ethelbertus created kinge as xxi. from Cerdicianus, beinge a manne at home meakes and affable, whoe bie his graciuse behavior and renowne alluered the hartes of all menn to frindeship and benevolence; but abrode and in externall affayres hee was not soe, for, in that he was skilfull in the warlike sciens, hee executed all thinges with severitae, bie that meanes being noe lesse famus in quiet tranquillitae then tempestuous warss; albeit bie the Divine power it was denied him to remainge longe ether in
peace or in this life; for hee lived skarce vi. yeares, and all that space was tossed with the waves of continuall battayle; for the Danes, longe beefore having triall in the fertilitie of the Ilonde, didde often carrie greate store of bootie owt of the same, somtimes bie stelthe, somtimes bie open warrs: endeovinge soe to infringe the power thereof, that at the lengthe they might with facilite obteyne dominion therein, insomutche that, daylie echewheare makinge troblesom invasions, they disturbed greeveslie the estate thereof. Wherfore Ethelfredus joyned oft in battayle with them, allbeit with variable and divers fortune; wherbie the Danes conceavinge victorie in their minde, when they coulde perceave noe cause whic they showlde enie more use the matter like pickinge and tumultuus rovers, thei gatheringe a mayne armie minede to invade the Ilonde; wherfore within short time there kinge Inarus, with a great navie, arrived at the entrie of the river Humber, and, minding as it were to conteende for deathe and life, entred into the contrie with open profession of hostilitie. The kinge in the meane season beinge in noe pointe of lesse industrie, made expedition towards that place wheare hee understoode that his enemies weare encamped, and as soone as hee hadd them in sighte he sett forthe his menn, and thus placed them in order: In the lefte winge he assigned a parte of his troupe of horssmen, with all suche as weare ordeyned for succowrs, over whome he made governor his yonger brother Alured, a mann of singuler vertewe, at whose countermaunde he commanded all the centuriens to bee ready; in the right winge he appoynted the residew of the horsemenne, with a likelie companie of archers, with the floure of the youthfullest footemenne, where himselfe was in riall presence. Whilst the Englishe armie thus marched towards the battaille, the Danes, in whome was noe lesse crooked corage then regarde of their doinges, after they weare in goodd araye thei approched nearer, and the onset bieng blowne at one time on ether side, they rushed feercelie to geether and exercised varietee of fighte. But when the Englishe people perceaved
THE FIFTH BOOK.

that there enimies camm on in greate thronge with there deadlie
weapons, and in suche sorte that it was not easie for them to
withstande in æquall condition, as warie warriors, and well inured
in suche traine bie theire former fighetes, thei didd a littell abate
their force, standing stille even to middest of them, that bie the
favoringe of their brethe and strengthe the reste mighte drawe
neare, and that the heate of their enemies might waxe somwhat
cowld: thus ceasing for a season, thei reiterated the rase and
ranne speedelie on their enemies. Nether didd the Danes wante
this seate, whoe, keaping their order, sustained quietlie the violence
of the Englishemen, and after while with brighte swordes thronged
forwarde; the whole companie of the archers put them selves in
the fore froonte, then hurtelinge rownde, was soe boysterus that
unethes the Englishe soldiers cowld abide it, but, geving
somwhat backe, beeganne to determine of flieenge, which when the
kinge perceaved, hee planted all his horsemens in convenient roome
to breake this sharpe assault. The Danes not stirringe owte of
their places, sumwhat repressed their rage, soe didd all the Eng-
lishemen, for that the nighte drew faste on, which noe doubtte was
acceptable to both parties, for they hadd continued the fight from
morening unto the eveninge, which departed the skirmishinge of
the lefte winge, wereunto manie that were sore traveled and
wearie did resorte; and the multitude of dead carkases did on eche
parte hinder there fightinge; wherfore the retrayte, which was
blowne on ether side, was easlie hardde, especialli of the English-
men, to whome it was verie commodius, for theye so hardlie
resisted that alreadie it was bruted that they weare overcome,
soe that allmoste the Mercians, at the exhortacions of the North-
humbrians, weare readie to rebell. All that night the Danes were
verie circumspecte and carefull, knowinge that in the contrie of an
enemie they muste either vanquishe or die; they refressshed there
traveled bodies with meate, they gathered the deadd corpses to-
gether, they cuered the woonded, and tooke reste themselves; the
Englishhe people, on the other side, which that daye weare allmoste

CAMD. SOC. 2 D
overthrowne, prepared freshe aides, for all men repayred on all aides to relieue there frinides, and the daye followinge, the wether waxing clere, when manie newe soldiers weare thrust in the place of suche as weare tyered, with haute corage they hasted to battayle; nether weare there adversaries behinde hand, albeit that they weare overlaborred with forreine warres, and nothing increased sithe the laste conflicte; wherfore, renewinge the olde contention, they bickered, but nothing in æqual sorte; for the deathe of Ivarus, whoe was slaine at the first encounter, so appalled the stomachs of the Danes, that forthewhith they put them selfe to flighte, and a great number of them weare slaine beefore that they cowlde attayne to enie saftie; then immediatlie they assigned for their capitans the two brothers, Agnerus and Hubo, (of whome wee made mention beefore,) whoe greatlie indevorred the renewinge and furniture of the armie. These things agree not with the opinion of Saxo Grammaticus, whoe affirmethe that Ivarus, when he cowlde nott obtaine his purpose in a lion’s skinne, he putte on the kase of a foxe, that is to saye, when with strength he cowlde not prevayle, with sublitez and discyte hee assayled his enemie. Moreover, as the same mann purportethe, Ivarus, after peace made with the Englishe nation, obtened soe muche londe as hee cowlde compasse with an horsse skinne, and cuttinge the same into small thonges, semed to have encroched a place sufficient wherin hee mighte build a fayre citteee, and consequentlie fallinge againe to the owilde warres, bie that meanes became a great lorde in the soyle; but within two yeares followinge hee was necessarilie driven to returne home for the appeasinge of certaine broylees and tumultes, leavinge Agnerus as a garrison for the Ilonde. Saxo recitethe noe name of this cittie soe sodaynlie erected bie Ivarus, but surelie the towne named Dongcaster semethe to have derived the name of som suche means, for caster in the owilde speeche signifieth a citteee, and what a thonge is eche man knoweth; and for as muche as in our tongue, T is commonlie used for D, Dongcaster maye have the name thereof compounded, or at the leaste
wise it shall bee lawfull for us soe to gesse. But againe to our matter: Ethelredus, notwithstanding hee hadde obtayned so worthie a victorie, yet nothinge contemninge or neglectinge the power of his adversaries, did omitte noe oportunitie of adminis-
tringe the residewe of his assayres, and soe muche the rather, biecause hee was donne to understande that daylie an infinite number of people hadde recourse into the Ilond for to aide there natives. The Danes havinge restored there armie the xv. daye after ther overthrow, coped againe with the Englishe people with suche assured hope that they so putte them to fighte that it was to bee feared lesthe this weare the laste day that the Englishemenne shoulde be able enie more to matche with them. The armie which hadde conquered bie and bie securlie beetoke them to spoyle, destroyeng all things rownde abowte them; and, while that freelie they raunged throughes the fieldes of their adversaries, they sodaynlie fell into an embusishment which Ethelredus hadd layde for them, gathering to gather certaine of his disparckeled companie. There was noe small slaughter of the Danes, which ranne away; nether was the Englishe parte free from bloodeshedde, emong whome Ethelredus himselfe was wounded, with the torment whereof hee shortlie died. This was the vi. yeare of the reigne of Ethelredus, whose noble gestes ware soe renowned that bie his unriple deathe hee seemed to have donne noe great harms, especiallie seing that in his dethe bedd hee resigned the charge of the realme to his brother Alured, a manne of æquall vertewse unto him, and one whome in fore times hee hadd made heir apparent. Aluredus, at the verie firste en-
tringe on his dominion, for the performance of his vowe, wente to Rome, where he was againe crowned of Hadrianus the ij. Bus-
shop of Rome, the dcccclxvij. of our Salvation; wherfore it cannot agree that hee shoulde receave this honor of Leo the iiij. as som, mistaking the time, have left in writinge. The Danes rested not thus, but hastelie entered into Mercia, beereving kinge Bert-
tulphus of his imperie; yet not longe after they wear expelled of
Burthredus, whome, not withstanding, in small time recoveringe, they dispossessed of his regalitie; and beinge nowe lorde of Mercia, theye made Ceovolphus kinke; as reheersall was made in our former booke, and, consequentlie, settinge on the Northe Humbrians, they overcamme them, beinge for feare enclosed in the citte Yorcke, sackinge and racinge allso the towne. With these fortunate exploytes theye weare so puffed uppe that finallie thei subdewed the East Angles, sleeinge there moste hollie prince Edmondus, apoyntinge as kinge one of their owne capitans, named Guthormus, after whome succeeded Ericus, whome for his crewel governinge in fine the Englishemenne didde slea. Thus all this season the Danes with held Mercia, and the Est Angles didde kast all kinde of wayse howe theye might vanquishe the Weste Saxons, the encrease of whose power and welthe didd greately greeve them. Aluredus was a man as worthie to be praysed in forreyne affayres as to bee merveyled at for his domesticall ordi-naunces, of great witte and highe wisdom: to himme all thinges weare full of difficultee at the beginning of his regiment, and afterward verie laborius, yeat full of prosperus successse.

The Danes, above all others, didd greatlie envie the manifolde vertewse of the prince, and ernestlie desiered in all haste to oppresse himme, for onne a time, he beinge in a certayne mansion of his, neare unto London, mindinge to recreate himselfe with huntinge, the Danes loyeringe in London weare certified that thei hadd opportunitie to destroye theire enemie, wherfore they hasted thither with a goodd companie of harnised menne, and so-dainelie beset the kinge within the walles of his manowre. The Englandis knightes, beinge sodainelie astonishe at the chaunce, beinge few in number, woulde have perswaded the kinge to take flighte whilste that thei russhed forthe; but hee, thinckinge that it wolde be opprobrius unto him, as a thinge scarslie feat, and unfittinge to the regall maiestie, delibered to withstande the adventure, and, indeede, metinge with them, whoe thronged in heddlonge, foughte righte noblie; but when he perceaved bothe himselfe and
his menne to bee on all sides invironed, then at the laste, allbeet sore against his wille, he put himselfe to escape; yeat didde hee not seeke dennes, or lurckinge places, but, like a rioll capitaine, levinge the rage of his adversaries beehinde his backe, with expeditor hee gathered a bande of menne and mette with the Danes, who, hering of the assemblie of their enemies, not daring to comm abrode, retired againe to London, and, greatlie fearing the puis-saunce of the kinge, beganne with embassage to treate of peace. The conditions weare, that with robberies, or hostile incursions, thei showlde never after moleste the westerne kingdom, and for the better perfewrmance of their bargaine they showlde geeve hostages. Somm write that the lawse of peace weare cheefelie that the Danes showlde departe owte of the Ilond, never more to retowne, which indeed was nether trewe, nether yeat perfowrmed, for havinge all readie incroched ample dominion, they wowlde not have soe donne, except verie extremitie hadd compelled. The king made noe refusall of these conditions, as one that detested battaile in comparison of honeste quietnes, that, ceasing from martiall affayres, hee might noe lesse establishe with lawse then gar-nishe with letters his contrie, which as yeat weare verie geysone therein. Wherfore, takinge their pledges, he was willing to make composicion with his enemies: allbeit but for a littel season it tooke effect, for the Danes, which cownted allwais their commo-ditee to bee preferred beeore their relligion or promisse, shortelie after removing from London, in great jornies wente to Exciter, and bie force toke the citte. Exciter is a cittee in the countie of Devonshier, planted in an highe place, westwarde, havinge the river Exis ronninge bie, wherof it hathe the name, and is three miles distant from the sea; which horrible trespasse, as sone as Aluredus knewe, afflicting the hostages with condigne punish-ment for the breche of the covenante, hee marched towards his perfidious foes. The Danes weare not awars of the kingses com-inge, and whether it weare that they minded to werie himme with persevering them, or that in deade they weare dismayde, leavinge
Exeester, they retiered spedelie towards London, and at xvij. miles of, at Chipenham, which is a village neare to Bristowe, they pitched their tentes, and there casting a trencche, thei fenced themselves. The town of Bristow is sittat at the flowinge place of the river Severne, westwarde, and hathe runninge neare unto it the river Havon, wherin the greater sorte of vessels have accesse thereto; which thing being intimated to the king, he turned owte of the waye, and plantinge his pavilions neare to his adversaries, with revilinge and reproches they weare provoked to fighte. The clamor waxed great on bothe sides that eche mann shoulde to armowre. The Danes, who knewe that there was noe waye but ether to fyghte or to die, mad no tarienge in the case. The Englishemen, without standard, went hedlonge to the battayle, and, albeit, they weare owte of ordre, and fewer in nombre, yest with suche impetuus violence they sett on there enemies that the verie animosite and corage was a terroure unto them; but afterwarde, being skattered emonge thicke rowtes of their adversaries, perceivinge that there was small succours in soe small a nomber, thei beeganne to loke backe one on an other, and, being repelled on all sides, thei gathered into a rownde clustre, which, albeit it was the wisest counsell, yest the Danes being instante and feerce on all hands, they weare driven into suche a streyghte that scarcele they hadde enie roume to beestirr them with their weapons; yet, standing as it weare in this rownde globe, they brought to deathe manie of the Danes, and among them was Hubo, the brother of Agnerus, and manie other capitains of approved magnanimitie. In conclusion, the Englishe warriers, whose were compassed with their adversaries as it weare with a garelonde or crowne, and smitten downe on all sides bie maine strengthe, burste forth and repayred to their tentes. This battayle was soe sequallie fowghte on bothe sides that noe mann cowlde discree ether who departed conqueror, or whose was vanquished. They committed the wounded persons to the leches, and suche as weare deade they buried; the Danes didd especiallie with honorable sepulture prosecute the corps of Hubo, which
THE FIFTH BOOK.

being finished, they began to goe forward with their pretenced jornie, and camme to Abyndon, a village neare to Thames, distant xlv. miles from London, and there placed their pavilions: the English men weare also immediatly, and pitched there tents faste bie their enemies. In the meane season, the brute wente in eche coste that Aluredus was prosiged of the Danes, for that bie littell and littell hee, coolinge the heathe of the fighte, re- trayted his menne to their pavilions: which thinge toorned to his great commoditee, for divers menne swarmed in the waye of succoure to the kinge. Aluredus, the nexte daye after his comminge thither, broughte his aydes into the maine campe; nether didd his enimies make delays, but manfullie susteyned the warres which sharpelie they hadde taken in hande, and, unitinge there whole assemble, did never fight with greter companie or bolder corage, for this contention was maintained with suche flaminge ire on bothe parties, that there was not a darte throwne on ether side; they beganne the battayle with brighte swordes, and worthyle enduered the same, the condition thereof persevered soe doubtfull and uncertaine, that they seemed not noe to have adoe with the Danes whome they hadde esteons foyled and overthrowne, but with som newe and straunge nation. There was not once thinking of flighte on ether parte, in so mutche that soone they drewe towards the uttermoste pointe of their travell and daunger, for the horsemen on bothe sides leaving their horsses assayed to fighte on foote. Nowe didde the reddie blode flowe in stremes on the grouwnde. Now didde the huge heapes of dedd carcasses hinder these undaunted warriors that allwayse fowght on equall hande; now in there ferie minde they often sighed that the daye was not perdurable accordinge to there stomaches. What shoulde I saye? the night repressed necessarilie their rage, which never didd intercepte a more noble or glorious fight within the memorie of manne, and all this while was it unknowne which waye the victorie did encline, soe victoriuslie did ether armie supporte the warres on equall balance: yea, it is lefte in writinge, that within the revo-
lution of that yeare, betwixt the Engleshe people and the Danes, there were vii suche battayles performed of like glory and semblable ende on ether side. At the lengthe, when their force and puissance was indifferentlie abated on bothe partes, thei easilie drew to agreement and made these covenantes, that the Danes shoulde cleane desiste from warre, nether attempting in fight, nether entrapping in treason the Englishemenn, never more sendinge for freshe soldiers out of Denmarcke into the Ilonde. Somm there are which write, that accordinge to their agreement all the Danes did againe fleete into their contrie; which, as it is falselie affirmed of the writers, soe was it never done of the Danes. This was the viiith yeare of the reign of Aluredus, in the which the Danes, as they weare accustomed, passed the winter at London.

But now I muste somewhat declare as towchinge the comminge of Rollo into Englonde, and afterward into Fraunce, of whome the Dukes of Normandie hadde their originall (whoe afterwarde possessed this realme), that the historie may proceade in dewe ordre. Rollo beinge a Dane, borne abowte the DCCCLXXXVII. yeare of our Salvation, arrived in England with noe small rowte of lustie yownge menne which serched new habitations, mindinge to joyne in aide with his contriemenn, and bie that conjunction cleane to abolishe the Englishe name; but when hee perceaved them weried andspent with longe warres to bee joyned in league with Eng- lond, hee toke it verie hevelie, yet thinckinge it not beste to abstaine eni longer from warre, for the more provocation of his enemies to geee him battayle, he consumed all thinges with sword and fier, bie the which thinge Aluredus conceaved noe lesse feare then greefe, whoe hoped a while to have ceased from the terrible clatterings of armes; yeat, wayinge with himselfe that in the arrivall of a new adversarie there cowlde bee nothinge more safe then celeritee, hee forthewith determined to countergarde and withstande there attempts; wherfore comming speedelie to hande-strokes, manie menn on bothe sides loste there lives, but the greater losse beeffell unto the Danes. After these thinges, when
as Rollo betooke himselfe to reste and sleape (as it is a thinge
which moste of all vigethe the weried persons) it is reported that
hee seemed to see over him and his armie a swarme of bees sfienge
in great noyse over the sea unto the next firme lande, and there
feadinge on the sweete bloomes of the trees, didde wander through
the shore of the Frenche ocean, there heapinge all their flowres
together which they hadd gathered; and that hee awakinge owt
of his vision beeganne to ponder and examen this thinge with him-
selve, accountinge it as an unfeyned divination, as whoe shoulde
saye that it did prognosticat nothinge els but that he showlde have
felicitie, finishinge all his travayles in Fraunce. There are som
others which make an other manner of relation as concerning this
dreame, affirminge, that it appeared to himm that hee was sicke
of a certaine swellinge lepraye, and beinge wasshed in the foun-
taine of a certaine hille was soone healed thereof, and that after-
warde in safetie hee ascendid to the topppe of the same hille. The
which swiven or vision a certaine soundesayer thus intreiprited,
that the lepraye signified the vaine relligion of the hethen goddes,
wherein hee was from his cradel entangeled, and that the fown-
taine beetokened the salutiferous water of baptisme, wherin being
owtewathed hee shoulde obteyne his purpose and soe clime to the
toppe of the mowntaine, that is to saye, the highe and heavenlie
glorie; wherefore Rollo beinge now replete with goodd hope and
of muche lesse ranckoure and malice towards the Christians, hav-
inge a watchword thereof in his vision, hee howsed uppe his
sayles and passed over in to Fraunce, and first spyling the parte
Coltique therof which bowndethe on the Frenche ocean on this
side the river Seyin or Sequana, possessed the same, and after
using of the ministrie of Sequana, went forward againste the streeme
unto Roan, and gave assaulte to the cittee, which at the lengthe
the citizens dispairenege in them selves, and frustrate in there ex-
pectation for succours, didd voluntarie yealde unto himme. This
citte, as Cesar wittenesseth, was som time in the dominion of
the people named Aulecci. As sone as Rollo had subdewed this
cittey, he was fullie resolved to sett uppon the borderinge places, thickinge it greatlie to availe his entente that he might use the commoditie of three navigable flooddes, Sequana, Liger, Garunna, which are usuallie called Seyne, Loyre, and Geronde; wherefore compasinge the greatest armie that hee cowlde, and furnishinge also a navie, the jornieng partelie on the river Loyre, and partelie on londe, dismayde all Fraunce with no lesse terrowre then slaughter. Rollo, that bie this means hee mighte annoyse his adversaries, havinge daylie greater retinew of the borderers which ranne unto him, hee sent forthe armed menn into all costes; villages and howses were eche wheare sette on fire; great bootie was carried owt of all corners, untill Charles the kinge of Fraunce, surnamed Simplex, (a manne more to be redowted for the sincerite of life then renowned for warlike knowledge,) thickinge he mighte rather mitigate his feerce enemie with goodd advertisements then sharpe strokes, sente ambassadowres to require of Rollo trewce for iij. monethes: which thinge, biecause it was no lesse expedient for the Danes, whose desiered releefe after soe longe labowres, it was not denied himme. But the time being once accomplished, Rollo, leadinge forthe his garrisions, didd invade the people called Caruntes, or Charters, and prepared to assaulte their towne; which when he hadde beseeged, Richard duke of the highe Burgonians, (who in auncient time wear called Seguani,) with a great bande, camme to the reskewse of them that weare beseeged, and incontinentlie assayled his enemie; which thinge when the townes menn once perceaved, taking good corage, burste forthe on their adversaries, their bishoppe goinge before in the place of a standerd-bearer, carrienge, as menn saye, the inner garment of the Virgine Marie, and imploringe the divine favor and assistance. The Danes weare not able to abide this vehement irruption, but, being driven away with noe small losse of their companie, they repayred to a place not farre off, and there enkendelinge one another with wrathelie and rage, they gathered together all the dissevered multitude, and withoute delaye running hedlonge on eche side, thei molested and annoyed all the places of their enemies, and what for hope of
praye, what for their conceaved hatred, with sleeinge and rifelinge
they didde crewellie plague the miserable Frenchemen, neither
sparinge age nor kinde, but consuminge with fier as well the
tempells of Godde as the privat howses of menne; thus the
barbarus people, withowthe respecte, polluted bothe thinggs divine
and humaine. In the meane space the Frenchmen spake muche
diswormshippe of their sufferain Lorde, alleginge that hee was bothe
slowe and foolish, of noe consideration to repell hostilitee, whearas,
indeed, king Charles didde muche more repose his conforte
in the helpe of all-mightie Godd, then in his armoure; for he foreseenge
that the puissance of his adversarie daylie more increased
then with safetie he might resiste, hee rather endeavored to traine
this nation, as well fierce of nature as in demaynor boysterus, to
the embracing of the trewthe, and desier of his frindeshippe; wherefore
agayne hee sente Legats unto Rollo, which shoulde exhorte
him to acknowledge the Christian pietie, and enfourme him that
with large dowrie hee would geve himm in mariage his dowghter
Aegidia, a mayden of noe lesse demure beehavior then comlie
countenaunce, if in the waye of sownde faythe hee woulde receave
her. Francio, bisshop of Roane, was cheefe of this embassage, a
mann well knowne and accepted of Rollo. Wherefore hee, which
now beganne to bee werie of the continuall broyles of warre, and
of more civile disposition, bie his continuall entiercowrse with the
Frenchmen, didd the more willinglie geve ear to the embassage,
and did participate with his frindes suche thinges in the waye of
consultation as weare proposed. All men condiscended in this,
that the conditions of peace weare not to bee refused; but to the
Legates was made nother aunswere but that Rollo was desierus
to conferre and commune with Charles himselfe. The embassa-
dours in haste retourninge, made relation of their rejonder: wherefore,
thei speedelie calling in counsell, Charles and Rollo mett
togethers, to whome hee gave his daughter, and for the dowrie
that parte of Caltica or Lions which at that time was called
Neustria, and appertayne to the nearer Brittaine; which contree,
as soone as Rollo hadde receaved, hee termed it Northmannia, because that menn cominge owte of the northe partes possessed the same, for northe and manne sownde in the Danishe speche as thei doe in ours. But in time it camm to passe that levinge oute t. and h. for the more pleasaunte pronowncinge, it was called Normania. These things have I glened owte of the Norman writers curialie, but I knowe not how trewlie, considering that they agree not with other authors, which write more formallie; and alaso seing that it is evident that beefore the comminge of Rollo, Gothofredus and Sigifredus being kinges, the Normans entered together with the Danes, and after peace made with Carolus Crassus, of himme they receaved a parte of Newstria to inhabite; wherfore they affirme that Rollo joynd with the Normans, there confirminge theire abode, when as Carolus Simplex reigned: and that Aegidia was not the daughter of Simplex, but of kinge Lotharius, and that Crassus himselfe bestowed her on Gothofredus kinge of the Normans: which thing trewlie was an occasion ef error, insomutche that writers surmised that she maried with Rollo, whoe no doubt espoused Opes, the daughter of Berengarius earle of Beavoise. I thought good to putt in sumwhat of these thinges, sithe I have promised to write a most sincere historie, that, bie recitinge the opinions of writers, the reader shall have noe scrupulus doubtes in the moste obscure matters. But let us retiere.

Rollo getting suche dominion in the contrie of his enemie, bee-
cam daylie lesse troublesom to all menn; yea, in shorte time hee waxed so full of clemencie and godlines, that, nothing at defiance with the trew religion, of his owne accorde he was baptizd of Francio bisshop of Roane, and named Robert, throughe Robert earle of Poyters, whome hee desiered as a fatherlie witnesse of the receaing this sacrament. Sum write that the Normans weare commanded to paye a yearlie tribute to the kinges of Fraunce as lordes of Newstria, that it shoulde not bee reported to bee gotten bie warres, but bie the francke graunte of Carolus. Thus this Rollo
was the first duke of Normandie, of whome the other dukes of Normandie hadde their originall; and duke William the bastard, whoe obtained the kingdom of England, as hereafter shall bee shewed in place conveniente. When as maturitee of yeares hadd brought Rollo, as time dothe all things, to his fatall ende, William, his first begotten sonne of his wife Opis, succeeded, of whom there more in time to comm, as occasion shall serve. Now will I re-
sume the discourse of Aluredus.

The Danes persisted a while in their league with the Eng-
lishe men, but at the laste, breakinge their vowe, they sodainelie and unwars settinge uppon the horsemen of Aluredus, who lay securelie in their fortresses aboute the borders of the contrie, slewe them everie one. The kinge, as a mann stirred with juste indignation, chased these recreanties unto Excitre; but for as muche as they weare readie to resiste at his verie entrie into the citee, hee wiselie paused and delibered in the case, and once againe taking hostages, graunted them peace, rather that hee mighte advise himme how to withstande this harde for-
tune, then that hee gave enie saythe to their unfaythefulnes. But the Danes, after the truce covenanted, was not one moment in quietnes, as the extreeme enemie of tranquillitee. The kinge, who was greatlie aggrieved at the continuall motion of the warres, being bie noe meanes able to chastise or deale with soe unreason-
able creatures, commaundinge newe musters of soldiers eche wheare to be taken, and with a demisse and sorofull harte, in the meane space, conveyed himselfe with a fewe of his menn into certaine fenns and marishe groundes in the countie of Somersett, whear being overwhelmed and wrapped in great anxietee, while he earnestly beseeched Godd of succoure, and passinge certaine dayse in takinge advisement what weare beste to bee donne, beehowld hee mette with a poore man, as it seemed, who humblie requiered a peec of breade, and the kinge forthwith in humble wise perfowrmed. The nexte day hee is reported in his sleepe to have seen Saint Cuthbert, standing prestie bie himme, whoe
assuredlie enfourmed himme that hee was the indigent creature on whome hee beestowed the shiver of breade, and bedde himme bee of goodd cheare. With thease thinggs the spirits of Aluredus weare so greatlie recreated that immediatlie hee repayred to his soldiars, and, accitinge ayde from all costes, hee tooke in hande the battayle againe; thus the godlie prince, beinge ere whiles anoyed with so manie perills, was quicklie as it weare owte of the maine sea into the haven, reduced into his owlde estate. Wherefore with exceedinge diligence he multiplieth his armie; hee recovereth the citties which forsooke himme, ether bie menacinge sternelie, or rewardinge bownteouslie; hee storeth the himselfe with armowre, darts, engines, and all thinge requisite for the conflicte; hee riggethe his shippes, hee placethem in convenient rode, hee mindeethe as well to intercepte the hawnte of the Danes, which continuallie cam into the riollme, and to hinder their returne, which weare all readie nooseled in the sweetenesse of the soyle; and in the meane space, with a bowlde and presente corage, disguised in the attire of a servant, hee ventured into the tents of his enemies; hee espiethe out a meete time for the invadinge of them, and finallie, with princelie animositee, settethe on them whilst they strayed dissolutelie. The Danes at the firste, like vagabunds, weare sharplie afflicted, yeat bie litell and litell they soo drew togethether that not onlie thei feared not, but on noe side they wowlde geeve backe. Thus oftentimes they skirmished bothe on sea and on lande, with variable fortune, till at the lengthe Rochester, London, and Chestre, beinge delivered from beeseginge, the Englishe peple so plagued the Danes, bothe with strokes in field, and grappeling in their navies, that of those which skaped death somme wente from whence they camm; somme, for feare of death, becamme Christians, emonge which number was their king, Gorno; whome the kinge embracing with fatherlie loove, made him cheefetaine over the North Humbrians. Somme testifie that the kinge gave him also the province of the Easte Angles, that is to weete Norffolke and Suffolke. But they noe
doubte weare deceived, for at that time Ericus, a Dane, was
governor thereof, whome afterwarde Edwarde didd expell owt of
his dominion. This Gormo being feerse, accordance to the guise
of his contrie didd crewellie governe the North Humbrians xii.
years, after whome ensewde his sonne Sithricus, and his nephews,
whose weare deprived bie Adelstanus of their imperie, as it shall-
bee mentioned in processe. Aluredus, bie this time, having over-
commed kinge Cevolphus, enjoyed the kingdom of Mercia; which
exploystes and admirable travayles accomplished, he wholie bente
himselfe, firste, to deserve well of the Christian relligion; second-
arilie, of learninge, and all liberall sciences; thirdelei, of the com-
mon welthe; finallie, of the good demainor of all menn, for hee
noe doubte was mindefull of the divine oracle of Saint Cuthheber-
tus, which I spake of beeore, when he was in noe lesse distresse
then distruste; and for the same cause hee gave manie riche giftes
to the churche at Chester, wheare the relliques of Saint Cuth-
bertus weare reserved, encreased also the possessions of the
busshopp, gevinge unto himm the teritorie of Durrham, which
lieth betwene the rivers Tine and Theis, to use and possesse as
his righte and jurisdiction. For at that time, which was abowte
the yeare of our Lord DCCCLXXXIII., the Hollie Ilond being dis-
populate bie the aliens, the see of the bishopp was translated to
the towne which lieth next unto Deyrham, aboute vj. miles of;
but within xliij. years after it was finallie transposed to Deirham;
cclxxxv. after that Aydanus beganne his residence in the Hollie
Ilande. Durrham is a citte neare to the sea coste, bownding
northwarde uppon the river of Weeire. This river hathe his
channell in a steepe stone place, abowte a mile from the cittee,
soe that there apeere great stones on ether side, which never are
covered with water, excepte the raynie brookes minstre occasion
of swellinge. But there chaunceth a thing wonderus to bee
spoken in that place; if bie fortune a littell water bce powred on
the stones, and there a littell tempered, it forthewith beecommeth
salte, weare it beeore never soo sweete; the like in the whole
river beesides owlde never bee tried. But trewle it semethe soe
to comm to passe, ether bie cause the nature of those stones is
suche, or els bie cause the upper parte being parched, and brent
with the vehemencie of the soonne and winde, it engenderethe the
verdure and taste of salte; but now I will returne to mie matter.
Aluredus beesides this edified iij. relligius howses with excellent
furniture, adownrning the one at Winchester, which is called the
Newe monasterie; an other in the village named Shaftesburie, in
the diocese of Sarisburie, apoyntinge noonnes to bee therin, and
his dowghter Ethelgera, or Elgina, to bee the governesse; the
thirde to bee in that place where, as beinge distracte with gnawing
sorowse, hee was reported to have hadd consolation of Saincte
Cuthbertus. He willed the relligius people of this howse to bee
of the order of Sainct Benedicte, gevinge to the same, and the
other two monasteries, large giftes and ample possessions. This
place is som what eminent and higher then the grownde abowte
it, in the fourme of an Ilonde within a great fenne, which wilbee
commonlie drie in sommer, and standethe eastwarde, harde upon
the river Tanus, which, receavinge the sourge of the sea, flowethe
with salte water even unto that place. This Ile in owld time was
called Ethelingea, and now Athelnea, and liethe v. miles from the
towne named Tawnton. This towne is indifferentlie well knowne; it
bowndethe westwarde, beinge in the uttermost parte of the countie
of Sommarsett, bie the which also runnethe the river Tanus, who
hathe his springe xij. miles aboue it. Of this river the towne
seemeth to have derived the name. Aluredus didde these goddlie
[acts] the xxi. yeare of his reign, and the DCCCXCIII. of our Salvation.

This prince, when he was xx. yeares of age, gave him selfe studiulie
to learninge, and in shorte space becam verie well lettered,
insomuche that the dialogues of Saincte Gregorie, Boethius' pamphlet of the comforts of philosophie, and the Psalmes of
David he translated owte of Latine into his native speche, that
they might be understooode of all menn. Howbeit som menn sup-
pose that Werefredus, busshop of Worciter, toorned bothe the
THE FIFTH BOOK.

dialogs of Sainct Gregorie, and the woorcke of Boethius, at his intercession, with whome I do not agree, sithe that hee was of suche reasonable literature and knowleage that justlie it maye bee thought to bee his owne woorcke; but all the Psalmes hee cowlde not finishe, beinge prevented bie deathe. Hee studied moste ernestlie at suche time as learninge was verie rare emonge the westerne men, that bie all means hee might teache his people the way to live well, and generallie to instructe the mindes of everi degree with goodde letters, and in that respecte hee favored sharpe and pregnante wittes. Hee muche esteemed the dignitee of all estates; hee embraced the nobles, hee was affable and milde to the vulgares, hee looved all those in whome appeared enie sparke of vertewe. It is lefte in memorie that hee was wonte topermitte noe manne to entere noe college of preestes, excepte hee wear of approved honestie, of sufficient knowledge, of lowlie beeavour, knowing the owld sayde sawe, that preestes weare the spectacile and looking-glasse of the whole worlde, and, therefore, the trade of other men’s life to be easelie chaunged bie them, and for bie cause hee perceaved within himselfe how fewe suche menne there weare, hee sente owte of all costes for menne noe lesse devowte then scilfull, which showlde take on them this regall function, as the prince of the apostels termethe it; and, abowe all others, hee didde entierlie loove Neotus for his incredible learning, a moste hollie father of monasticall profession, at whose entretie and sollicitinge he founded the common Schooles or Universitee of Oxford, assigning stipend and rewarde for all suche as wowlde professe goodde artes, soe that thether repayred manic profounde learned menn to instructe and teache surelie, fro the time that Sigibertus, kinge of the Easte Angles, had erected scholes within the limits of his riolme, who, as the pleasaunt stremcs of knowleage continuallie runninge owte of that plenteus fowntayne, did not onlie moyste and water all England, but Fraunce also, with the delicious licoure of heavenlie discipline, for (as it is ells wchare declared) when as Offa, kinge of the Mercians, hadde sent Albinus

CAM. SOC. 2 F
or Alchuinus to Charles le Maine in the way of amitee and league, hee perceavinge suche excedinge learninge in himme, as well de-
searved great reverence, he now intreated him, not as a legate, but an honorable gueste, and consequentlie not as a gueste but as his reader and instructer; followinge, I suppose, the auncient ex-
ample of the Athenienses, whose retayned still with them Gorgias, beinge sent on embassage to them in publique affayres from the Leontines, beeing greatlie enflamed and entangeled with his elo-
quence. Thus Alchuinus, an Englishe mann remaininge in Fraunce, beeganne at Parris to proffesse letterature and sciences, and bie his procurement, not longe after, Charles himme selfe didde first of all others erecte there an universitee, and likewise at Ticinum an other, which is now called Papia; this was abowte the yeare of our Lord DCCXCII. at the which time the brute goeth that oute of Irelonde, or as somm surmise Scotlonde, there camme two mo-
nachs into Fraunce with lowde voycye avowchinge that they hadde wisdom to sell, owly desieringe meate and clothinge for their re-
warde, and that the one of them named Clemens, was bie Charles still kept at Lutetia, to whose tuition and enfourming weare com-
mitted yownge menn of all sortes; but thother passed into Italie, teachinge and training upp yowth at Ticinum. Manie there are which ascribe this to the fower disciples of Beda, namelie, to Ra-
banus, Alchuinus, Claudius, and Jhoannes Scotus; but howeso-
ever the case standethe, it is moste evidente that the English-enn weare the firste which toughte openly liberall sciences at Parris, for as mucho as Alchuinus and Jhoannes Scotus weare for learninge menn of greatest fame in Englonde. But againe to the Universitee of Oxforde, which even from the originall, bothe for the studies of divine and humayne knowlege, and for the mul-
titude of suche as buselie employed all goodlie faculties, it soo flourishd in processe of time that in worthines and renowne it might countervayle enie universitee in the worlde; for the skollers thereof from the verie begininge being instituted as it were in a certaine religius reverence and observation of all de-
greese, doe noe lesse nurture their mindes with civile behavior, then adorne the same with learninge; they have howses byleded with princelie furniture, enriched as well with the divers giftes of kings, noble menn, and busshops, as of moste sincere and godlie woomen. These howses thei usuallie call Colleges, bie cause they are ther colliged in felawship and ministerie. The maisters and cheefe governers of them are selected as approved and honest menn, leadinge there lives commonlie at home with the whole boddie of their howses, having sufficiencie in livelod soe to main-tayne them; and daylie in the morneing ether they them selves execute the divine function, or at the leaste wayse are preasent at the hollie service before they enter on their studies; above all things yealdinge due reverence to Godd; then livinge in union of chaste life, and enuring them selves with all laudable artes and sciences; soe that from thence, as from one of the moste learned theaters of the erthe, there commeth the bothe skilfull and goddelie menn, who, partlie bie their livelie instructinge, partelie bie there profounde writinge, doe marvelouslie supporte, honor, and defend Christianitie. Som peradventure there have ben which were nothinge egregius in these poinctes; but there delicatelie runninge the race of there life, bie ther evell ensample sometimes have muche hendered the tender yowthe of others which like wax is flexible into vice. Trulie for this sore might soone bee fownde a salve, if they which daylie gheeve instructions and ordinances to colliges, wold prescribe certayne determinate yeares for schollers, that at their juste time they might procede as learned menne, or els beinge rejected from thence as asses from the harpe (accordinge to the owld saienge) thei mighte leave their roomes to other which might doe muche goodd therin. With this universitee of Oxforde (not withowte good cause) the moste noble and flourishinge universitee of Cambrige contenedethe in renowned fame and famus antiquitee, which albeit, in number of schollers and magnificentie of colliges, it is not superior, yeat in the afluence of goodde artes and liberall sciences noe doubtte it is æquall; nether
trulie is that of noe moment wherin, as the trewe mother of sinceritee, it is woont to vaunte itselfe, namelie, that it never broughte foorth the enie child which was of erroneus judgement as towchinge religion. What showlde I speake of the antiquitee wherein it farre surmountethe, for from the fowndation of the universitee of Cambridge to the erection of that which is at Oxforde ccxxv. yeare weare complete; for this laste was fownded bie Aluredus abowte the xxiii. yere of his reigne, which was the dcccxcv. of our Salvation: the other was bielded of Sigibertus in the yeare of our Lorde dcxxx. But if wee will beeleeve the commentaries of an unknowne writer, the originall, as well of the towne as of the universitee, is farre more auncient, for it is reported that the owlde towne named Caergraunt in times paste was situat at the foote of an hill nort farre of called Withyll, and that in the time of Gurguntius, sonne of Bellinus, a certayne Cantabrian named Bartholomeus cam thether to teache and interprite, and havinge consequentlie in mariadge the kings doughter, called Chembrigia, bilde the towne Cantabrigia, alludinge to his wives name, and first of all others tought there himselfe. But I wil retorne to the historie.

After that Aluredus hadde sowed the precius seades of learninge in his region, as a mann fulley bent to the encreasinge of all vertewus, and behavior, and humanitee, hee promulged most sincere and sacred lawse, which I have fowndde written in a moste auncient booke. But for as muche as emonge Englishe men they were longe since drowned with darcke oblivion, I thoughte it to noe purpose to make recorde of them. To be short, hee was a mann shinninge in all kinde of vertewse, for to all menn, especiallie to the neadie, hee wowlde willing geve of his private substance: hee was verie uprighthe in the execution of justice, for as hee didd alwayse geve dewe chastisement to the offender, so with fatherlie loove hee didd mayntaine the innocent. In the warlike sciens it appeareth that hee was moste excellent of all other kings, for as muche as noe one of them was conqueror of soe manie and divers
battayles. He engendered bie his wife Ethelvitha two sonnes, Edward, surnamed Elder, and Adelwoldus, and three dowghters, Elfreda, Ethelgera or Elgina, and Etheluitha. Elfreda was maried to a certaine noble mane emonge the Mercians, named Ethelredus, havinge a parte of Mercia to her dowrie. This woman shewed a moste notorius example of despisinge the venereus and fleshlie pleasures, for, beinge impregned bie her husbande, after the time of travayle and deliverie of her childe, rememberinge her great tormentes and payne, woulde never more comm in bedde with enie mann, alleging that it was the veriest follee in the worlde to esteeme and employe suche voluptuus venerie as wolde brings so muche sighenge and sorrowe. Aluredus beinge now striken in great years, and somwhat allso attynted with sickenes, made his will and testament, in the which he solemnelie assignes and made heyre apparent his sonne Edward; and, to the ende hee might cause manie menn to have him in remembrance, he franklie bestowed large giftes on his soldiers, familiers, severantes, schollers of Oxford, and as well to the byledinge as repayringe of churches. Afterwarde, beinge sore diseased, his finall daye drewe on, and at Winchester hee yealded uppe his spirite to allmightie Godde. His boddie was interred in the new abbay which hee fowneded. Hee reigned xxvij. yeares. In that abbay there was afterwards institutted a college of seculer priestes, and after that againe of monachs, as we will declare hereafter.
THE SIXTH BOOKE

OF POLIDOR VERGILL ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

Wee have indifferentlie declared in owre two former bookes bie what stirringle and endinge of warres the imperie of the Englishe nation bothe sprange in Brittaine, which at this daye is En glonde, and howe bie littell and littell it grewe (as one woulde saye) to the full ripe yeares of a manne; for even as a man at his birthe hathe onlie the meere life vegetative; then he growethe to greene yowthe; consequentlie hee enterethe the beautifull flower of man's state; finallie he commethe to horie age; even so likewise kingedommes beeginne; they encrease, they flourishe, and, finallie, they comm to theyre fatall fall and distruction. The firste age, that is to weete the infancie of their kingdom, beeganne under the reigne of Engistus, the cccl. yeare of our Salvation. From that time ensued the adolescentie, or yowthe thereof, under the jurisdiction of vij., sometimes viij. kinges (as beefore is sufficientlie declared), unto Egbertus, the xvij. westerne kinge, whoe, obteyning the kingdoms of Kente, Northe Humberlande, and Est Saxons, didde first nayme Brittayne Englonde, and the whole nation Englishe menn, as elswheare it is notified. This age had his enduring space, leysurelie gathering increase, abowt cccl. years, beinge then moste puissant, bothe in menne and in armes. From the dayse of Egbertus the mature and mannlie yeares beeganne, which endured more then clxxv. yeares, even unto Sainct Edwarde the
martire; at the which time approched sorowful owlde age, which, as it is accustomed in mann to bee accompanied with infinite diseases, soe in all humayne affayres if slewtheful idelnes bee disturbed and sollicited, it bringethe a thousande discommodites. In that season firste the Danes, then the Normans, possessed the Englishe imperie; yeat at the last this croked and decrepate age, contrarie to the expectation of all men, was agayne renewed into yowthe, for the Normane name, bie continuance, beinge tourned into the Englishe, as more plainelie hereafter shall bee mentioned, the people weare universallie callede Englishmenne. Now, as concerninge the expoytes committed bie the Englishe people, in these malie yeares, and owlde age of the riolme, wee will prosecute, Godd willinge, bothe in this booke and the neste.

Nexte unto Aluredus succeeded his sonne Edward, as xxij. in the order of kings, being crowned with the rioll diadem, according to the custom of his predecessors, of Athelredus archebissopp of Cantuarburie, the DCCCCL. yeare after the birthe of Christe. Wee made mention above, in the forthe booke of this woorcke, that Brithowaldus, the viij. busshopp from Augustine, in the rome of Theodorus, beinge deade, was the firste Englishe Archebusshop of Canturberie, after whome, in the space of cxx. yeares, unto Athelredus, there ensewed ix. archebussels; first, Tadwinus, who was resident iij. yeares; Notelius, v. yeare; Cuthbertus, beeefore busshopp of Hereford, xvij. yeare; Brethwinus, iij. yeare; Lambertus, the abbot of Saincte Augustines, xxvij.; Adelardus, xij.; Wilfredus, (who was asigned bie the Romaine busshopp,) xxvijij.; Theogildas, or Pleogildas, iij.; Chelnatus, or Celnatus, x.; after whome succeeded Athelredus, as xvij. from Augustinus, being then busshopp of Winchester, and of noe lesse auctoritee then vertewe. But wee most returne to owre purpose. Edward, at the verie beginninge of his governinge, thinckinge that all things showlde bee especiallie considered which weare for the avayle of the weale publique, didd furnishe everie place with garrisons, diligentlie visitinge all suche cities as weare moste commodius to his enemies, and
noysom to him. Hee gave vigilante attendance as well to the attemptes of his adversaries as his propre affayres; hee labored with infatigable industrie to prevent the guiles of barbarous people, that, accustominge his menne continuallie to martiall feates, partelie they might the easier persiste in their loyall dewtie, partelie leste they beinge voyde of all feare, livinge dayntelie and securelie, might bee sodainelie over runne of their enemies, and cheefelie that all occasion and opportunitie of warrs might bee withdrawne from the Danes, whoe at that time weare cheefe lordes of Northe Humberland and East Angles. Yeat above all these things hee thoughte expedient to prevente the Scottishe warrs, for as muche as kinge Constantine did, withowte ceasing or intermission, vexe and waste the Englishe borders; wherfore Edwarde, in all expedition, gave him battayle, wherin there was great bloodde shedd on bothe sides: but, forasmuche as the greater calamitee didd redownde to his Scottes, hee was nothinge unwillinge to dismisse the warriors, obteyninge bie entretacie peace of the Englishe people. After this Edwarde reduced to conformitee the wavering Wallshemenn, and retayned againe all Mercia, as shall bee shewed in processe, after the death of his sister Elfreda. Yet not bie all these meanses cowlde hee eschewe the fraude and deceite of his adversaries, or have the fruition of quietnes, for the Danes, whoe then laye swellinge in Northe Humberlande, and dispitulie malingned the happie encrease of the Englishe prosperiteit, wente abowte to sowe discordie betweene the two brothers, hopinge with other men's weapons to satisfie theyr hatred; wherefore they wente to Adelwoldus privelie, a younge manne of his owne nature, marveluslie desierus of rule. They stirred him uppe bie all wayse possible; thei towlde him that undowbtedlie this was the time, that if hee woulde he might enjoy the whole monarchie, bie the expulsion of his brother, sithe that hee at that presence was hated of all, as well his owne vassayles as neighbours, for as muche as, contrarie to all manns lawe, and Godd's lawe, hee didd owtragiuslie distende his owne dominion, and injuriuslie
enchroche on other men's. For the speedie perfowrance of soe
goodd a matter they promised voluntarillie their assistance, and
farther, that all perills and troubles that mighte arise theyre bie
showlde lie on their owne neckes. Bie thease traynes and allure-
mentes thei browghte this springehole into suche a Mahomite's
paradise that forthwithe, dotinge on his brother's kingedom, he
prepared unnaturallie an armie, and invaded the same with
straunge hostilitiee. But when as the kinge camm in poste to
withstande this injurie, then strayghte, as voyde of witte and
cowncell, and striken with feare, as one which hadde worght
rashelie, hee minded to flie unto the Danes in Northe Humb-
lande, that bie there helpe hee mighte bee assisted in this con-
flicte. Whereof when the kinge was donne to understande, hee
pursewed with suche swiftnes that this yowthefull impe was fayne
to forsake his pretended voyage, and, declininge to the sea, was
compelled to rove into the parties beyonde the sea, wheare remain-
inge skarcelie one whole yeare, he returned againe to the Northe
Humbrians to renewe his warrs. The Danes, whoe greatlie feared
kinge Edwarde, entertayned him jentellie, and made him capi-
taine of their battayles. Adelwoldus, being now in auctoritee,
burned with ire against his brother, and bie force of armes invaded
the bowndes of his kingdom, geevinge oportunitie to the Danes
to consume all things with weapon and fire. Then he bente his
power towards Mercia, and did prostitute all thinggs to spoyle
and wastinge, and finallie, costengethe yet another waye, he passed
the river Thames, and moste crewellie destroyd all the contrie unto
the towne named Basyngstoch. On the other side the kinge with an
armie meatethe his raging enemie, and sett on him whilst hee cam
on with a dissolute companie. On ether parte they maynteyned
the fight to the uttermost of their power, which was a great while
no lesse feerce then doubtfull, so that manie one bothe sides hadde
their balefull and deadlie woundes. Adelwoldus at the first,
joyninge coragiuslie skirmishinge emonge his enemies, was slayne;
notwithstandinge whose deathe the Danes nothinge ceased or inter-
mitted the battayle, as menn that hadd capitains of their owne, to whose valaunce they trustinge, committed the shadowe of the imperie to Adelwoldus, that the Englishe mann mighte rove himselfe throughe with his owne weapon. When a whiles they had thus sharpelie skirmished, the kinges soldiers, being putte to the worse, turned their backes; and the Danes, beinge weryd with their longe travaile, didd not onlie easlie leave the pursewe, but also, notwithstandinge they were superior for that presence, yet thinckinge beste awhiles to absteyne from battayle, thei requiered peace of the king; to whome kinge Edward, that he mighte seme the more terrible unto them, wolde in noe wise condiscende unto peace, but onlie graunted them trewe. In the meane season, throughe a great drowghte, there chaunced extreme skar-citee of corne, which was the onlie cause whie the truce was not immediatlie broken of the Danes; yet, as they whome nature hadd not forged to bee altogether quiet, they egged their confines to make commotion, continuallie conspiring and conferringe with them. This impendent daunger the kinge holdinge wisdome to foresee, made woonderful expedition into Northe Humberlande, and skourged them with so infinite damage that from thenceforthe they willinglie persevered in obeyaunce. Ther was an other war-like fior enkendelinge bie them which were cheefe menn emonge the Easte Angles, whose kinge was one Ericus, whoe, mortallie hatinge the Englishe name, indevored secretlie to suborne and ione other Danes in his societie, that, unitinge there power, they mighte at once cleane adnihilate the Englishe gooddes and puis-sance: but, for as mucche as he administred all thinges with hedlonge temeritee, his endevoure was not unknowne to kinge Edward, whoe, preventinge his male engine, invaded his bowndes and spoiled the contrie, exceedinge pituaslie. The Dane, which hadd his menne all readie harnised, and partelie inflamed with wrathe, partelie burning in the desier of revenginge, buckeled hastelie with his adversarie: they fowght at the first with great seercenes; but the fighte on Danishe side, rashlie beegonne,
hadd a miserable ende, so that Ericus himselfe was easelie vanquished, and putte to flighte, after the filthie foyle and overthowe of his soldiers. Yeat what for this odius and lamentable plague, what for that, governed with more extreemitee then hee was accustomed, the Easte Angles toke the paines to slea himme: nether yet was that deade so great a pleasure to them as they surmised, for in shorte time, theire force being not a littell apayred, they were driven to com under the yoke of kinge Edwarde: and this was the finall fall of the mightie kingdom of the Easte Angles.

Kinge Edwarde havinge conquered this kingdom, now called Norfolk and Suffolke, didd also bring all Mercia under his jurisdiction; for after the decease of Ethelredus, governor of the Mercians, without heires, his wife Elfreda didde noe lesse upp-rightlie then wiselie administer the regiment a few yeares; bie this meanses this prince soe enlarged the limites of his kingdom, that besides Scotlande hee hadde the imperie of the whole Ilonde. Albeeit as yet in Northe Humberlande the Danes hadde som dominion. Yet som write that hee, ejecting the Danes, possessed Northe Humberlande also; but as menn nothinge warie in their doings in other places, they as contrarie to them selves, sayenge that this kinges dowghter, named Edithe, not long after her father's deathe, maried with a certaine Dane called Sithericus, cheefe ruler of Northe Humberland, whoe, as it is moste evident, died in the reigne of Adelstanus; wherfore, while Sithericus ruled, and kinge Edward lived, it is not to bee thoughte that the Northe Humberians yealde fealtie and homage to himme, as shall bee plainelie declared in the life of Adelstanus. At the laste kinge Edwarde, havinge garded his riollme with tranquillitee, and greatelie studied the promulgation of lawes, which albeit they weare verie goodde, yet of his posteritie they weare easelie ether owte of use or abolisshed. He byleded a castell at Bedforde, in times past a walled towne, and now a famus village, standinge in a marveluslie well fensed grownde; therof at this daie is nether tracte nor token. Bie Edgina, a mayden of woonderus beawtie, hee hadd a soné
named Adelstanus, whoe was his successor. It shall not be labor loste (site sometimes wee delighte to satisifie the vulgares and common people, which is greatlie in loove with miracles,) if wee shall reherece a presagition and token, wherebie this Edgina conceaved hope tobring forthe a childe, which in tyme to comme showld reigne. She dreamed that there arose owte of her wombe a moone, which gave lighte to all Englonde with the brightnes thereof, which thinge when on a time she uttered to a certaine matrone, she not lightely regardinge suche a vision as mighte have prodigius and strange effecte, caused the virgin, descended but of base ligneage, to bee fostered in goodd manners; whome, when she was ripe for the companie of manne, it fortuned the kinge to espie, as he repayred on a time to a mansion of his, and being enraished with her bewtie lay bie her, and on her begatt Adelstanus, as erste we mencioned; beesides this, by his wife Elfreda, hee hadde afterwarde these children, Etheluardus and Edwinus, whoe died streyght after his decease, then Elfreda, Edgina, or Elgina, Edburge, Ethilda, Editha, and Elgida; of these Elfreda and Edburga, for there noble virginitie, weare made noonnes, Edgina or Elgina was maried to Carolus Simplex, kinge of Fraunce, and Edith to Sithricus king of Northumberland. Hee hadd also bie another wise named Edgina two sonnes, Edmundus and Eldredus, who reygned after Adelstanus. At this time the Christian saythe waxed verie cowld emonge the westerne menn, bie cause there was noe bussshoppe there to instructe the people; the defaulte was in the prince, whoe more intendinge warres then divine service, preestes weare hindered in their hollie functions; wherfor Ihon the x. busshop of Rome, being greatlie moved, didd correpte and chide king Edwarde in his letters, menacinge that hee wowlde denowne bothe him and his people enemies to relligion, onlesse he wowlde speedelie send for busshippes, which might procurethe trew discipline of our Lorde to bee preserved; which thinges when the king hadd well digested, endevoring to recompence his forpassed negligence, hee soe de-
bated the matter with Pleimundus archebussshop of Caunterbury, who succeeded Athelredus after the xvij. yeare of his residence, that hee immediatlie callinge a congregation didd consecrate manie busshopps for the better governinge of the dioceses. Afterward Pleimundus went to Rome to make his purgation, and appeased the bisshopp. This Edward was a prince of exceedinge commilie favor, verie decent in everie degree of his age; albeith the dignitee thereof in his later dayse was sore desfloured with the multitude of diseases, of the which he was finallie consumed the xxiiij. yeare of his reigne, and nccccxxv. of our Salvation, and lieth interred at Winchester.

Abowte the verie same time died Rollo or Robert duke of Normandie, for that was his Christian name, a manne noe dòwe of great valiance in martiall prowess, for no man living after him cowlde conquere in a lande of hostilitée a more goodlie kingdom for him and his posteritee, who beginninge with suche small principles, (as hereafter shalbe declared,) so encreased, that afterwarde it becamme æquall to the moste mightie and renowned kingdomes. Rollo lefte behinde himm a sonne named William, nether in wisdom nor in warlike affaires inferior to himselfe, and suche one as was of great authoritée emonge the Frenchemenn, wherof to make plaine and evident demonstration, wee must repete this matter more deepelie. Carolus Simplex kinge of Fraunce toke in marioage, as was saide, Edgina or Elgina, the dowghter of kinge Edwarde, bie whom he hadd a sonne named Ludovicus, who bie cause hee hadd confedered in amitee with Rollo hee was greatlie hated of his own nation, soe that a good companie of the nobles slipped from him, insomutche that consequentlie there beefell suche strife beetwene them, that the nobles, fearinghe the ruine of their commonwealthe, reconciled them to their prince, and joyninge together against Robert duke of Aquitaine, whoe maintayned wars againste Carolus, they destroyed him and all his armie; which thing Robert earle of Vermandois taking hevelie, as one verie desierus to revenge the quarell of his frinds, met with Carolus, Viromandius, as appeareth bie
retiering from his victorie, as it weare in the way of gratulation; and at there firste meatinge this subtile fote, mindinge the beter to close this fainte greetinge, with his gentil cowntenance, (wherein lurcketh all dissimulation,) with smilinge visage and continuall entreatie sollicited so the kinge, that he broughte him into a town of his named Perona, and there kaste him into prison; which thing being once knowne, Edgina the wife of Carolus, with her sonne Ludovicus, fled to here brother Adelstanus kinge of Englonde. In the meane season the Frenche menne, leaste theye shoulde wante a governour, they pronounced as kinge Rodolphe, the sonne of Richard duke of Burgundie, whose departinge oute of this mortal life, after the xij. yeare of his reigne, and Carolus also abowte the same time dienghe in prison, William duke of Norman-die didde cause the peeres of Fraunce to sende for Ludovicus the sonne of Carolus owte of Englonde, and to proclaime him kinge at his cominge; but scarcelie v. yeares weare passed, but that allmost all the cheef men of the reame didde mislike Ludovicus, whose, beinge thus destitute of his frindes, persuaded with Henrie, or his sonne Otho (as somm thincke,) to currie favor with the kinge of Germanie, which thing he broughte to passe, bie the onlie meanes and counsell of duke William; which thinges, when the nobles perceaved, of their owne accorde they desired the good will of their prince: thus the fame of this William becam notable emonge all men, for, as a man borne onlie to doe goodde, hee gave especiall endevoere to the preferring of his frindes, he succowred the miserable, hee redressed injuries; finallie, hee was to all men withowte respecte frindlie; wherbie it camm to passe that Herlowinus, a noble manne, beinge dejected bie Arnulphus prince of Flaunders, owt of the possession of his castell of Mo-nasteril, hee betoke hismelfe plaintife to duke William, as the commune revenger of injuries, whose heringe the whole discourse, soe treated that the castell was restored to the yownge manne, and preserved him from all wrongs; which turned himself to noe small displeasure, all betit nothing of his deserte, for
Arnulphus, being aggrieved at the duke, appoynted with him selfe to entrappe him bie som treason, whome baselie hee beeguiled under the pretexte of love and amitee; for in shorte time it camm to passe that Arnulphus, at Pinciniacum, hadd brought the duke to private talke, and at their departure, when he wolde have entered into his barcke, mindinge to passe the streame (for all this was donne in an Ilonde compassed abowte with the river of Seine), he was sodaynelie revoked bie the officers of Arnulphus, as whoe showlde say they hadde somewhat to tell that there trayterus prince hadd forgotten, and there, at his reversinge, hee was horriblie murthered. The Normans, whoe stode showtinge and crieing on the other bancke, bie reason of the depthe of the channell, cowlde not helpe their lorde; but afterwardes, nevertheless, thei gatte his corps, and at Roane they intumbed it with funerall pompe. This William hadd a son named Richard, beinge a verie childe; the tuition of whome, and of all Normandie, Rodolphe and Barnard did take on them, as the most famus and authorized emonge the Normains. But we will speake of them hereafter convenientlie. Now wee will returne thither from whence wee made digression.

Adelstanus the xxiiiij. from Cedician, and son of Edwarde bie his concubine, was saluted kinge of the people, and of Athelmus archebusshep of Canturburie, accordinge to the custome of his predecessors, crowned at a towne named Kingston uppon Thames, which even at this daye is a famus village. This Athelmus was xx. in the order of the archebussheps of Caunterburie, and successor to Pleimundus, the yere of our Lord ccxclxxvij. It was greatlie bruted and noysed in the beginninge of Adelstanus, that the Scottishe kinge Constantinus was allreadie in armes, assembliinge his people owt of all costes, and the Welchmen aliso readie to rebell, for beefore all thinges hee addressed him to withstande thesse evels hangenge over his hedde, and with noe small power he marched speedelie towards them bothe, and with like goodd fortune didde dawnnte and overcom them bothe. But
he thus used Constantinus after his overthowre: hee made him sweare unto these wordes; that in time to comme he shoulde acknowlege the fruiccion of his life and kingdom to bee bie his permission, and noe otherwise. The same trade was also taken with other kinges of Scotland succeedinge, as somme menn write, howbeit there late writers make muche alltercation in that pointe, which wee take noe parte of our dewtie, for as muche as an historie is a declaration of thingges that have benn donne, not a contention or disceptation abowte them, and therefore have wee brought to lighte those thingges which the moste chronicles of England doe testifie, to the end that, with owte the offence of enie nation, wee maye absolutelie finishe this imparfaict woorcke; this I thought good to say at the beginninge, leste enie mann shoulde require the office of a judge in an historiographer of this donne longe bee-fore. But to our matter againe.

In this season Sithricus, kinge of Northe Humberland, died, which ministered opportunitee to Adelstanus to conquer it, for Analaphus and Gothofredus, the sonnes of Sithricus, like yonge men over desierus of rule, beganne to conspire and communicate in treason againste the English prince; they groped the mindes of their borderers, there letters flew hether and thither, which being intercepted didd beewray their haynus entente, wherfore the kinge, being preevie to the councell of his enemies, didd immediatlie, with greate ire, invade Northe Humberlande; but the younge menn, as thei weare lighte in consultation, soe nothing stedfaste in their purpose, didde not looke for himme, but forthewith avoydinge, the one chaunse into Ireland, the other in Scotland, whome the Englishe prince pursewinge in vayne, seased of and reaceaved to his grace the teritorie of North Humberlande, being destitute of a guide. Thus Adelstanus, wiselie foreseeing the casualtie of things, was necessarilie driven to deprive his nephewes, bie his sister Edith, of there dominion.

While these affayres weare in contrivinge, Gothofredus hadde procured noe small succours in Scotlond, bie whose assistance of a
sodayne he beseged Deirham, bie all meanes allueringe the inhabi-
britants to rebell, whoe albeit of there owne minde desiered to re-
ceive their native prince, yet seing himme to bee of suche small
force, that well he cowld neither defende himselfe nor the cittey,
leaste there slipperie dealinge mighte turne them to displeasure,
they persevered still in loyaltie, albeit on other side they ware
striken with great feare. This facte made Adelstanus not a littell
offended with Constantinus, kinge of Scotts, in that hee hadde
succoured his enemie, yeat bie purginge himselfe hee camm
soone againe into favor. Analaphus, the other brother, mindinge
to revenge the shamefull losse of his imperie, with somme great
mischeefe, chaunged his attire, and camm into the Englishe tents
with a few confederats, to espie how he might oppresse his adver-
sarie unwares, and wrought his feate soe closelie that hee hadde
neare hande slaine the kinge; for in the nighte he ranne into the
kinges tabernacle, but soe hastie he was and boysterus in his
doings that he awaked him owte of his sleepe, whoe understand-
inge that he was assaulted and in danger, hee sodainelie cried oute
to armes, to armes, and woulde have drawne forthe his sworde,
and when he could not finde it, beinge amazed with feare (which
is wonte to distracte the wattes and counsell of menn), he pawed
a whiles, as dowbtfull what to doe, and thinckinge him selfe desti-
tute of manns helpe, beeganne alowde to expostulate the assist-
ance of Godde, and at that verie instant layde his hande againe on
his skaberd, and findinge his swoorde, hee assayled his enemies,
and slayenge som of them putt the rest to flighte. Somm menne
have lefte in memorie that Constantinus, the Scottishe kinge, was
there, and slaine in that tumulte; but as they have sayde that
nothinge credelie, soe have thei written verie untrewlie that
Analaphus was kinge of Irelonde, noe dowbte beinge deceaved in
that pointe, for that hee beeefore fledd thither, as aboove wee men-
tioned; and that sworde was longe reserved in the kinges armorie,
as a testimoniall of the divine benefit. Adelstanus after this in
all costes, havinge the better of his adversaries, obteynd a large
CAMD. SOC. 2 H
dominion. This was the mature and manlie age of the Imperie then especiallie flowring in menne, in valiaunce, and vertewe. For at this time ther flourished menn no lesse renowned for the sanctimonie of their life then famus in learninge, as Ferthestanus bishop of Winchester, after whome succeeded Bristanus, also Wilfemus or Wilselmus bishop of Wells, and Wulstanus archebussshopp of Yorcke, whome Adelstanus did singulerlie loove for his pietie and sincere livinge; for his sake greatlie enriching the archebussshopricke of Yorcke; but there were manie moe which excelled bothe in the warlike science and martiall prowesse, althowghe there names are unknown throwghe the negligence of writers. At that time died Athelmus, busshop of Canterburie, in whose roome succeeded Wilfemus busshopp of Wells, and in the steade of Wilfemus, whoe died the xth yeare of his residence, Odo was substitue, an exceedinge wise mann, and xxiij. in the ordre of busshopps. Laste of all, when as Adelstanus hadde gotten great imperie, he fullie disposed himselfe to the mayntenance of religio, the preservation of peace, and augmentinge the commoditee of all menne, for he edified to relligious howses of monckes Benedictines, the one at a village named Melton in the dioces of Saresburie, the other at Micelnie, a village in Somersettsheir, standinge in a fennie grownde, that the monckes shold not raunge abrode, at the least in the winter season, contrary to ther order; for in winter noe man can have accesse thereunto, excepte it be bie boate. He gave ample possessions to them bothe. He corrected divers owlde austerely and sharpe lawes, and made newe ordinances, verie profitable for the common welthe, which was the laste of his noble deades; for immediatlie after hee died withoute issewe, the xvi. yeare of his reygne. His brother Edmundus, as xxv. in the order of kinges, was his successor, reigning onlie vi., whose prayses (which otherwise wolde have extolled him unto the heavens) weare obscuereid bie the shortenes of his life; but whatsoever expectation and opinion hee hadd raysed emonge the people, his sonne Edgarus didd throughelie accomplishe. Som writers affirme that Edmun-
dus overcamme the Scotts and North the Humbrians, which we have beefore ascribed to Aedelstanus, folowinge suche authors as are of goodd estimation; in verie deede he made lawse verie commodius to the riollme, but time didd adnihilate them all. Of his death there are divers assertions; som thincke that on a time, while he succored a seruaunte of his who was assayled of his enemies, hee was sodaynlie thrust throwghe the boddie; others affirme that hee espienge a notorius theefe, whome of longe season hee detested, sodainlie sette on him and threwe himme on the grounde, geevinge him manie sore strokes; who, feelinge himselfe aggrieved, not remembringe the perill that wowlde ensewe, but desierus to eskape the presente harmes, didd peerce his side with a knife, for the which he was presentlie torne in peeces. Hee hadde beegotten bie his wife Elgida Edwinus and Edgarus, whose reyned after Eldredus. This Eldredus succeed his brother Edmundus, as xxvi. from Cerdicius, who, in the yeare of our Lord dcccxlvi. was consecrate of Odo archebusshop of Canterburie, at Kingston, whose forthewith hadd a singuler regard of all estates. He was cheeeflie a favorer of innocentie, and contrariewise a sharpe adversarie to all hurteful persons; in the knowledge of the politique feats of warr he was accounted most cooニング of all men, soe that withoute weapons hee kepte the Scottes in obeysaunce, whome his brother Adelstanus hadde beefore receaved into allegi-aunce. This place requiereth us somwhat to speake of the estate of the Scottishe affayres.

Next unto Constantine (who, as we sayde, sware feawltie unto Adelstanus,) succeeded Malcolmus, after whome ensewed theses kinges: Indulphus, Duffus, Culenus, Chennethus the thirde, and Constantinus Calvus, who obteyned the crowne bie violence; wherbie the people tooke occasion of sedition, which cowlde hardlie afterwarde bee extinguished. Constantine was slaine in this tumulte, and one Grimus succeeded, a partetaker of the same faction. After him folowed Malcolmus the seconde, who over-threw him in playne fighhte. Then ensewed Duncanus and Mac-
cabeus, a manne notorius for his wiccadnes and bowldnes, who bie plaine force entred on the kingdom; but, after this littel excourse, I will agayne drawe backe to mie purpose.

When Eldredus hadd appeased all broyles in everie place, he bente himselfe wholie to devotion, and to thende hee mighte bothe please Godd, and also binde to him by benefitte one Ethelwoldus, a mooncke Benedictine, at the instance of his mother Edgina, hee restored the awnicient abbay of Abyndon, beinge longe since erected bie kinge Ina, and now spoyled and defaced. Thus perseveringe a whiles in goodd deades, he dyed, after he had reygned ix. yeares. Menn didd speake mucho shame of him for banishinge Wulstane archbusshop of Yorcke, notwithstandinge that within a yeare after hee was called againe into his contrie, and departed this mortall life beefore two yeares weare fullie complete and ended; after whome succeeded Oscitellus, Adelwaldus, and Oswaldus, an hollie father, and xix. in the ordre of those archbussshops, of whom we will make more full rehearsall in an other place. After the decease of Eldredus ensewed Edwinus, the other sonn of Edmundus, being the elder, as xxvij. in the ordre of the kingses, in the □□□□□□ of our Salvation; and was with sollemme service crowned at Kyngston, bye the bishopp Odo, accordinge to the institucion of his awnceters, of whose life, thoughge it weare verie shorte, beefore we make enie tretise, it seemeth the expedient to retire to Richard Duke of Normandie, that wee maye allsoe treate of them in theyr ordre.

This Richard being a child and pupill (as before wee mentioned) in the tuition of Rodulphe and Barnarde, to cheefe menn emonge the Normans, Ludovicus the Frenche kinge burned in desier, under the pretence and simulation of frindship, to defrawde the yonge impe of the Dukedome; for, hearing that William was slaine, he thought bie and bie uppon somm meanes to bringe his purpose to passe, and drewe unto Roane, wheare hee pretended to revenge the death of his frinde, when indeade his headd was encombred with other matters. The tutors or gardens of the childe
mervayled muche at the pietie and jentilnes of the kinge, in consideracion whearof they entertayne d him lovinglie. When the kinge perceavid his crafte and subtiltee to bee unspied of the Normans, he was then in full hope to have his purpose, and immediallie required to have the yonge Richard to bee fostered in his pallace; but forasmuche as in conclusion hee was fayne to use menaces and thretens in the case, (as it is harde by one meanes or other not to bewraye falshood,) hee beegan sumwhat to fawle in suspicion with the people, who murmured that hee camm not so muche to assiste the yonge prince as to bringe Normandie under his subjection, as indeade his meaninge was. Hereof arose an excceedinge uprore emonge them, and they prepared treason for the kinge, for indeade they weare all readie preste in armes to defende theyr liberties, if enie mann shoulde goe abowte to abridge them theirof. The kinge, supposinge it necessarie to prevente this daunger, for the quietinge of this generall evil and displeasure, commawnded the childe to bee broughght fourthe; and when the multitude was allmost now enraged, hee sayde to them, 'Goodd people, heere is youre lorde and duke, whose charge and governance I take on mee, in no other respect but that hee may bee fostered in good manners.' With this fayre spechee hee perverted their former opinion, minedinge nevertheless to goe forward in his owld atteempte, and consequentlie treted with everie lorde in loving language that it mighte bee lawfull to leade yonge Richard with him into Fraunce; still keeping in his herte full intente to bee avenged of suche injuries as hee had receaved of the Normans, awayting his time for the purpose; which thinge leaste it shoulde comm to lyght, hee broughght upp the childe verie well and princelie. Arnulphus earl of Flawnders was not a littell dismayde with thease doengs, who not longe before hadd slayne bie treason the father of Richarde, thinckinge now that in that deade hee hadd deceived him selfe; wherfore with all celeritee hee toke his voyage towards the Frenche kinge, to make his purgation; and with a large somm of monnie hee made, or at the leastwise dissembled, satisfaction of his
crime unto him who was as false a foxe as himselfe. After this, the kinge having his wicked devices in his hedd, somtimes privelie, somtimes in open audience, spake verie evel and opprobriuslie of yonge Richard, that bie suche continewall revylinge hee might lavishe owte his conceived mallice, and cause him therbie as one of nowghtie nature to be odius to all the Normans; that if afterwarde it shoulde chawnce him to bee slaine bie eni fortune they might take the matter the more easelye: and in this politike tawntinghe hee wente so farre that hee openlie cayled him bastard, threatening to dispossesse him of all his honors and goodds. Thus, in conclusion, the matter semed to drawe to extremeite and rigoure, in so muche that Osmundus the instructor of Richarde, detesting the intollerable creweltie of the kinge, whearas before hee hadd vertuuslie trayned him uppe, hee now caused him like a poppet to be dressed in sege and reedes, and secretlie to bee conveyed to Lauadnum, and consequentlie declared the whole circumstance to Barnard earle of Sylvanectum, who loved the yonge jentilman entierlie; whearupon hee adjoynd to him Hughe the greate earle of Parris, and forthwith assemblinghe divers legions, hee browght Richard unto Sylvanectum. Ludovicus in the meane space, hearinge that the yonge duke was stowllen away, commannded Hughe to make restitution. He signified bie his letters that it was not in his power so to doe. The kinge breeflie willed him to apeare, and, to bee shorte, at there meatinge and conference promised to geeeve him sondrie townes in Normandie to take parte with him. Hughe was soone invegeled with fayre promises, and held with the kinge, and joyninge bothe their force together, they toke the waye to Normandie. Barnard earle of Sylvanectum thought it more avayable to deale with them politikelie then rigoruslie, and thereupon treated with Barnard the Dane, presidente of Normandie, to sende legates unto kinge Lowis, who showld say in the beehowse of all the contrie that Normandie, the people, their boddies and goodds, weare all at his pleasure, and therefore thei beseeched him to com unto his owne menn withowte weapons, sithe it was their minde to bee pliante and
obeyesante. This greatlie delighted the king, being more then hee
looked for at their hands, so that immediatlie hee wente unto Roane,
wheare, bringinge all things to passe as hee wisshed, (or at the leaste
wise as hee thought in him selfe,) hee departed to Laudunum.
Barnard the Dane, to thende hee might keepe the Normans in their fayth towards Richard, bie his letters hee signified
to Haraldus the vth. kinge of Denmarcke, (who a littell befoere
was driven owt of his contrie bie his soonn Sweno, and camm
into Normandie, and as then sojorned abowte the borders of the
Constantiens,) that now was comm the time when the kinges
garrison mighte safelie bee beaten away, and therefore hee re-
quired him, ether by and bie to assiste him, or to sende thither
his sowldiers, for bie that meanes hee sayde it would comm to
passe that hee showlde fawle in communication with the Frenshe
kinge; neither did this expectation deceave him, for when as
Haraldus was comm, Ludovicus, being certified of his sodaine
comminge, wente to mete with him; they met abowte the bancke
of the river Sequana, wheare, whiles the two kinges commoned
towchinge the murtheringe of William, and that everie man helde
their handes, it chaunced a certayne Dane to espie Herlowinus,
and sodainelie to thruste him throwghe, for that William was
slayne for his sake, whearof arose a cruell skirmishe, wherin the
Frenchemen weare ether killed or putt to fighte. Ludovicus was
taken prisoner, howbeit in the end the Normans restored him to
the Frenchemen, taking his sonne Lotharius in pledge. Now was
Richard of sufficiencie to beare rule, and forthwith proclaimed
duke. I muste not lette passe to shewe that certaine historiens
have fallalie affirmed that this Danishe prince who succored the
Normans was called Aygholdus or Ligrotus, when indeed there
never reyned enie kinge in Denmarcke of that name, as well ap-
peareth bie the historie of Saxo, who sheweth evidentlie that
Haraldus the vth. as I sayde, was then expelled owte of his riolme
bie his sonne Sweno (as allso the selfe same authors doe grawnte),
notwithstandinge that Saxo makethe no relation of this conflicte
with the Frenchmen. The king of France very desirous to be avenged was not after a while quiet; but, being bolstered up by Otho king of Germanie, he, tried manie things in vain, and lost much labor, for when as they bothe joynctlie wente into Roane and did muche harme to the citie, nevertheless they weare fayne to geeve over in the ende, not withouthe the destruction of their men and their own infamie. In this yeare, beinge the dcccvi. of Christes nativitee, died the Frenche king, after whome succeeded his soonne Lotharius, who be the procurement of Theobaldus earle of Chartres beegann to professe mervaylus hostilitee towards duke Richard, bothe to mayntaine the owld mallice of his father, and also for that the duke waxed so puis-saunte that hee beecamme dreadefull to all the contries adjoyninge; wherefor firste of all hee assayed him tie traines of treason, which for that they framed not accordinge to his minde hee fell to open warre, whearin they both turmoyled with variable fortune; in fine they agreede of peace, at the instance of divers noble jentilmen. This Richard encreased bothe in the renowne of martiall valiance and allso vertuus qualities, for, employenge himselfe to sett forth Godds honor, hee bylded manie goodlie cherches, garnishinge them with sondrie giftes. Hee hadd but two onlie children that I knowe, Richard, and Emma who maried Etheldredus. Hee lefte his mortall boddie in the yeare of our Lorde dccccvii. After him succeeded his soonn Richard, of whome elsewheare I make reherals as opportunitee shall serve. But now lett us com backe unto Edwines.

It lothethem mee to write enie thing of this kinge, bothe for the shortnes of his regigne and allso for the filthines of his life, but that the dewe ordre driveth mee therto, for the verie daye whearin hee was denounced kinge hee defyled his owne coosin, the wife of a certaine noble mann, not onlie againste her will, but allmoste openlie like a brute beast, insomuche that the rumor of the horrible crime ranne throwgheowte all the riolme. Wherfore, when as Dunstanus, who was lateleie made abbot of Glastonburie, reprehended
in fatherlie talke, admonishinge him heareafter to withhowlde himselfe from suche abominable vice, hee was so farre from abyding his hollie admonitions, that heaping one evel deade on an other, hee banished this hollie father; which turned him to mutche displeasure, for the Northumbrians and Mercians cleane forsooke him, and proclaimed king his brother Edgarus, in wonderful showtes wishinge him all felicites. This was such a corsie to the herte of Edwinus, that shortlie after hee died in the iiiij. yeare of his reygne. Thus obtayned Edgarus the kingdom, beinge a moste valiunt person bothe in boddie and minde, and was crowned at Bathe, or as somm think at Kingston, bie Odo the archebisshop, in the yeares of our Lord dcccclxix. In the beginninge of his government hee contentned all worldlie thinges in comparison of peace, knowing it to bee a thinge most delectable, which when hee had gotten, lest hee showlde bee molested bie foresyne nations, hee prepared a great navie, and placed it in three sondrie coastes, to keepe of suche strawngers as continuallie annoyed the contrie. Hee alson kepeth the Scottes and Wallshemen in obeysawnce. I finde in verie oulde monumentes, that the Wallshe people, who ever unwillinglie obeyed the Englishemen, didd ordayne them a prince of their owne nation, and that in the time of kinge Edgarus they hadd a lorde named Ludovallus, whoe payed tribute to the kinge of England, which their ordre as well of princes as also of paymente continuousd certayne yeares after: howbeit, it is not to bee seen at what time they gotte this benefite of the Englishe kinges, nether is it specified that ever I could learne of enie grave author. Edgarus demawnded of Ludovallus for his yearelie rentes xxx. wolves, to thentent that that kinde of hurtfull bestes abowndinge in that parte of the Ilond, and verie mischevus to the greate flockes of sheepe, might utterlie bee destroyd; if it fortuned him to wante in his prescribed nombre of woolves, then in the steede of them hee showlde pay I knowe not well what sommes of monnie. Thus the wise kinge thought beste to kepe his adversaries under, and to show himselfe in all times and places a mann borne into
this worlde to do goodd; whearfore, settinge all delay aparte, hee called Dunstanus owte of banishemente, and cawsed him to bee consecrate busshop of Worcestre; and for as muche as there was great skarcitee of goodd governers, hee annexed thereunto the bishoppricke of London, which the sage prelate toke on him more for the commoditee of the peeple then his owne peculier gayne, for in those dayse the bishopps hadd no more riches or welthe then other menn, but more learninge, sinceritee, and wisdom.

The queene Elfreda in the meane time departed this transitorie life, bie whome the kinge hadde a soonne named Edwarde, whose deathe cawsed the kinge to commit a moste detestable crime, for at that presence it was commonlie noysed that Horgerius duke of Cornwall hadd a dowghter called Alfreda, of most excellente bewtie, whome the kinge thinckinge to marrie, in all haste assigned his familier frinde Ethelwoldus to take veewe of the virgin, and in his name to require her in mariaghe of the Duke if it were so that she was as fayre as she was reported. Ethelwoldus departed into Cornewall, and assone as hee caste his eye on the mayden, hee was neare madde in loove, insomuche that, forgettinge the kinges commandement, hee desiered her for himselfe, and obteined; which doonne, he retorned to his prince and sayde that she was of no suche bewtie as was reported, or as beeseemed his maiestie; whearbie perceavinge the king’s minde to bee somwhat alienated from loove, hee began bie littel and littel to entreathe him to grawnte him his good will that hee might marie with her himselfe, which thing the king consented the more easlie unto, for that hee uppon his worde he seemed to contemne her. Thus Ethelwoldus obteyned the mariaghe of Alfreda, which in processe must néeedes breede his destruction, for the fame of her comlines daylie more and more encreased, beinge now more frequente in the ies of all men, in so muche that the kinge, beinge exceedinge desierus to have a syghte of her, purposlie wente on huntinge to a certayne manneir of Ethelwoldus, who assone as hee hadd once espied Alfreda, it is wonderus to bee towlde how extreemelie he burned
in loove, in that hee bothe imagened how to slea her howsband, and to have her himselfe. The temptinge woman enkended the brands of loove, whearin the kinge boorne, that hee attempted this horrible facte; for when her husband herde of the kinges comminge, hee is reported to have uttered the whole matter to his wife, praying her, for the savegard of them bothe, to shewe her-selfe more dissolute and uncomlie then shee was accustomed to this yonge amoros knighte; but the woman forgettinge her howsbondes loove, contemninge his children, persisting still like herselfe, that is to say, light, covetous, and prowde, decked and picked herselfe in the hartiest manner, and like a pecocke, meetinge with the kinge, like a beaste undoed the bandes of chastitee. This deed merveylouslie dishonested the kinge emonge all estates, for the which hee was greatlie reproved of Dunstanus, and allbeit hee was ashamed and penitent for his mis-deade, yeat cowlde hee not forgett his loove; but as for Alfreda, she not onlie not repented her done, but was exceedingelie wroth with Dunstanus for his well advising the kinge. Edgarus hadd bie Alfreda two sonnes, Edmunde, who lived but a fewe dayes, and Ethelredus, who when hee was christened polluted the fownte with the excrementes and ordure of his boddie, wheare uppon Dunstanus is reported to have sayde, that it woulde comm to passe that hee in time shoulde procure the greate hurte and dishonor of his contrie. Edgarus besides this looved a certayne noonne named Wilfreda, or rather, as somm suppose, she hadd taken no vowe, but was kepte emonge noonnes for feare of defloweringe; of her hee ingendered a dowghter called Editha, who for her hollie livinge (as it is committed to memorie) was afterward canonized. These weare the vices of Edgarus in his blinde yowthe, which in time hee cleane overshadowed with the vertewse bothe of his boddie and minde, for in rydinge and armes hee was verie experete, in noble corage second to no mann, in labor and travailes aboove measure; his owne subjectes hee allwayse kept in their dewe homage; foreyners and strawngers, who weare woonte to annoye the
Ilond with incursions, hee so dawnte in the beginninge of his kingdom, that never after thei durste comm owte of the bowndes of their owne dunghill. Hee was a sharpe sercher and punisher of fawlties, yeat withowte ire and creweltie, for at small matters hee was often contented to wincke, that hee might rather shoule himselfe a profitable then an ambitius prince. Beesides thease vertewse hee exceedingle embracce godlines, esteeminge nothinge in respecte of religion, enhauncinge the wise, learned, and hollie men, makinge them of his senat and cowncell, sufferinge no other to bee reulers over the people. Whearefore next unto Dunstanus he favored one Ethewoldus, a manne of singular witte and learninge, whome firste hee made abbot of Abyngdon, then bishope of Winchester. Bie his benefite also was Oswalde the moonke promoted to the bishopricke of Worciter, and, consequentlie, to the archebishopricke of Yorcke, after whome Dunstanus was the next bishop of Worcestre.

This prince attributed so much to the learninge and hollie lyfe of these iiij bishopps, wherein they seemed to excell (as moonckes are not to learne howe to shouwe a fayre glosse in that matter), that beinge entised and mooved with their prayers and intercession, yea somwhat angrie that the cheefe prelates showld still keepe their wives, contrarie to the decrees of hollie fathers, hee earnestlie treated with Pope Jhon the xiii. that uppon goodd consideracions which the moonckes hadd fownde owte for their proffet, hee wowlde vowchsafe to graunete bie his apostolike authoritee, that they mighte expell all preestes called seculer chanons owte of the colliges of Winchester and Worcestre, and to bringe in their moonckes, which in fine hee obteyned; moreover, bie the instigation of Ethelwoldus and Dunstanus, in the news college or abbay of Winchester, latelie fownded by Alured, and in that allso which was at Schireburne, a village in Saresburie diocese, the preestes weare kaste fourthe and monckes there placed; and the one of them was intituled the abbay of Hide, the other of Schireburne, for even there consisted the cheefe See of the Weste
Saxon bishops, of which diocese Sainte Aldelmus was one of the first governors.

Dueringe this season moonckes engroched on manie other places, and beegann to houre d upp riches unmeasurabl in all parties, which turned their successors to mucho damage; for whiles thei onlie employed the Divine service and avo yded the en- tercourse of menn, embracing solitarie dwellinges, wherof they hadd the first name of monasticall life, thei seemed ful wel to perfouwrme their profession, but contrarie when they haunted companie, de- spised the sole livinge, and thirsted after riches, it is incredib how mucho they did degenerate from their awnciters, consider- inge that, mawgre their hedd, they weare fayne to care for worldle matters, which no dowe encomberethe the greater parte of a mannes yeares. What that the selfe same covetise, as a generall and infectuus pestelence, didd so enter into the hertes of all other priestes, that a greate nomber turned from their ownde devotion unto tyrannie, not knowing how to avoyde that which is forbidden bie the prophet, sayenge, Yf affluence of riches chawnce unto the, sette not thine herte thereon. Their predecessors honored the ordre of priesthood with the holines of their life, and sealed it with their bloodde; they disworsheped the samewith their riot and licentius livinge; the other receaved promotion slacklie and with shamefacednes, and bestowed dignitie onlie on goodd persons; these sewed for them impudentlie and used them as prowdelie; the others exercised liberalitee and shewed innocentie; these weare assoted in avarice and used nowghtines; the others weare satisfied with litel and lived temperatelie; but these, having too mucho welthe, cowld not live accordinge to their owne rightes, while they weare constreyned to geee hospita- talitee to others, which humanitie no dowte (for so is commonlie termed) is so farre indeade from the nature of humanitie, that it commeth nearer unto follie and slaverie, sithe therin they are often constreyned to offende: for what manne is there whose senses are not stirred uppe, after that he hath filled himselfe
with divers meates and drinck, as of necessitee those priestes are
enforced to doe, while bie mannes lawe they are driven to keepe
plentifull howses, and to geeve deyntie interteinment to all com-
mers; but I will nowe retorne to mie purpose.

Now died Odo, archebisshop of Canterburie, after hee hadde
been resident xix yeares, or (as som suppose) but xiiij. In whose
see succeeded Dunstanus, as xxij. from Augustinus. This Odo,
with Oswaldus, archbissop of Yorck, did solemnlie crowne kinge
Edgare, which thinge, throughghe the negligence of writers, is attri-
buted unto Dunstanus, who, as beefore wee specified, was in
banishment at his coronation, and shortlie after released. Kinge
Edgarus, having now tranquillitee throughghe owte his riolme, and
being himselfe wholie bente unto godlie woorckes, ether restored
or newlie bylded manie abbayes, or otherwise bestowed large
giftes on them; emong all others, hee especiallie fownded a re-
ligius howse of noonnes Benedictines in the village of Wilton,
neare to the citty of Saresburie, whereof his dowghter Editha was
abbesse certaine years, untill it pleased Godd to dissever her soule
and boddie.

This Saresburie liethe southward on level grownd, having
divers pleasawnte brookes within it, and hath running bie it the
river Nadder, which being encreased with the river Wyle and
Havine, which glawnceth bie the village Wersminster, it floweth
southward into the ocean. Butt to bee short, this Edgarus, to
thende hee mighte traine his people to vertewus life, hee made
verie profitable lawes, which time turned into nowghte; and finallie,
in the xxxvij. of his age, and xvi. yeare of his reygne, hee departed
owte of this worlde. After whome succeeded Edward the second,
a sonne worthie of so noble a father, and xxxi. in the orde of the
kinges. In this yeare, being the DCCCCLXXXV. of our Salvation,
Dunstanus, archebisshop of Canterburie, called a congregation of
the spiritualitee for the reformacion of religion, and the betteringe
thereof. Deweringe these affayres certayne yonckers, who weare
in dispaire of good loocke while all things weare so quiet, and
hoped for a fayre day if somm commotion weare made, beeganne to stirre coles, being thereto provoked bie suche priestes as weare latelie dispossessed bie moonckes, and thought one day to chal- lenge there owlde righte. The matter was brought befoere cer- tayne judges, who, in open concurse debatinge the case, and the more parte agreing that the preestes owghte to bee restored to their former estate, a voyce was sodainlie heard, saienge, 'They are not well in their wittes that beare so muche with priestes;' as who should say, the lawe didd beare more with the moonckes in de- featinge of other men then with priestes in layeng clayme to their owne. Nevertheless, forasmuche as an ymage of Christe stand- ing beefoere them seemed to have spoken those woordes, it was taken as a most certaine oracle; the poore prelates loste their sewte, and all the broyle was appeased. Thus the moonckes bie divine helpe, or rather humaine subtiltee, withheld still thease gotten gooddes, for eeven at those dayse there weare divers who rather surmised it to bee the oracle of Phebus then Godd, that is to saye, rather craftelie cowntrefayted bie menn then uttered of the Lorde. Edward was proclaymed kinge, full sore againste the will of his steppe mother, Alfreda; and in his regall function hee shewed him selfe a devowte and moderate yonge prince, whearbie hee beecam beloved of all sortes, as one that directlie folowed the steppes of his father; which thinge muche agreede the herte of Alfreda, who hoped to have borne the sway herselfe, and to have conveyed the governement to her sonne Etheldredus, after the decease of Edward; but, forasmuche as now shee dispayred in the case, like a right stepmother, she ymage the sla her sonne- in-lawe; and, to thende it mighte the more speedelie bee broughte to passe, shee invented an occasion of her purpose. It fortuned the kinge on a time to goe on huntinge unto the New Forreste, wheare, followinge earnestlie the deare and dogges, hee loste his companie, and therupon drewe towards the howse of Alfreda, being harde bie, ether to drinke or to visite his halfe brother Etheldredus. In that place at this day standithe the castell
called Corphe. When this wicked wooman see him comminge, she
called one of her servants aside, and bidde him awayte his time
and to slea him unwares. And bie cause the goodd prince showld
misdowhte nothinge, shee mett with him and gave him drincke,
(as hee desiered,) with all reverence and curtesie; and as hee satte
on his horsse with the cupp at his mowth the villayne thruste
him throwge the boddie. The kinge fealing himselfe wounded,
turned his horsse and galloped towards his menn; but the verie
torment of his wondre caused him to fawle downe starcke deade.
The develishe woman, leaste the crewell facte showlde bee open,
cawsed the corpes of this innocent impe to bee brought in and to
bee buried, wheare in shorte space his memoriall waxed famus, for
the seyenge is that bie the providence of Godd it shauowed a
blind woman to comm thither, and in great watchinge and prayer
to have beeseched the hollie martir, that bie his meanes she
mighte bee restorwe to her sight, which incontinentlie she re-
ceived. Divers miracles weare there shewed, (as antiquitees spe-
cificith,) for the which Edward seemed not unworthie to bee
accounted a sancte. His boddie was afterward translated from
that vile place unto Glastenburie Abbaye, and theare honorablie
entered. Alfreda in the meane space beewayled her misdeade,
afflictingge her frayle fleshe with stripes and fastinge, bestowinge all
her goodes ether on poore people or religiouse howses, for shee is
thought to have fownded two noonries, one at Amisburie, a village
in the diocesse of Sarisburie, another at Wherwel, in Wincheste
diocesse, whearin she pased her life. Kinge Edward reyned iiij.
yeares, and thereunto somm writers have annexed vj. monethes
After the death of this prince the rype yeares, and, as one woulde
say, manne's age of the kingdom decayed, for even as hee himselfe in
the flowre of his yowthe, his sences being freshe and lustie, hadd
a sodaine fawle, even so all the strengthe of the monarchie bee-
ganne to apaire, so that in the time of Etheldredus the owlde age
and extreeme infirmitie thereof ensewed, as wee shull sygnifie in
our next booke.
THE SEVENTH BOOKE
OF POLIDOR VERGILL ON THE ENGLISHE HISTORIE.

Etheldredus was the next enoynted king after the decease of this Edwarde, and xxxtie in nombre from Cerdicius; bie whose slogsishnes and follie the wele publique declined into soche disorder that justlie yt might be thought that the crooked and olde age of the kingdom beganne, for these three afflictions forthewythe en-sewed, famine, pestilence, and battell, which evells weare signified and tolde before bie the godlie archebisshoppe Dunstanus, insomuche that he impungned ernestlie and resisted to consecrate Etheldredus, in that he aspiere to the emperie throughe the murthering of his brother; yeat beinge driven therunto bie compulsion, as an infallible deviner, hee pronownced and sayd yt wolde shortlie comme to passe that the Englishe people, besides the losse of there liberties, sholde generallie sustaine sharpe punishmentes. Etheldredus hadde no knowledge in martiall affayrs, as a man alltogether hartlesse, and enveleyd with the delicius poysone of ease and riotinge, which thinges made him have evell reporte of his owne nation, nothinge feared of his borderers, and finallie despised of the barbarus people and forринers; wherfore certayn pirates of Denmarke, trustinge muche in there owne hautie couraghe, in great tumultes entred the Ilond, not withoute greate slaughter, rawnginge everie wheare; and wheras the sea costes weare not fortified with anie garrison, theye did first of all toorne them to there use and

CAMD. SOC. 2 K
praye. The Danes being then encoraged bie this successe, ranne into all corners, spoylinge and distroyinge all things; with whome the kinge not daringe to encounter, didde of force geve unto them a great somme of golde, to the end theye wolde imediatlie depart into there countrie; which condition of peace dyd greatlie deceyve him, for he did not so much therebie dispacthe his contrie of this present mischief, as he did bringe upon it a greater; for the Danes, beinge the more entised with the swete savor of the golde, in shorte tyme breakinge there truse, didd agayne sett upon the Ilonde, and that nether cowardlie nor rashlie, but administernge all things with an huge armie and a well furnished navie. This fresh brute of newe warres astonied and appalled the kinge, who hoped that his enemies would not have enie more enterprisede enie thinge after the recepte of this gifte, and therfore was nothinge readie to doe battayle. Nevertheless, as sone as he colde, he prepared in good order his shippes, and ordayned as chefe ruler one Elfricus, a manne no lesse stronge in bodie then of valiant corage, yeat, as yt fell owte, nothinge faythfull or trustie. But I knowe not bie what reason it camme to passe, for when as the Danes aproched, hee, cownterfitinge great expedition to fighthe, slipped awaye unto his adversaries; which thinges so dismayed the hartes of the counterparte, because yt happened contrarie to the expectation of them all, that almooste there was never a stroke striken; but in a small season somme shippes skowred awaye, some were taken, and the gretest parte overwhelmed in the midst of the fludde. The Danes being consequentlie broughte to the Ile with a prosperus wynde, betooke them selves to all kinde of botie. Howe be it, soche of them as entred the teritorie of Northe Humberlande, whilste over muche they endevorede the spoyle of the savage people, they were ether slayne or put to flight. Then soche as marched towards London to assault yt, notwithstandinge they hadde on all sydes beeseged the same, yeat weare they fayne to geve over ther attempt, for that there oppugnation nothinge prevaylede, where
the citizens cleved together lickle burrs; yeat, notwithstanding all these discommodities, they plaged, vexed, and opressed the Englishemen, and finallie gatheringe together in dew warlike order, not like pelserers, echo where they assaulted them; whome when Etheldredus, as a mann of muche lesse puissance, colde in no wyse resist, being all together daunted, he sent letters as concerninge treatie of pease, which was concluded on this condition, that Inglande sholde paye tribute to the Danes, which albeit yt weare ignominius and shamfull, yeat accordinge to the necessitie of tyme yt was marvelos convenient. Elfricus after this, who was made admirall of the kinges navie, beinge destitute of all hope emonge his enemies, retownrd agayne to Etheldredus, trusting to obteyne pardon of his premised offence, to whome the kinge francklie graunted life, but yeat for his offence hee caused his ieyes to bee pulled owte. This peace was scarselie on all partes so soone confirmed as the kinge beganne to abuse the same, for while he ledde his life in this tranquillitee hee bec- cam more noysom and crewell to his owne liege people, for daylie ether hee beereved the richer sorte of their gooddes, ether hee slanderuslie dishonested them, or for verie trifelinge defaultes hee ammerced them with bannisshemente; more over promoters and abbettowrs hadd libertie to deceave whome they lusted, to whose leasinges and accusations his eares weare soe readie and open that no manne allmoste cowilde warrante himselfe as voyde fromme tresspasse. With these pillages and extorcions the mindes of his subjectes weare soe wounded that generallie they shamefullie invveyed againste him. When the Danes hadd an inkelinge hereof, they begaanne agayne to kaste with themselves the invasion of the riolme, supposinge the commonalicte to bee sufficienctlie provoked to rebellion throughe the vices of their prince, and soe mutche the more prone to yealde themselves to aliens. Wherfore their kinge Sweno the Firste immediatlie composed himselfe to warre with Etheldredus, assemblinge bie littell and littell a convenable armie: but beefore wee make enie farther declaration hereof, it is requisite
that heare we make mention of Richard the Seconde duke of Normandie, as wee promised in our former booke, to the ende wee may observe the dewe ordre of those dukes.

This Richard was a manne of verie temperate livinge, of greate experience in warfare, and in all respectes well worthie the princelie hereditee of his father, which hee soberlie governed; for hee made open decree emonge his soldiers, that whyles hee was busied in warlike affayres that none of themme shoulde bee soe hardie as to annoye his frindes, or once to intermedle with the hollie and sacred iewells, or to make prophane thinges that weare divine, so that as well in domesticall as martiall affayres hee referred all thinges to honestie, justice, and relligion. Robert king of Fraunce, and sonne of kinge Hugo Capetus, hadde especiall triall of his valiaunce in battaile, whose when he was awayed and endaungered throwghe the treason of divers his nobles, hee finallie avoyded themm bie the onlie assistance and policie of this Richarde; yeat emonge these thease soe great verteus weare enterlaced not a fewe vices, for greatlie hee was noted of luxurie, in that hee looved manie woomen, and emonge the reste one of obscure lineage, from whose companie, beinge admonished of his nobilitie, hee would not onlie not abstayne, but also contrarie to their persuasion joyned with her in matrimonie, of whom hee beegotte iiij. sonnes, Richard and Robert, whom afterwarde rewled Normandie, and William, whoe beetooke himselfe to the monasticall life; and as manie dowghters, wherof Alice the eldeste was espoused to Reginaldus, an earle of the Brittons, Elinore the seconde to Baldwinus earle of Flaunter, and the thirde to the kinge of Navarra. In processe of time this Richarde, being of goodd yeares, deceased, and after him succeeded Richard the Thirde, his soonne, a moste noble and princiellie person, whoe died after iiij. yeares, not withowte suspicion of empoysoninge, in whose place was substitute his brother Roberte, of whose actes shallbee declared in an other place more convenient. Now let us make retrayte to Sweno king of Denmarcke.
Hee arrived with a great fleete in that coste of Englonde which bowndethe estewarde, wheare, sendinge abrode his sowldiers, as soone as hee was donne to understande bie his espialls that the inhabiteres of these quarters weare in nothing appoincted for warrs, leavinge a small garrison in his shippes, hee overthrewe their villages, hee burned howses, hee made spoyle of menn and cattayle; then bendinge his power northwarde, and provoked to straye farther throwge the sweetenes of the bootie, withowte resistance hee invaded North Humberlande. The North Humbrians, partlie amazed with the present perill, partelie remembringe that befoore this time they hadd obeyed the Danes, and therfore imagininge that they returned not to their enemies but rather to their natives, yealed themselves of their owne accorde. After these expoytes hee sette on the Mercians, whome with great facilitee hee subdued; then towninge southeward, hee there overcamme all the borderers. This Dane being daylie more animated and prowde through this fortunate successe, minded to geeve assaullte unto London, whether he harde say that Etheldredus withdrewe himselfe bie reason of this trooblesom commotion. Whearefore, havinge all thinges requisite for suche an attempte, hee goethe forwarde, in minde to sett uppone the citte, and sodaynlie beseeged the same, that in this laste perill as it seemed hee might ethew utterlie distroye his adversarie, or at leaste wise hee mighte perceave of what force hee weare. On the other side, the citizens, albeite they weare astonied with the sodaine terror, yeat ponderinge within themselves that the desolation of the whole contrie was joyned with their calamitee and distresse, for as much as theirs was the cheefe and principall citte, thei bestirred and defended themselves manfullie, for somm made haste to meete with their enemies, somm threwe them from the walls, somm kepethem off with stones, and finallie eche mann, accordinge to his habilitee, endevoerd coragiuslie to withstande their violence. In this conficte, albeite the Danes weare feeree and eger, yeat the Englishemenn, mindinge to the uttermost to garde their kinge, shrincked not one whit in
these sharpe broyles, in soe muche that in greate thronge they
rushed forthe of the gates, and stoutelie dealed with hande
strokes emonge the thickest of their adversaries. The Danish
prince, whilst he coveted to succoure his companie, and to mayne-
tane the victorie which he reckened to bee allreadie in his handdes,
was environed of his enemies, bothe on the right hande and on
the lefte, not withowte greate occision of his menne, soe that
necessitee urged him to breake forthe in the middest of his enimies
weapons, and bothe daye and nighte, for the space of two dayse,
hee tooke his jornie toward Bathe. This certis was a singuler and
notable fighte, wheerin the Englishe people didd well specifye their
manwhode and valiance, who havinge Etheldredus to their capitan,
a mann of small corage and lesse wisdom, didd repell so mightie
hostillitee from the assault of the cittee. While Sweno sojornied
at Bathe hee was soe molested with the penurie of corne, that he
was constrained to suffer the Englishemen to redime of him the
tribute wherwith the realme tofore was levied, after the which
receipte of this monnie he retiered into Danmarck, mindinge with
a great number in all speede to returne againe into this londe.

Etheldredus in the meane whiles supposed that this release or
rather sale of the annuitee camme to this pointe, that the Danes
for ever hereafter shoulde be quiet; but the nobilitie did not soe
unadvisedlie misconster so covert a traine, but, easlie foreseeinge
that soe great a mischeefe cowlde not easlie bee shunned, exhorted
himme that with all celeritee hee woulde furnishe an armie; and
in deade Sweno (as the nobles wiselie adjudged) made small
tarienge, but in fewe dayse dispatched himme selfe into Englonde.
Nether was there muche protractinge on the Englishe parte, but
with equall ranckoure and stomache thei ranne together on bothe
sides. The contention was harde in the beginninge on ether parte,
but shortlie it camm so lamentable throwghe the slippinge away
of certaine Englisheemen to the adverse parte, that at the lengthe
Etheldredus, perceaving how hee was brought to extreeme miserie,
after his overthowe, called his cheefe men together and spake in
THE SEVENTH BOOK.

this wise: "I mighte safelie use continuall silence, O mi nobles and frindes, if ether I hadde the sage wisdom of an auncient father in giving councell and administration of mie kingdom, or els our warriers sufficient puissanunce and faythe for the defence and munition of their contrie. Treulie I acknowlege how glorius a thinge deathe is in the beehoofe of our contrie, and here mie selve am prest and readie ether to prostitute mie bodie as a sacrifice for mie realme, or to throwe mie selve into the middest of mine enemies; for here presentlie I see beefore mine ies the ruine of mie lond, and of all Englishemen, except with maturitee provision bee hadd in this great sea of evvels. Wee are vanquished of the Danes, and bowe? not bie there weapons, but bie owre owne malicius treason wee are wasted. In the first raging of these broyles I prepared an exceding goodlie navie, which the perfidius traytor Elfricus surrendered to our adversaries; then ful often have wee skirmished, but throwghe the unfaythful dealinge of our owne seeres and confederates wee have ended unhappelie and shamefullie; wherebis wee weare constrained to make that fowle and unseemelie league with foriners, in extreme necessitee, which surelie onlie Godde may overcome; yeat was it concluded to our utter undooinge, for asmuch as wee dealed with suche wicked and miscreant creatures, with owte ether honestie or godlines, as weare not afrayde or ashamed, contrarie to divine and humaine lawse, and contrarie to our expectation, to infringe all covenantes and promises; and thus are we comm to the passe that onlie wee maye not feare the losse of our imperie, but allso that thenglishe name for ever bee not extinguished. Wherfore, sithe even now our foes are over our heddes, deere frendes, whoe all wayse I knowe have regarded mie demandes and peticions, vowchsafe yee to provide, consulte, and releeve yowre contrie, which is at the poynct to fall and bee comm waste." At these woordes all menn beecamm more intensitive to the common helthe and utilitee, and callinge a cowncell, they delibered what was moste for their avayle; but sodaynlie thei fell into great doubtes and pensivenes, as menn which (according
to the Greek proverbe) didde howlde the woolfe bie the eare; for if thei showlde addresse them selves to fightinge, they didde plainlie perceave that they hadd more cause to seare there owne fellowse then their adversaries, whoe allwayse bent themselves to shrinkinge awaye as soon as cause of terror was objected; againe, if they showlde geeve place or relente, they reckened how filthie and opprobrious it weare to yealde them selves; yet that they accounted to bée the lesse evell, thincking that manie therebie mighte bée preserved from slaughter, whoe in time to comm mighte healpe to recover the fraunchise and fredom of their contrie. This verdite pleased all sortes; wherfore the kinge purposed to commit himselfe and his goodds to the safe conduite of Richarde the Second duke of Normandie, whose sister named Emma he hadd espoused in mariage; and leste hee showlde seem over rashelie to attempte it, hee sente beefore Emma, with his two sonnes, Alfredus and Edwarde, to trie how the duke was affected. This Richard curteuslie entereteyned his sister and her children, and promised that her husband Etheldredus showlde lacke noe succours for the defence of his kingdom. In the meane while Sweno possessed the greatest parte of England, and bie littell and littell receaved the rest into his jurisdiction, for the people voluntarilie yealde themselves; soe that Etheldredus, thinckinge it highe time to gieve roome to his enemie, after xxxv. yeare of his reigne fledd to Richard duke of Normandie, and Sweno consequentlie obteyned the whole dominion over Englonde. Thus the Danes weare the next straungers which, after the Englishe menn, gatte a kingdom in the Ilonde, which was the mxiii. yeare of our Salvation. Sweno used his victorie verie rigoruslie toward the Englishemenn, to the ende that, theye beinge weakened, hee might from thence-forthe bee the more voyde from all daunger; but hee was insatiable bothe in the exercising of his severite and also in the spoyling of their substance, insomutche that he withhelde not his incontinent hande from religius persons and thinggs sacred; for this hethen dogge, mindinge no lesse to extirpe the Englishe name then the
Christian religion owte of the hartes of all menn, after he hadde pilled the nobles of the Ilond, and sacked manie cherches of their jewels, he raced allso the abbay of Burie, wherein lieth the boddie of Saincte Edmund, kinge and martyr, with all the territoris adjoyninge. \ Not longe after Sweno suffered dewe punishemente, as the moonks made reporte, whoe weare to muche assoted on miracles, for hee, say they, whilst hee bosted emonge his soldiers of the conqueringe of his kingdom, was sodaynlie pricked as it weare with the poyncte of a dagger fallinge from aboove, wherwith hee fell to the grownde, cryenge owtragiouslie that hee was slaine, and forthewith gave upp the ghoste; in soe muche that the standers bie beinge wonderouslie agaste at the soodaine chaunc, and seeinge no mann likelie to ggee the stroke, didde thincke it to be donne bie the wrahte and indigination of our Lorde. Moreover, the same wente even unto theyr posteritee that hee was slayn with the verie same weapon which saincte Edmund ware in his life time. Howbeit, accordinge to the assertion of Saxo Grammaticus, Sweno hadde a muche more happye ende of his life, whoe affirmeth that this prince, after divers his memorable feates, conquered the Englishemenne, granting on this condition peace unto Etheldredus, (whome he falselie nameth Adelstanus,) that after his decease the inheritance of rioll diademe shoude be divoluted unto him, and that Sweno in fine beecam Christian, purginge his offences with muche godlines and pietee. These things are not alltogether dissident from the trewthe: namely, that Sweno died a Christian; secondarilie, that Etheldredus reyngned throughge intercession, sithe it is evident that he died in England; and this maye seeme a suer argument as towchinge the godlines of Sweno, that under his reygne the Danes embraced the Christian faythe: but let us pro-
secute owre matter.

Not longe after that Sweno was departed owte of this mortall life the Danes proclaimed as their kinge Canutus his sonne, a yownge man of goodlie disposition, and well affected towards the relligion of Christe. The Englishemenn, whoe greatlie longed
to rejecte the servile yoke of the Danes, when the rumor of the
deathe of Sweno was eche wheare bruted weare exceding gladde,
and immediatlie bie there letters certified Etheldredus of the death
of his enemie, exhorting him with all expedition to com and de-
liver his riome owte of the handds of straungers, and therin thei
profered their assistance, boddis and goodes. These tidings
recomforted the spirits of the kinge, whoe, beinge propense to
revenge, made noe delayse in this offered oportunitee; yet mis-
dowtinge the fickle unstedfastenes of the vulgare people, accordinge
to the arbitrement of his menne, premised Edward, his elder
sonne, into England, to seele and assaye the mindes of the com-
minaltie. This yowne manne used noe trifelinge procrastination
in the case, but with singular prudence severallie undermined the
sentences of all estates, and returned with æquall celeritee into
Normandie, makinge relation to his father that all thinges weare
in saftie if hee woolde woorcke speadelie. With this messenger of
trust Etheldredus conceaved soe good hope that indeade hee
minieded to assaye his fortune: wherefore, partlie trustinge
to the fidelite of his nation, partlie to the succours which he
recheved of Duke Richarde, he quickelie sayled into Englonde.
His comminge was verie acceptable to the people, emonge whome
the Danishe governement beganne longe beeore to bee verie tedius
and hatefull, as a thinge moste exitiall and pestilent to the Eng-
lishe name and stemme, notwithstandinge that Canutus with all
jentilies and liberallitie greatlie endevored to preserve them still
in there obeysaunce and loyaltie; whoe, to the ende hee mighte
have the better successe in his regiment, is reported to have app-
peased Saincte Edmund in his wrath conceaved towards his
father Sweno. The common people fabled that emonge the gifts
which hee offered for his mitigation to have been a crowne of
gowdle, which afterwarde shoulde bee redimed, if it soe liked
him, for a great somme of monie; wherebie didd springe a cus-
tomm that kinges succeedinge shoulde doe the same, but sewerlie
it was not long observed, or rather never, for (as Persius sayth)
what entercourse hathe gowld he with hollie things? Allso hee adorned the temple with manie giftes, and gratified the relligius with ample possessions. Within a fewe dayse after the arrivall of Etheldredus in Englonde, with a well appointed armie, hee marched towards Canutus, who withhelde himselfe at Lincolne, and putte himme fromme his place, spoylinge all the provence with sier and sworde, and sleaing a great compenie of thinhabitants. This citty is of goood renowne, and situate eastwarde, the one parte thereof standing on an hill, and garnished with the princelie cherche of the divine Virgin our ladie, and supported with a stronge tower: the other parte consisting on a levil grounde sowthwarde, havinge hard bie it the river Witham (for soe it is vulgarlie termed), and goood feeldes, of noe lesse fertiliteit then pleasance. Canutus, who gave grouwnde in that he was not of semblable power, enteringe his shippe, which was redie at the entri of Humber, retiered to the havin of Sandwiche and the Kentishe coeste, where his navie stooede at anchor, and there kutte of the noses and handes of certaine of the Englishe nobilitee geeven in hostage to his father Sweno; and leavinge a garrison for the munition of the porte hee hasted into Denmarcke, in minde to returne and acquite these injuries and scathes as soone as his busines woulde suffer. In the mean time, being forced to have more care of dissention at home then of the warres in England, hee suppressed the rebellius Slavens, which thinge when hee hadd woorthelie achieved, he kastinge greater matters in his hedde (for so often it chauncethat the luckie endinge of one thinge is the beginninge of an other,) hee appointed to assayle the Norvegians, of whomme a littel beefore hee was defrauded of the kingdom of his aunciters; yeat, remembringe that it was not goodd to comprise so manie battayles at once, hee referred it to an other season; notwithstanding that the Norvegians hearing of the death of Sweno, least they should enie more becom vassayles to a forreyn prince, prounounced one Olavus as their lorde and kinge;
yeat hee, beeing altogether intient to the Englishe warrs, did studeiuslie sollicite all thinges expedient thereto.

At that verie time divers prodigius wonders ware shewed, whearebie men openlie avowched that the chaunge of the kingdom was prognosticate and signified; emonge other thingges, the un-acustomed sowerge of the ocean was especiallie noted, which with-owte enie apparent cause (which might seeme to abate the admir-a-ration therof) didd flowe into suche great heyght, that it drowned manie menne and theyre villages. In the meane time Etheldredus, as one that was drowsie and slacke in the execution of all things, didd not assemble an hoste for the comminge of his adver-sarie, neither prepare suche things as ware necessarie for the warrs, but, like a wooman desiers to revenge, he didde so op-presse the Danes whoo hadde begotten children on Englishe wives, and hadd all their treasures in the Ilonde, that, after great effusion of theyre bloodd, manie ware apprehended, and after crewell tormentes miserablie slayne; emonge which number Sigi-frédus and Morgandus, two moste noble menn of the Danes, ware falslie accused to the kinge bie one Edricus Stratonius, a mann verie stoute and likelie bothe of boddie and minde, but skarslie of goodd witt and forecase; bie the which mischeefe there was an other evell heaped on, for emonge the captives was the wife of Sigifredus, a wooman of noe lesse singuler chastitie then excellent beutie, whome the kinges sonn Edmundus hadd longe since luxuriuslie deflowred, albeit that afterwarde hee maried her when her howsbond was deceased; which thinges, as sone as they ware revealed to Canutus, they soo enchased himm, that, speedelie finishinge all his busines in Denmarcke, hee retourned in poste cheefelie to revenge the injuries of his menne, and, leaving convenient garrison in his shippes, he entered in Kent, and wastinge on all sides, hee peerced unto the Weast Saxons, leavinge nothing inviolate that mighte bee defaced ether with fier or sworde. Etheldredus was then in a feaver, and therbie hindered for that
season. Wherefor hee gave in precepte to his sonne Edmundus to furnishe forthe with an armie, and to encounter with his enemie. Edmundus was a manne as wel stronge of limbes as hawte of corage, and therefore was surnamed Ironsides, whome Etheldredus didd beegot, not of his wife Emma, but of an other named Ethelgina, descended of obscure and base stocke; this manne, bie his valiant harte and prowess, wanne bothe glorie to his father and nobilitie to his mother. Edmundus, havinge knowlege of his enemies voyage, prepared as ample a bande of menn as hee owlde devise, and throwghe preevie pathes and cliffs he was gotten bee-fore them, mindinge on a sodayne to sette uppon them. Edricus Stratonius was fellow and partetaker of all his devises, who repining and maligning at the woorthines of the yonge impe, counseled him in noe wise to geeve the onsette. Edmundus gave cre-dit to his follie, awaytinge better opportunitie to assaulte. Edricus in the meane time busilie sought occasion willinglie to betray him to his adversarie, which when he perceaved would take noe effecte, thinkinge it to noe purpose enie longer to dissemble, did now openlie take parte with Canutus; whearbie it camme to passe that a great multitude, surrenderinge hostages of their free will, cam in league, yea, in jurisdiction, under the Danes. Onlie the Mercians continued in their allegiaunce, affirminge that to the deathe they would not shrincke soe that they hadd a capitain. While these things were in dooenge, Etheldredus, being a littell recovered, marched towards his enemies, and, hearinge sodainlie of these mischaunces, hee was so afflicted with the doloure and pensivenes of his unquiet and unluckie life, that hee toorned towards London, and beeganne to bee sicke more vehementlie then ever bee-fore. But Edmundus, in soe great confusion of thinges reteininge his manlie and noble corage, thought best in time to recover certaine citties which were slipped away for feare; whearfore, preferringe that woorcke beeofore the pursuit of his foes, hee assayled divers places; somme hee conquered, som he made playne with
the earthe he extreemelle punished the rebells, that others might conceive the more terroure bie suche terrible execution, or bie more preste to persevere still in their dutie. Canutus, on the other side, knew that the pollicie of his adversarie wolde mucho disadwayntage him except hee should anticipate it, and threfore parte of his soldiers hee sent into North Humberland to spoyle and waste the patrimonie of Uthredus, whoe was made the firste Earle therof bie Etheldredus, as a mooste vallaunte capitain, and one whome Edmundus hadd ordeyned lodesman of his armie. This practise was devised that he necessarlie mighte bee drawne homewarde for the tuicion of his privat goodds: nether was this devise frustrate, for Uthredus, hearinge tidinges of these pretended damages, hasted into Northe Humberlande, where, albeit for a season hee manfullie defended himme selfe, yeat at the last, despayrying in his safetie, hee yielded himme selfe and all the countrie; yet in shorte time mooste dispituoslie, and contrarie to the lawe of armes, was hee strangeled. Edmundus, in this season, for that hee was destitute of the assistaunce of Uthredus, hee went to London unto his father; which thinge when Canutus understooode, fortisfieng North Humberland with a sufficient bande, hee tooke shippinge, and returned to his navie at the Kentishe coste. In this year Etheldredus departed from his mortall life, partelye throughe the continuance of his diseas, partli throughe the languishinge vexation of his minde, in that all things thrived preposterouslie with him, whoe was more geven to idelnes then warfare, more to the pleasures of the boddie then the vertewse of the minde; yeat beinge somwhat bettered with the tracte and processe of time, he laboured earnestlie, albeit in vaine, to prohibite and withstande the ruine of his contrie. He was buried at London in great pompe, in the churche of Sainte Paule. Hee hadde bie his firste wife Ethelgina, or, as somm affirme, his concubine, iij. his ij wyfe, sonnes, Edmundus, Edwinus, and Adelstanus, and one dowghter, called Edgina, and bie his wife Emma iij., Edwarde, a mooste hollie
mann, Alfredus, or Aluredus. Hee made exceedinge goodlie lawse. This was the xxxviiith yeare of his reigne, and third after his fleste into Normandie, and mxvi. of our Salvation.

There weare at that time menn of singuler wisdom and noe lesse godlines, and enmone the rest one Ethelwoldus, of monasticall profession, elected busshop of Winchester for his highe knowleage, of whose devotion there weare manie monuments extant, and especiallie ij notable religius howses, the one of noones at Winchester, the other of moonckes at Peeterbouroughe, (soe termed bie cause it was dedicated to Sainct Peter; it standeth estward in the cowntie of Northantoine, in the dioces of Linoolne) whose for his mervaylus good life was after his death ascribed enmone the sainctes. Next unto him succeeded Elphegius, a man moste excellent in all respectes, whose was created in shorte space archebusshop of Canterburie; in soe mutche that the cuntie beinge taken bie the Danes and sacked, whilste with preachinge and alleaging examples he endeavor to plante the divine religion in the grosse and barberus adversaries, hee loste his life, and wonne the noble victorie of martirdom. Dunstanus alse lived at this time, who bie good cowncell, wise advertisements, and godlie instructions, did noe lesse merite towards his contrie then in religion, whose pietee bothe towards Godd and menn caused that his memorial was perpetuall as freshe in the minde of men as if presentlie he hadd wroughte miraculus wonders. Throughe all the degrees of promotion hee aspired to the archbusshoprick, beinge first abbot of Glastenburie, then busshop of Woorceter and London, as one worthie of manie honors at once; at the last archbusshop of Canterburie. He did consecrat Kinge Edward and Etheldredus; and finallie dyed the xxviiij. yeare of his residence, and was canonized for his sinceritee. These archbusshops ensewed, Ethelgarus, Siricius, and Aluricius, which were abowte xvij. yeares rulers of that diocess. Then followed Elphigius, as xxvij. in the order of the archebissshops of Canterburie, of some menne reckened in the dayse of Etheldredus, which indeade
breaketh square if the yeares have hadd juste accounte in the
beginninge, for there wear xiiiij. yeares betweene the death of
Dunstanus and the decease of Etheldredus, in the which space
Aluricius was resident; wherefore it muste neades bee after that
time that Elphegius governed the dioces of Canterburie, and was
martired even mucbe abowte the season that bye the murthere-
ynge of Edmundus the whole imperie of Englonde was revowlted
unto Canutus. And abowte the yeare of oure Lorde dcccclxxix.
died Oswaldus, archebusshop of Yorcke, after the xxiiij. yeare of his
residence, and for the pure and sownde life which hee ledd hee
was accounted in number of sainctes. The relligius howse of Bene-
dictines, which he bylded at Ramsie, a village in the dioces of
Lincoln, is a plaine argument of his goodd meaning and devotion.
After him ensued Adolphus, Wulstanus, Alfredus, Chiusius, and
Aldredus, the xxiiiij. in the order of the arche prelates, whoe, accom-
panied with Aluredus, archebusshop of Canterburie, did consecrate
the kinge named Haraldus, of whome more ample discowrs shall
bee made in the life of King William, who conquered himme.

In those dayes the pontificall see, which than was in the Hollie
Ilond, was translated to Deirham, and thether was transposed the
corps of Sainct Cuthberte, as elswhere we have made mention.

Edmundus, after the decease of his father, was proclaimed
kinge bie the citizens of London, but other counties, partlie for
beastlie feare, partlie for the fanatike desier of fonde novelties,
didd denominate Canutus as their lord and maister. But Edmundus,
beinge the more feere in corage and stomache, immediatlie
reclaimed his soldiers owt of their wintering colonies, and in
hoope to receive againe divers places, in greate jornies, and with a
swifte bande of menne, he marched westward, and for the more
terroure of his adversaries with a well furnished armie hee gave
assaulte to Gloseester and Bristowe; and with noe lesse stowtenes
then policie he caused the Danes, which weare lefte in garrison
and victualled but for a daye, to comm forthe to hande strokes.
For feare of beeseeging they susteyned for a season the broonte of
this skirmishe, notwithstandinge that they weare amazed with the sodaines thereof; but in shorte time beinge put to flighte, whilst eche manne hyed to places of saftie, manie of them weare slayne in the chase, with the which thinge divers of the places adjoyninge, as all astonied, yealded themselves, and plyghted pledges of theyr faythe. In the meane while not a fewe of the Danes which escaped the terrible flame of the late overthrowe camme to Canutus into Kente, and declared the effecte of their repulse. Hee, as who shoulde saye hee had heere of noe such matter, assembled lustilie his aydes, tooke his jornie to London, and, commaundinge his shippes to comm thither bie Thamis, hee beseeched the citie; but the citizens, who weare verie faytheful and well purvayed, bothe of men and armowre, didd not onlie not adread of the comminge of their enemies, that, settinge their gates wide open, they hurteled forth emonge them, in so much that they, beinge not able to abide there irruption, forthe with avoyded. There was not mutche bloddshedde, for as mutche as they bickered but a littell, while suche haste mad Canutus to cope with Edmundus, whome hee understood to bee retourned to Andover, a towne within xv. miles of Sarisburie, whether as soone as hee approached hee planted his tentes on a plaine grownde, within the sight of his enemies, and brought his soldiers forthe in good araye. Edmundus refused not the profer, as soone as hee espied the standerdes of his adversaries to bee hoysed. They continued the fight from iii. of the clocke until verie night, and nether partie on the better hande; at the lengthe Edricus, mindinge to appall and kill the hartes of the Englishe menn, wente uppe into a certaine watch tower, and there, crieng with an highe voice that Edmundus was slaine, shewed foorth a s woord droppinge full of blodd, whome, while he thus yelled and showted, the Englishe archers hadd neer hand slayne. This deuytfull trayne was a small pleasure to the devisers, for the kinge, now beinge accended with woonderus indignation, encouraginge his noble warriers, soe furiuslie assayled them that firste hee caused them to greeve grownde, and consequentlie,
as altogether enraged, hee putt them all to flighte, and hadde committed woonderfull slaughter if they hadd not been verie swifte and the nighte verie darcke and farre spente. Canutus, being thus foyled, travayled all the night toward Winchester, and harborowed himselfe in a safe place. Edmundus, as I finde in summ writers, didd not pursewe his adversarie, but deflected towards Sarisburie, mindinge to succoure his people there, beinge in distresse through an other rowte of the Danes. Not longe after Canutus was there himselfe in presence, soe that, addressing their companis, they fought not farre from the cittie. The conflict was crewell to behowlde while their stomacks and boddies weare freshe and continued in aequall proportion, untill the nighte departed them. The nexte daye, from the verie risinge of the sonne, the Englishmann stode in araye, untill that Canutus cam unto the fight, which was maytained noblie and with like ende on both sides; with much slaughter and semblable conclusion the eveninge dissevered them. The day ensewenge ether armie tooke reste, refreshinge themselves with meate, and, heapinge all the deade carkases together they boorned them; nether yeat in the meane whiles didde they lay their weapons from them, for on bothe sides they wanted xx. thowsand. The nighte followinge Canutus privilie bie stelt he removed his tentes and wente towards London, which cittie was allmoste beeseeged with his navie. Edmundus, assone as the daylight discried the departure of his adversaries, followed their steppes, and with finall conflictes raysed the sege; wherefore in greate pompe and triumpe hee entered the cittie. Canutus, being frustrat of his expectation, gathering bootie owte of the places adjoyninge, hasted to visit his shipps, which a littall beefore entered the river roonninge bie Rochester, in times paste called Medegware and nowe Medeweye, whear Canutus sojorned a fewe dayse, partlie to enlarge and fortifie his armie, partlie to knowe the councells of the countrer parte, which easlie hee was donne to understande, for Edmundus, as impacient of all delay, assemblinge in all haste more ample succours, pitched his
abode not farre from his adversaries there, in manie woordes adver-
tisinge his warriers to bee mindefull of their former battailes, and
nowe finallie from the uttermost of their power to contende and
sweate to represse and abate the whole pride of their adversaries,
that bie the vehement and urgent contention of this one battayle
they might make an ende of all their labour and travayles. The
soldiers, being wonderfullie animated with these exhortations, and
not a little irked with the arrogancie of their enemies, which daylie
provoked them, issued forth with great ranckowre. Canutus also
 lingered not, who daylie and howerlie commanded his Danes to
bee in redines for the encounter. They bickered bie the space of
iiij. howers, till the Danes beganne to shrincke, which thing assone
as Canutus perceived he commanded his light horssmen to enter
into the fore froonte; but while the other ranne tremblinge away
they camm slacklie into their rooms, the whole armie was dis-
turbed, for that finallie, when shame overcamm feare, thei beetooke
themselves to flight. Three thowsande and five hundred Danes
weare slayne, and emonge them cheefe capitanes of the nobilitie.
Of the Englishe menn but vi. hundred at the uttermoste, and they
all footemenn. Edmundus wowlde have used the commoditee of
his victorie, that is to say, pursewed his enemies, that in that daye
hee might have brought them all to extremitee, which no doubte
hee hadde donne if fatall destenie hadde not withstoode him, for
after the honorable achievinge of that battayle, takinge deliberation
whether hee showlde chase his foes or not, it was putt into his
heed that it showlde bee muche for his avayle if hee woold con-
trive the remnante of the day and night in the reposinge and re-
laxation of himselfe and his weried soldiers, soe that it was justlie
thought that that daye was to the Danes a goodd releef, but not to
the Englishemenn. At the springe of the next daye Edmundus
causd his vassayles to gather spoyles, and the residew to make
expedition in the prosecutinge of his adversaries. Wherfore, hear-
ing that they who weare disperpede wear now gathered together,
and passinge the Thames invaded the East Angles, hee dispatched
himselfe thether for the succours of his people, and, sowndinge a
trompet, fell on his enemies, whoe, allbeit they wear buffeted and
assayled on all hands, yett did thee not once gееve grownde;
eche mann encouraged his feeres, and Edmundus, noblie fightinge
in the forewarde, gave watche worde to his centurients still to kepe
his menne in ther araye, crieng aloude that this daye shoulde ether
establishe and ratifie all their victories and labours, if awhile they
wolde urge instantelie their enemies, or els bee the begininge of
all calamitees if never so littel thei shoulde recule. With these
wordes the fight becamm soe crewell that forthewith the Danes
gave grownde, which thinge as soon as Canutus espied, he, imme-
diatlie pressinge towards the lefte winge, where the greatest daun-
ger was, wonderuslie succored his menn, and with greate deades of
armes hee overthrew all suche as didd withstande, wherbie it
chaunsed that a great troupe of Englishe warriers which weare
sore traveled in this longe contention, hearinge the rumor of this
terrible occision, as all afraine, beegann to flie; but Edmundus,
thrustinge him selfe into the formost frontiers, didd awhiles vali-
antlie recrayte them, yeat, for as mucche as the aray was once
broken, hee cowlde not well restore and renewe the order, inso-
mutche that, nether being of sufficiencie to resiste, nor haveinge
enie hope in flieng, bie reason that the passages weare straghtlie
awarded bie there enemies, they were allmoiste everie one broughgt
to confusion, soe that the vere flowre of their cheevalrie was there
destroyed. Edmundus, accompanied with a fewe soldiers, ceased
not to jornie till he camm into the weste contrie to Glocestre,
whome Canutus within the space of two howres folowed, but hee
was not able to overtake him.

This horrible over throwe, albeit it had daunting the heartes, ap-
palled the corage, and debilitate the strengthe of the Engleshe war-
riors, especiallie sithe that London and manie other renowned
places now at the lengthe quakinge shrincked in the Danishe
dominion, yeat Edmundus nevertheless furnishede speedelie an
armie, and bie great jornies approched to his adversarie, notwith-
standinge that right well hee understode that if thie showlde skirmishe once againe the uttermost of all affayres lay in the casualtee of that battayle; and, indeed, hee was now fullie resolved to have fowght his laste fighte. Wherfore bothe the armyes stode in sighte not farre from the bancke of Severne redie to bicker, and hoysinge uppe their ensignes of hostilitee as menn fullie bente to deal sharpe strokes, Edricus (as somm affirme) procured that the kings might commone together beeefore they fowght, knowinge certainlie that it was noe lesse conducible to the Englishe parte then to the Danes. Hee which didd all things in fore time moste villanuslie, begann nowe to dissemble honestie in sollicitinge of peace betwene the two moste puissent capitaines, whore thincking as that time his cowncell not to be contemned, albeit they feared all wolde bee in vayne, yet they mette together, and conferred awhile beetweene them selves, not with owte mervaylus expecta-
tion of all menne. As towchinge their composition and determina-
tion their remainethe some dowbte. Somme menn have lefte in memorie that peace was concluded, and Mercia allotted to Ca-
nutus, and the weste partes to Edmundus. Other writers have made minde that the matter was thus ordered: one of the capi-
taines, not knowne whether hee weere Dane or Englishe, requiringe licence to speake, uttered these woordes before the two kings: 'Most redowbted and worthie princes, ye have fought sufficientlie on bothe sides, yee have dolefullie shedd the blood of manie noble menn, yee have hadd sufficient triall in the valiaanse of youre warriers, yeat canne yee suffer nether goodd nor eevell fortune, for whoe soe vanquishethe hee crewelli persecuteth him that is vanquished, and whoesoe is vanquished hee repayreth his harmes, hee licketh his wondes, and freshelie assayleth him that van-
quisheth. Now what in the delevs name meaneth this willfulnes? Doe you preferre the horrible tortures of warre beefore tranqui-
litee? Whie doe yow soe greatlie luste after imperie and thirste after honors? If you contende for the kingdom, divide yow twaine this riche and opulente riolme which in times paste hathe
suffised vij. kinges. If the desier of glorie have driven you to this uncertaine marte of imperie and servilitee, finde somm meane waye bie the which, with owte great slaughter or much bloodshed of ether nation, it may bee easlie decerned who is the better manne.' Thus hee made an ende, whose conclusion nothing misliked Edmundus. It was not disallowed of Canutus, who founde great favor assuredlie of the destinies. Wherfore this ordre was taken, that the kinges shoulde trie it owte at the weapon; and whossoever was conquerer, the other shoulde geeve him place, and yealde to him the totall possession of the kingdom.

Within a littell space there was a littell island enveroned with the river Severne, called Olvea, and now termed Olanegea, into the which bothe the kinges alited in armes, their armies standinge rownd aboute them on the banckes with hevie hertes, as they whose being suspense and full of anxietee behelde a sorrowfull and lamentable sighte. The baleful blaste of the terrible trumpett sownded, and the too puissant princes, with hatefull hertes and armes, rushed to gether, as menn in minde knightlie to accomplish this perticuler fighete. Edmundus, whose boddie was no lesse notable for the largnes of his limbes than his stomacke, frawghte with greate corage, much surmountinge the other in quantitie, addresinge his shilde on his lefte arme to receave the strokes of his adversarie, gave unto him with his weapon soe mightie a stroke, that with huge noysse the dinte thereof greatlie resownded. Canutus, a man of meane stature, yeat of highe and noble corage, thoughhe hee somewhat rebated throwgh the boysterus stripe, yeat some hee gathered in againe to his enemie. Thus longe they fought, hande to hande, dealinge manie sore blowes on ether side, when the matter continuing in equalall balance and doubteful hope on bothe partes, the Dane, as one that in deade was farr unequall in strengthe, beganne bie and bie to bee afрайde, and with lowde voyce cried, 'What breethe or needeth the, moste puissant prince, that ether of us shoulde die an untymelie deathe for a kingdome? Trulie me thincke it weare better for us, laying aside all ranck-
THE SEVENTH BOOK.

oure and malice with our weapons, to treate of peace. Use thou at hit curtu-
semble the pleasure thine owne Canutus, who is preste and at commande-
ment to benefite thee.’ The rouge and fierce yonge mann was
mollified with these milde woordes, and incontinent throwinge
away his weapon, gave his right hande to his enemie. So didd
allso the two armiies, whoe looked for the like fortune and successse
in their contrie, as martiall chaunce shoulde have ministered to
their kinges. Finallie they, confederinge peace and amtee for ever,
devided the kingdom betweene them. All the weast contrie was
assigned to Edmundus, and all the residew to Canutus: but see
how frayle and slipperie are all humaine affayres.

Whilst the Danes sojorned at London, Edmundus, hoping to
have the fruition of quietnes after the accomplishinge of soe manie
battayles, sodaynelie departed owte of this mortall worlde. Trulie
the death of this prince was piteus and lamentable, bothe for
that it beerus the floure of his age, and aliso broughght hedlonge
to confusion the whole riolme. I showlde use too muche curius
circumstance if I shoulde make rehersall of all those things
wherin authors varie as concerninge the death of Edmundus.
Certayne of them affirme (whome mie minde geeveth mee are to
bee folowed) that the son of Edricus (his name is not men-
tioned that I knowe) at the instance of his father, watched him as
hee was at the preevie, and there, with a weapon, thrust him
through the bellie and bowells. Another sorte, whosee fonde
mindes more sweetelie fede on phantasies, assever that him-
selve, Edricus, at his howse didd soe artificiallie, with a vice, put
a sword in the hande of an ymage, that as often as hee lusted it
shoulde with the point strike such as approched; and, imme-
diatlie biddinge Edmundus to a supper, he caused it to thurst
him throwgh while intentivelie hee behelde it. Finallie, som
others surmise that he died of a disease: but surelye, how soe
ever it was, a constante reporte went throughge the heddes of all
menn, that this bocherlie and fellonus deade was committed bi
Edricus, who immedialtie after the murthering of Edmundus
saluted Canutus as the monarche of all Englonde, offeringe to 
hime the hedd of his new frinde, and owlde enemie: but the 
Danishe prince abhorred this develishe deade, and regrated with 
conding punishment the trator Edricus. Yet som saye that hee 
exceedinglie loved him, advancing himme unto great promotions, 
bie cause that finallie throughe his meanes hee hadde obtained the 
whole dominion. But now let us reherse suche thinges as Saxo 
Grammaticus hathe written hereof. Hee make the mention as 
touching the division of the English kingdom betweene them, and 
of the slainge of Edmundus: but hee feynethe his Danes to have 
been superiors in that conficte, for the two kinges, sayeth hee, 
fought hand to hande, and the Danishe armie, beinge putt into 
the woorsesse, was renewed and becam conqueror throwgh the vali-
aunce of one Thuno, a standerd bearer, in soe muth that Ed-
mundus, being in dispayre, made Canutus copartener of the 
riolme; and that vij. yeares after the deathe of Edmundus cer-
tayne bowldre yonckers in jeste sayde to Canutus, that he was 
king of England bie subtiltee, not bie prowesse; and, in con-
clusion, in earneste bruted and reported that the kinge was slayne 
bie his advise. Wherwith, hee beinge greatlie angered, didd 
sharpelie chastise the sclaunderers; and, least so fowle a blemishe 
might perhaps bee to him in time to comm imputed, hee allwayse 
utterlie denied that hee was previe to the deathe of Edmundus. 
All this we purposlie and featlie recited, that bie the reherall of 
divers testimoniall the historie might bee the plainer. Let us 
comm againe to our purpose. Edmundus reigned one onlie yeare, 
and riollie was interred in the monasterie of Glastenburie. The 
whole maiestie of the imperie didd fall with this prince, being 
allways after like to the boddie of manne withered and crooked 
with owlde age, that is to weete, tossed and turmoyled with the 
Danes bie the space of xxvi. yeares ensewenge; and somwhat re-
vived againe under the governemente of King Edwarde, the sonne 
of Etheldredus; yeat readie to perishe againe, as ells whear shalbe 
mentioned.
Canutus having obtained soe mightie a kingdom, with all matu-
ritee called an assembly of his nobles, and, according to the owld

Canutus
custom of his aunciters, was consecrated kynge bie Aluredus arch-

kynge, and

busshop of Canterburie, which was the mxvij. yrear of our Salva-

so the king-
tion. After this his coronation hee forthwith chose himm a
domesticall senate of sages, bie whose counsell all the affayres of

term-
the riolme showld bee administred. The first thinge bie them

moyled

hee practised was to exile and banishe Edmundus and Edwarde,

with the Danes the
two sonnes of kynge Edmund Ironside. Wherefore, they
dom
"space of 26

takinge their jorrie into Pannomia, and there well intreated, ledde
lifes as procribed owtelawes. This Edwarde lefte behinde

there the life of kynge William of Normandie. The kynge havinge

in the life of kynge William of Normandie. The kynge havinge

thus disposed all things at home, bie cause hee hadde onlie two

the sonnes of kinge William of Normandie. The kynge havinge

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

thus disposed all things at home, bie cause hee hadde onlie two

desierus to have one rightlie and lawfullie beegotten, which ac-

bies his concubine Alvina,
cordinge to the lawe mighte bee his successor, hee espoused in

hew hadde onlie two

matrimonie Emma, the former wife of kynge Etheldredus, whoe

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
lived in exile in Normandie with her brother Richerd, and her

hew hadde onlie two

sonnes Edward and Alfredus, unto the whiche duke Richarde hee

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
on the other side hadd gieven in mariage his sister Hestritha.

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

Moreover in this convocation he pleted and broughte to passe

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

that as well the nobles as the whole commnialtie showld sweare

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

unto his will. Then hee ordeyned Hircius earle of Northumberland,

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

and Thrug of East Angles, bothe of Danishe progenie, and, as

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
somm menn saye, Edricus earle of Marches. Finallie, hee made

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

and promulged manie goodlie and howlsom lawse, which the Nor-

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

manian perversite, with manie others, did cleane deface and

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
disannull. After the dissolvinge of this assemble, hee immediatlie

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
purposinge to garnishe the kingdom with civile behavor, to in-

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

structe the nobilitie with all clemencie and jentell demaynor, to

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,
polishe eche condition, and finallie to doe goodd unto all menne,

illegitimate sonnes, Haraldus and Sweno, bie his concubine Alvina,

he was certified of the irruption of the Norways into Denmarcke,
and earnestlie requered foorthwithe that hee wold comm to the succowrs of his subjectes. This matter seemed of noe small moment, for Olavus kinge of Norway heeringe that the power of Canutus daylie encreasde, thought it muche for his owne saftie and avayle to interupte and disturbe his conquestes, fearinge that hee wowlde againe recover from himme the realme of his aunciters: wherfore, accompanied with his brother Haraldus, he invaded Danmarcke, hee wasted their teritories, he bickered with suche garrisons as weare lefte in the fortreses, hee seemed allmoste at the poincte to bee lorde of all, excepte redresse weare fownde in suche imminent perill. Wherfore Canutus immediatlie toke muster bothe of Englishe and Danishe soldiers, and enteringe with propice and fortunate wether with incredible celeritee arrived in Danmarcke, wheare hee sawe his enemies stand readie in armowre freshe and breathinge from the late spoylinge of his contrie; wherfore he gave commandement to advance his standerdes and pursewe his adversaries. All these thinges weare spedelie executed, while the Englishe men contended with som egregius deade to shew there manwhode, hopinge therebie to bee in more favor with their prince. The battayle was beegon straghtwaye with suche corage and dispite that the clamor and noyse peerced the heavens; the contention hanged longe in doubte; but finallie throwge the feercenes of the Englisemenn the aduers parte was cleane overthrowne. The nexte day Canutus chased his enemie, takinge his voyage towards Norvegia; whether, as sone as hee camme, hee mette with embassadors with humble submission treating for peace, whome hee mildelie hearde, and receaving hostages didd lovinglie pardon and remitt whatsoever they had trespass; and thus Norway was retayne; and Olavus, being in despaire after this discomfiture, betook himselfe to his father in lawe named Gerithaslaus, a duke of the Esterlings, * that there he might safelie passe his voluntarie banishmente; whoe, while hee minded

* Orientalium.
to disturbe that which was other mennes, hee loste his owne: yeat in verie deade this innocent loste nothinge; for, beeing fownd to bee verie sincere and honest in these calamites, bie all mens judgement hee was accounted a moste hollie parson. This Norvegia, wherof wee have mentioned, is an halfe Ile northewarde, within the Germanian ocean, haveinge verie unfruitfull grownde, echewhere stonic and full of briars. In the same tracte and discours of the sea is allso Swetia or Swicherlande, bowndinge westwarde on Denmarcke and Norwaye. These som men suppose to bee those which our menne call Glessarie, and the Greekes Eelcrides, for the abowndance of awmber. The king of Denmarcke at this daye withhowldethe them bothe. Canutus in shorte time quenched this conspiracie confedered againste him bie Olavus and the great prince Ulvo, wherwith noe doubt hee hadde ben entrapped but that qucklie hee bothe perceaved the originnall therof, and repressed the same bie putting the authors to death. But now againe to our pretensed matter.

In this fight Canutus hadd profe bothe of the fidelitee and also especiallie in the valiaunce of Englishe menne, whome afterward for the same hee exceedinglie looved and rewarded with bownteus liberallitee; which exploytes beinge achieved in Denmarcke, not longe after the kinge retiered into Englund, whare, honorablie dealing with all his nobilitie, regratinge themm with munificentlie, rather diminishinge then increasing the yearlie pensions and subsidies, hee ministered to noe mann cause of repininge or commotion, he restored everie citie in allegeaunce towards him, and amitee beestweene them selves, and consequentlie, kastinge his minde to the service and maintenance of the Divine pietee, thincking bie somme meanes to deserve well thereof, hee erected two abbays, one in Englund, in Norfolke, within the fennes, termed sainct Benedicts, whare beefore stoode an heremitage, being vij. miles distant from Norwiche; and an other in Norvegia; but, forasmuche as wee have made mention of Norwich, peradventure it shall seeme expedient that wee declare the situation thereof. It
is a citty in the countie of Norffolke, which is in that coste which lieth eastward, within xij. miles of the sea, standing on two hills dissoevered with the river, vulgarie termed Wensdon, which, runninge thrownge vales into the Frenche ocean, make the an haven at the village named Hiermuthe. But yeat againe to our purpose.

In conclusion, the yeare of our Lord mxxx., and xiiij. of his reygne, for the accomplishinge of his vowe hee wente to Rome, where hee was curteuslie intertyned of Ihon, the xxii. bisshop of Rome; and after the performance of his vowe, hee shortelie retiered safelie to Englande. Manie dayse weare nott passed but that of necessitie hee was enforced to moove warre against Richard Duke of Normandie, whoe, contrarie to the lawe, for a verie trifelinge cause, hadd divorced his wife Hestritha, the sister of Canutus, as wee shewed befoor, of the which injurie hee mindinge to bee revenged, hee fournished a great navie, and sayled into Normandie, wheare hee hadd scarslie so sone pitched his pavilions, but hee was certified of the deathe of his sonne Sweno, cheefe rewler of Norwaye, whome hee looved entierlie; which thinge so gripped his harte with sorowe that hee fell into a fever and died. O worldlie welthe and pompe, allwayse fickle and unstable, and ofte comminge to ruine in the middest of the race; at what time Canutus seemed most blessed, beehowld the inevitable power of fatalitie diid quite dispatche him an other waye! wherefore his sowldiers, covenauntinge with the Normans for free pasporte, after they hadd riallie solemnized the funerall ceremonies for the kinge at Roane, they departed thither from whence they camm. Of this quarrell in Normandie the Englishe Chronicles make noe mention, nether that Canutus there deceased, as hereafter wee shall showe. Howbeit I doe not greatlie force wheare hee ether died or was buried, whose life is not unknowne.

This verteus prince a littell befoore his deathe diid nothinge more abandon then utterwardelie to be in suspense and ambiguitee beetweene goodd and evill livinge; as one that wholeie depended and was affianced on vertewe and sinceritee, which is evidentlie
manifested bie this his facte worthie perpetuall memorie. Trewlie
it chaunced him in the waye of recreation to walke bie the shore
of the sea, not farre from the haven of Sutheantonne, wheare of a
flatteringe servitor of his, who thought to tickell him in the care,
it fortuned himm to bee saluted as the moste puissante kinge of
all kinges which bare rule ether over menne, ether on the erthe,
or on the Sea; at the which greeting hee, howldinge his peace, so-
dainelie converted his minde to the contemplation of the infinite
power of Godde, desierus to reprove the vayne assentation and
flatterie of his men bie som sensuall argument, putt of his gar-
mentes, and, windinge them upp together, he satte him downe on
them as neare the water as was possible, and, perceavinge the
maine flowe greatlie to arise, he sayde, 'O water, I commande
the that once thowe towche not mie feete;' which as soone as hee
hadde spoken, whiles all menn mervayled to what ende hee didd
it, the sowrge of the sea comminge on didd wonderuslie wette
him. Then hee geevinge backe sayde, 'Beehowlde, mie lorde, yee
call mee kinge, which with all mie imperie and commandement
cannot staye or assage this littell water; wite yee for suretie that
noe mortall manne is worthie that name; there is one onelie kinge,
soothelie, the father of our Lord Jesus Christe, with whom hee
reygneth, and at whose becke all thinges are governed, heavenlie
and terrestrial. Mie nobles, let us then woorshipp him. Lett us
call him kinge; let himme have the title to bee master and lorde
of all nations; lett us not onlie acknowlege but professse allso that
hee is emperour of heaven, earthe, and sea, and none other be-
sides him.' This beeinge finished hee wente unto Winchester, and
there with his owne handes toke the regall crowne from his hedd,
and sett it on the hedd of the crucifix of Christe, which was in
the churche of the Apostles Peter and Paule, and never after
wowlde weare enie suche notable ornament on his hedde. He Canutus
died the xx. yeare of his reygne, and was buried at Winchester. He
began of his wife Emma a sonne named Canutus, whome the
Englishe coronographers call Hardi Canutus, and a daughter
named Gonnilda, who maried the emperowre called Henrie. There flourished at that time men of singuler sanctimonie, as Alphegius, of whome wee made mention beefore; whoe aboute the ixt. yeare of this kinde, at the invasion of Canterburie, the vj. yeare of his residence, was martired, and noe doubt purchased heaven; also Livingus archebussshop of Canterburie; and Athelnotus, as xxix from Augustinus, whoe was dearlie beeloved of Canutus, as one whose helpe and pollice hee used in his administration. There flowed alsoe warriers of noe lesse politique prudence then prowesse in chevalrie, as Edulphus and Hircius earles of Northumberlände, and Trugillus of Este Angles; that is to saye, Norffolk and Suffolk.
THE EIGHTH BOOKE

OF POLIDOR VIRGILL ON THE ENGLISH HISTORIE.

In the yeare of our Lorde Godde mxxxvi. the nobles weare assembled at Oxforde, abowte the election of a kinge, wherein their was great altercation. Som thought goodd to chose Haraldus, whom Canutus, his father left chefe governer over this land at his going into Normandie; others minded to preferre Canutus, begotten of Emma, as the heyre-apparrent of his father, whoe at that season governed Denmarcke. Finallie, the greater parte condiscendinge in one sentence, Haraldus, as xxxiiij. in the order of the kinges, was pronownded the sole monarche. The deathe of Canutus did noe lesse disquiet all things in foraine contries, for the Norwegians, slippinge sodainlie the coller, didd ordaine as their sufferaine prince Magnus, the sonne of Olavus, and the Danes Canutus the Thirde, to whome, bie right of inheritance, beelonged the whole imperie. And thus the ample dominion of the Danes was sodainlie appayred at this time, for as muche as the regall stemme and pedegree was allmost utterlie extinguished. The Englishe people weare not a littel carefull for the succession of their kinges. With this cogitation was especiallie sollicited one Brithovaldus, a monck of Glastonburie, whoe was afterwarde bussshoppe of Winchester, or rather of Worciter, as I find in somm authors. It was crediblie reported that duringe this anxietee, at his reste, hee seemed to see Peeter the
Apostle consecrate kinge Edwarde, the sonne of Ethelredus, at that time exiled in Normandie; and, demaundinge who showlde succeed after him, the Apostle made aunswere, 'Force thow nott on suche thingges, for the Englishe kingdom is the kingdom of Godd;' the which thinges in earnest didde so fall owte, for, notwithstandinge the Englishe nation of all thinges dothe least make accompte of the common wealthe, but are to muche assoted on the bellie, notwithstandinge it hath susteyned soe maniefowle scathes and direptions, beinge firste spoyled and raced of the Danes, secondarily of the Normans, a moste feeerce nation; and not onlie contented to bereave them of their imperie but also cleane to stripe them from their stocke. Notwithstandinge that this evel disposed people did for the moste parte abandon, disanull, and tredale under their feete the moste hollie lawse, promulgated and sacred bie the former kinges, bringinge in their owne rigorous and unequall statutes, as thei who like a viper detested the Englishe name, as consequentlie shall be declared; yeat (thankes bee to Godd) the Englishe imperie consistethe on sewer pillers, nether seemeth it likelie to fall, as that which our Lorde not a littell regardethe, for it is surelie to be thought for, that therin the studie of godlie religion dothe noe lesse daylie waxe hotte and fervente, then in other places it waxeth cowlde and faynte. Hetherto have wee sufficientlie strayed.

Haraldus succeeded into his father's kingdom, but not as heyre of his good demaynor, for hee begunne his governement with the injurius handelinge of the people. He banished his stepp mother Emma; his subjectes hee nether hadd in ennie reputation, and wonderuslie hee oppressed them, having himselfe notable vices and defaultes; but the shortenes of his life muche avayled his name, for hee died after the iiiijt. yere of his regyne; and in the selfe same yeare Athelnotus, archbusshope of Canterburie, deceased, after whome succeeded Edsinus, as xxx. in that ordre.

In the meane season, Hardie Canutus, beinge donne to understande of the death of Haraldus, forthwith taking muster of his
soldiers, and furnishinge a navie, toke his jorneie towards England, and arriving in the Kentishe coste throwghe a prosperus winde vj. dayse after his setting forthe, marched towards London, wheare, being joyfullie receaved, bie the commune consent was proclaymed kinge, whoe, counterfaytinge his brother Haraldus, beeganne his rayne with creweltie; for remembリングe the wronges donne to himme and his mother Emma, commaunded the boddie of the late buried Haraldus to bee taken owte of the grownde at Westminster, and cuttinge of the heed to caste it in the river, which beinge shortlie after founde owt bie the fishermenn was againe interred. Moreover, hee severallie ammerced and punished the nobles, for that they had beestowed the riomme which was dew unto himm. Hee levied the commonaltie with intollerable taxes and subsidies, which procuered unto him great hatred. Then, revertinge a littell to pietee, hee called home his mother Emma, leadinge as then her life in Flauders, bie whose counsell, with the assistance of Godwinus earle of Kente, a verie wittee, or rather wilie, man, hee was alltogether rewled. Edwarde camme this same yeare owte of Normandie, to visiite and salute his mother, and his brother Canutus; and tarieng but a small time hee retiered againe from whence hee cam. Som saye that at the commandement of the kinge bothe hee and his Normans that camm with him weare evel entreated, and that with muche adoe hee escaped. But moe there are which doe affirme that Canutus lovinglie entertyned his brother, which I thincke to bee lesse dissident from the trewh, for hee was a mann of his owne nature, noe lesse jentil then liberall, and especiallie in banquette, for allwayse hee gave his guestes noe lesse bownteus then trim and fine intertaynement, oftentimes feasting of the people, and suche as would eate, three sondrie times in the daye.

Hee alio was accustomed oftentimes to suppe with others, whearfor at the lengthe, being invited to the mariage of a certaine noble manne, at suche time as he satt at the banquet, on the other side of Thamis, right over against Westminster, in the village called Lamehithe, as hee was drincking, sodaynlie he died, not
without suspicion of empoysoninge, ij. yeares after the beginning of his raygne. But Saxo Grammaticus, whose credite is of som force, dothe farre otherwise contrive the storie of this time, whose hathle lefte in memorie that Haraldus, the sonne of Canutus, was made cheevetaine over the Englishemenn, who dienge before the decease of his father, Sweno, the sonne of Hestritha, succeeded him in his office; for this Hestritha, who in her widhowood maried Richard Duke of Normandie, was first espoused to one Ulvo, a Swetian, bie whome shee hadde this sonne, and thus hee specifieth that Haraldus never reignned, but that Hardi Canutus, the son of Canutus, didde sucseed in the kingdome, and that hee, goinge into Englond, when, throwghe the industrie of Sweno, the cheefe rewler, hee gave uppe the emperie to his brother Edward, on the side of his mother Emma, and begotten of Etheldredus. But for as muche as Edwarde, though shee were a towarde younge manne, yeat voyde of experience, and unripe for administration, hee therefore didd appointe for his depute Sweno, which showlde accompanie Edwarde in the regiment. Then Canutus dieng within ij. yeares after, Sweno committinge the charge of the riolme partlie to Edwarde, partlie to the sonnes of Edwinus earle of Kent, beinge his kinsmen, as we shewed beefore, hee retourned into Denmarche to clayme his dew inheritaunce, which Magnus, the sonne of Olavus, didde possesse, beinge fittinge to him no lesse bie the righte of league and composicion then accordinge to the testament of Canutus; and thus Saxo declareth how the Danish affaires camm into controversie, wherof hereafter more at large; but now lett us retire home.

The deathe of Canutus beinge divulged and knowne, the piers of this region, desieringe ether to sett them selves throughlie at libertie, or at the leaste wise to have an English name to their kinge, didd assemble together and delibered what showlde seme moste for the avayle of the contrie. Finallie, havinge especiall consideracion that under the Danishe prince as well the nobilitie as ruralls and common people weare evel regarded, owte of favor
and owte of authoritie, so the all men seemed happie in comparison of them, and perceiving now or never was the time wherein they mighte rejecte the yoke of foriners, they decreed to make Alfredus, the valiant son of Etheldredus, their kinge, and to persecute the Danes unto the death. Wherfore, prevelie sendinges for Alfredus, in violent wise eche weare they assayled the Danes. The multitude was soone stirred upp, partelie throughe their former severitee, partelie throughe the hope and occasion of recoveringe their freedom. The Danes, albeit they weare overcharged with the sodaine assautel, and astonied at this strange mutation, yet, sometimes bie fightinge, sometymes bie flieng, they indevored to repell these injuries; but in fine they weare all ether slaine, ether driven into the next continent, soe that bie the commune consente a decrees was made, that never hereafter enie Dane showlde bee elected kinge of England. Bie this meanes ceased in England the Danishe imperie, the xxviiij. yeare after that Sweno, the firste of the Danishe princes that rewed in England, obtained the whole monarchie, in the which space Etheldredus, returninge into his contrie after the decease of Sweno, reyned ij. years, and Edmundus but one, wherebie it appeareth that the imperie of the Danes surmounted not xxv. yeares in this lond. The death of Canutus didd noe lesse turne all thinges topsie-turvie in Denmarcke; for when as noe man survived to whome of verie righte the regall hereditie was apperteininge, Sweno, the sonne of Hestthia, beegotten of Ulvo the Swetian, curieng favor with certaine of the nobilitie, endeavored to obteine the same. Wherefore Magnus, kinge of Norvegians, agreinge well with his name in vertue and pollicie, toke great indignation hereat, avowchinge that this kingdom was dew unto him. Hee allwred the Danes with giftes and renowne of his valiancy from faveringe of Sweno, and therebie causinge him to desiste from his enterprise he obtayned the kingdom of Denmarcke. Sweno being thus injuriously dealt with, gatheringe aides and succours with all expedition, and confederinge with the Sweuians, his native contrimen, marched in
good ordre towards Magnus, who with noe lesse celeritee camm
into the fiele. The fight was continued from the morninge to
eventide; but in conclusion Magnus, discomfitting his adheraries,
beecam superior, and duringe his whole life governed bothe Danes
and Norways withowte enie broyles and uprores; yet, the terme
of his life being expired, Sweno possessed the Danishe riolme:
but Haroldus, the brother of that Olavus which after his decease
was acounted a saincte, obteynd Norvegia after the deathe of
Magnus. This Haroldus, puttinge to flight his brother Olavius,
as wee saide before, fledde into Byzantium, where of the barbarus
people beinge falslie accused of manslaughter hee was kaste unto a
lyon, whome as a valiaunt mann hee slewe, contrarie to the expec-
tation of all men, which was the occasion that bothe hee obtained
remission of punishemente and also licence to departe; wheare-
fore at his returne hee easlie obtained the kingdom, which as yeat
was possessed of noo manne. This place requireth that wee
showlde make somme mention of Robert Duke of Normandie and
his sonn William before wee accomplishe our treatise touchinge
Alfredus and Edward.

After Richard the iii. Duke of Normandie, as wee sayde
aboue, succeeded his brother Roberte, a pleaunant jentilman,
liberall, grave, yet noe lesse stowte then prudent, whoke kepeth
noblie his subjectes from all injurius skathes, aydinge oftentimes
his cousines and neighbours, releevinge the needie with his
substaunce, and usinge munificente dealinge towards all menne.
But hee especiallie defended Henry kinge of Fraunce, imploringe
his frindelie assisstance againste the attemptes of his mother Con-
stantia, which a littell beefore hadd nott a littell disquieted her
sonne. Of a certaine beautifull virgin, his concubine, hee begatte
his sonne William. I will heere, in the way of mirthe, declare a
prettie dog tricke or gibe as concerninge this mayden, not biecause
it is ether exceedinge honeste or verie worthie the memoriall, but
biecause there is noe lawe limited to an historie that it should kepe
enie deede secret. The first night that ever she lay with the duke
THE EIGHTH BOOK.

for shamednes she would not putt of her smocke, but when he made haste to his busines, of cowncell she forthwith slitte the upper parte thereof, and, being demaunded of himme whyle she soe didd, shee made aunswer that it didd not become her to toorne upp the skirtes thereof, which weltered aboute her legges, unto the mouth of her lorde. She is reported moreover befoore her deliverie to have dreamed that her bowells wear caried on hyghe, and unsoyled abrode through the whole circuite of Englonde and Normandie, wherbie she beeganne to conceave great hope in the puissaunce to comm of her sonn William. In fine, Robert being penitente that hee hadd with poysone destroyed his brother, and, mindinge to goe to Hierusalem for the performance of his vowe, hee commended his sonne to Henrie kinge of Fraunce, geinge him in charge that if it fortuned him to die in his voyage hee shoulde bee next Duke of Normandie: wherefore firste he went to Rome to obteine leave of Benedictus the ix. busshop, as the usage is, where he shewed his large and bownteues magnificencie, for he revestred the statue of the emperoure Constantine with a golden cloke, arguinge the Romaines of ingratitude, for that thei woslid not yearlie beestow a vesture on so worthie a prince: hee also adorned their temples with francke giftes. Thus departinge from thence it chaunced him to stray asyde from his companie, and, fallinge into reasoninge and so to altercation with a stronge stubberne clomperton, he was shrowdlie beaten of him, yeat hee kepe him from beinge hurte of his menne, grauntinge that hee hadd well deserved those stripes. From thence takinge his jorne to Constantinople and was curteuslie interteyned of the emperowe Constantinus Duca, whoe, havinge hearde befoore that the duke was full of civilitie and prettie conceytes, hee didd of pur-pose commande his servitors in no wise to geeve unto them to sitt on at dinner enie stooles that ware abouve one foote and an halfe in heyght. The duke, whoe hadd a pregnent and present witte, putte of bye and bie his upper garment, and, windinge it rounde together, sat doune thereon, likewise didde
the rest of the Normans; and when dinner was ended they
removed from thence and left their garments behind them.
The emperowre, smileinge, bidd them take awaye that which
was their owne boldelie. 'Noe,' quod the duke, 'and it lyke you
the Normans use not to carrie their chores or seates with them.'
Within a few days the duke goeing forward in his jornie was
attainted with such a diseas as hindered his ridinge, which
hee was of necessitee constreined to hyer the rurals and clownes
to carrie him on their showlders. In the mean whiles it for-
tuned that one of his earles, having gotten libertie to retire into
his contrie, required what hee shoulde say of him to his Normans.
To whome hee made this pitthie and merie answere: 'Tell them
that thou haste sene devells carrienge Duke Robert to heaven.'
Bie the devels hee meant the rude, savage, and ungodlie rusti-
calls: bie heaven, hee signified Hierusalem; biecause that from
thence came our salvation. And asonne as hee camm thether
he used suche liberalitee towards all men, that the keaper of the
temple, moved with humanitie, restored a greate peace of the
monnie customable payde for the entringe into the churche, which
hee wowlde in no wise receave, but willed it bee distributed
to the neadie. After the accomplishinge of his yowe he departed
from thence, and camm into Bithinia, a region of the lesser Asia,
right against Thracia, wheare is situate the famus Constantinople,
whee hee departed this mortall life the Mxl. yeare after the
nativitee of Christe. William, his base soonn, succeeded in the
dukedom, a man no lesse prudente then manlie, with whome
Alfredus and Edwarde longe lived in theyre banishment. But
now wee muste returne thether from whence wee made digression.

Alfredus, hearinge tidings towchinge the death of Canutus,
camm speedelie into Englonde. In this space the nobles hadd
assembled in consultation whoe shoulde bee kinge. Emonge
whome Godwinus, bie all meanes, procuered to marie his dowght-
ter Editha to the kinge, or otherwise minded to disturb all
things, to the ende that his sonne, Haraldus, might finallie obtayne
the kingdom, for all these weare his children, Haraldus, Editha, Biorno, Tosto, and Thira, the wife of Canutus. Yeat, fearinge the sharpe witte of Alfredus, and partlie distrustinge to obteine his purpose, hee beegan grevouslie to discommend him unto all men, affirminge that hee had brought with him a greate bande of the Normans, to whom hee had promised the gooddes and subsaunce of his citizens, whome in his minde hee had allreadie wounded and destined to the death. These things, whether they weare tew or false which hee spread abrode, they soe moved the minde of noble men, that eche manne beegann to seare for his owne parte, wishinge secretlie that somm such adversitee would happen as might frustrate the reigne of Alfredus. Which things when Godwinus understode, with expedition hee minded to dispatch Alfredus owte of his life. Wherfore he marched towards him with a great rowte of armed men, and, comming on him unware, slewe him and all his companie. He toke the Normans captives, and killed them from the firste to the laste. Godwinus, after this haynus facte, torninge towards London, went streight abowte newe treason. For first hee endevoered bie manie arguments to wipe awaye the crime of the sleainge Alfredus. Then hee perswaded the people to sende legates into Normandie to cowncell the vertuus man, Edwarde, the brother of Alfredus, to keepe him away. Hee didde not this, ether for that he zelouslie loved Edward, or minded the preservation of the realme: but hereoff sprange his coloured charitee; bie cause this Edwarde was a manne of jentil disposition, nothing nimble or subtile of witte, hating warre above all things, inasomutche that, being in exile, hee was wont to saye, that he had rather continuallie leade a private life, than bie the slaughter of mann to purchase a kingdom. Whearefore hee hoped ether at his pleasure to rule such a one as was ignorant in the administringe the common wealth, or, at the leaste wise, finalie to destroye himme. Nevertheless, Edwarde, feelinge the desire of his menne, and being assisted with the ayde and goods of Duke William, camm luckelie into Englonde, and
with suche ineffable gladnes was crowned kinge that all estates
cartelie prayed for his prosperus reigne; and so muche the more
bie cause hee set their hertes on fire towards him with his sin-
guler clemencie. In which thinge Godwinus havige no small
confidence (after hee hadd once felte his pulses and perceaved his
diet) wente unto him, and bie all meanes purged him as concern-
inge his brother's deathe, whome, in that hee semed to have com-
punction of penitence, the king francklie released his crime, and
consequentlie didd, of all others, most use his advice and helpe
againste his mother, Emma, with whome, for manie causes, hee
was sore agreed. For, firste, her marriage with Canutus, the
enemie of the contrie, was objected against her; then, that she
spared to succoure and releve her banished children; and,
finallie, that it was bruted how she imagined their utter destruc-
tion: for the which false criminations this verie hollie matrone
was spoyled of all her substauence, at the instigation of Godwinus,
unto the which calamitee was anned that which was worse,
weetlie, the losse of her goodd name, for she was accused of un-
cleane livinge with Adwinus bishhop of Winchester, for the which
thei weare bothe their committed to prison, wheare ether of them
with other piteuslie lamented and sorowed for the mischaunce
and infamie of the other, but especiallie the indigitee and false
allegation so doloruslie pricked and tormented Emma, that, trust-
ing to her innocencie, shee openlie offered that the verie flame and
fier showlde trie her continent chastitee. Whearunto the kinge,
as one leaning more to other menn's devises than his owne, was
som what bent; and the daye was appoynted for the crewell
punishing of his mother; who, being guiltie of nothinge but goodde,
(for trewthe was on her side) and havinge admonishment (as menne
saye) in the nighte season, while shee tooke her reste, bie Saincte
Swithe, at her time assigned goeng on coulters made redd
whotte with fier was nothinge hurte, acquited her good name and
chastitee (as the owlde sainenge is) with fier and water; with the
which miracle the kinge being moved, didd ever after, with great
reverence, love and honor his mother. This was done in the \textsuperscript{1\textsuperscript{st}} year of the reign of Edward. In the which year certaine Danish pirates, arriving in Sandwich, robbed and wasted all the sea costes; yet shortlie they weare all withoute difficultie either slaine or putt to flighte. After which time, bie the space of xix yeares wherein Edward governed, there was noe warres within the riolme, but that ether it was extinguished with small slaughter, or with owte enie notable eande chaunged into peace, which trewlie I maye bowldlie saye was doonn bie the divine providence, for it seemeth that God was willinge that the prince, which from his beginninge determined noe lesse to deserve well of religion then of men, who was norished, delighted, and fostered in these studies, shoulde bee voide and free from all suche fanaticke cares and travailes as everie wise mann accounted frayle and slipperie, to thend he mighte the more securelie use the contemplation of things celestiall.

In this season Godwinus espousd his dowhter Editha, beegotten of Thira the sister of Canutus, not of his, otherwise as somme menn falslie conjecture, to king Edward, and was in wonderus authoritee with him untill suche time as great discorde arose betwene them. The cause thereof was Eustachius, earle of Bononia, who had married the kinges sister longe beeore, whoe, as soone as hee sette foote on the Kentishe shore, hee toke the streyght way to Canterburie, in minde to visite the king. Whereas chauncing a fraye or skirmisher to bee made betweene the citi-zens and his menn, in soe muche that one of the inhabitants was slayne. Wherewith the townesmenn, being generallie aggrieved, toke their weapons in hande and invaded the band of Eustacius, and slew manie thereof. Then Eustachius, as one all enraged, sett furiuslie on the citizens, so that on ether parte they sker-mished sharplie: but Eustachius, being sore addread, for that his menn fell downe deade on all hands, ceasinge littell and littell to fight, fledde to London to the kinge, and declared the injurie donne unto himme in the breache of the rightes of hospitallitee.

\textit{Camd. Soc.}
The kinge toke the matter in verie evell parte, and commandde the transgressours to be severlie punished. The Kentishe menne repayed to their Earle Godwinus, beseechingis his assistaunce againste the Frenche men, the mortall enemies of the Englishe name and nation, makinge huge clamor that they offerd the first wronge in sleange the citizen of Canterburie, alleginge that they made noe tumulte, but onlie according to lawe in the waye of repellinge force bie violence. Godwinus, being somewhat stirred upp with this unseamlie dealinge, thought not gooodd to obeye the kinges proclamation; but, immediatlie furnisheinge an armie, was fullie bent to garde his men from all harmses. The kinge, on the other side, more and more stricken with indignation, sente a rowte of soldiers against Godwinus, beinge proclaymed a traytor, with all his familie. But fewe dayse befoore they camm to the verie poyncte to deale hande strokes, Godwinus, all dismayde with the king’s puissauce, dispaying to have the upper hande, fledd with his sonnes into Flaundres. Then Edward, punishinge the guiltie parsons, dispatched away the dowghter of Godwin, publishinge and makinge confiscation of her gooddes. Godwinus, in the meane while, througe the ayde of Baldwinus earle of Flaundres, whose dowghter was maried to his son Tosto, prepared a navie, and forthwith infested all the sea costes of the Ilonde, with whome bie and bie the king’s shippes grapeled. Howbeit, befoore they bickered, bie the instillation of Godde, as it is well to be thought, the capitaines advertised one the other how fowle a thinge it weare that one so noble a nation showldie comm to confusion throughe their owne power. So that reconciliation and concorde forthwith ensewed; and Godwinus, restored to his former condition, renderinge to the kinge his sones Biorno and Tosto as hostages of his fidelitee; and this noble prince humblie againe receaved his wife. But Godwinus, notwithstandinge, cowld bie noe humaine pollicie escape his well deserved penaltie: for in fewe dayse after it happened that his sonne Heraldus, ministriing drincke to the kinge at his dinner, slipped with the one foote
and hadd almoste fallen, and yet so recovered himselfe and
stayd it with the other that hee saved the wine from spillinge.
Then his father, which sette with the kinge, sayde, 'Loe now how
one brother helped another.' This worde, thoughe it were spoken
in jeste, yeat it soe troobled the kinges minde, that, remem-
bringe his brother Alfredus, hie tourned towards Godwinus, and
sayd, 'If it hadde not beene for thee, even soe hadde mie
brother succoured mee.' This evil disposed mann, fearing the
kinges ire, beganne to excuse him selfe, and to appyeyle to
the deite in the witnessinge of his innocentie, adjoining thereto a
solemne othe, as thoughe he hadd debated the matter with
an ignorant creature, protestinge in this wise: 'Most redowted
prince, if ever I wrought enie thinge, ether in the death of thie
brother or againste thee I praye our Lorde this pece of breade may
choke and stranguil mee.' Which as soone as hee hadd spoken,
and putt it in his mouthe, his gawes closed, and he was throteled,
with such terrible and sodaine deathle recompencinge his willful
murther. This was thend of Godwines life, whoe, accordinge to
the ghospel, which biddethe us aske and have, didde aske and re-
ceaved not the pardon of his sinnes as he oughte, but deathe, meate
for his offence. I wolde God in our tyme manie woulde bee stricken
with this example, which knowe not how to steppe one foote ex-
cepte perjurie leade the waye.' At this tyme deceased Emma the
king's mother, and William duke of Normandie, at the king's re-
queste, camm to England; for Edwarde was verie desiers to seeme
to gratifie the duke for his owilde hospitalitie and interteinement,
as one not unmindefull of gooed toornes; wherfore he receaved
him princelie, and bowntefulie rewarding him with many presents,
beesides all thesse deades of humanitee, as I finde in somme au-
thors, kinge Edwarde promised to make him his heyre if it
showde chaunce him to die withowte issewe of his boddie, and
that noe lesse he signified to himm while he sojorned with him in
Normandie; which thinge was a mayme to his contrie, as in an
other place shall bee specified.
King Edwarde delivered unto duke William at his departure Biorno and Tosto, the pledges of Godwinus, that they might bee kepe in Normandie. Here it is expedient that I geve the reader warninge that certayne writers, nothynge skilled in antiquites, doe call these the sonnes of Godwinus, and manie others bie straunge names, pervertinge the historie, and causinge it to bee of more obscuritie.

In the xij. yeare of the reigne of kinge Edwarde, hee having gotten peace and quietnes both on sea and on lande, and foreseeinge noes lesse the saftie of his people then himselfe, as a man naturallie bente to the loyvinge of all menn, which is the verie grownde of right and foundation of the lawe, hee minded aboue all things to make such lawes as hee thowghte good and expedient at that time, surelie weare manie lost in ure, made firste of the Britons, then of the Saxons, and last of all of the Danes; soe that manie menn measuring all things accorndinge to their private commoditie oftentimes applied for theer purpose iniquite in the steade of justice. Wherfore king Edwarde, owte of the aboundance of lawse, picked forthe everie moste holysom and necessarie decree, ordeininge onlie certayne selected to bee used as indifferent rules and prescripts of good life unto all degrees, which bie the poste-ritee weare termed common lawes; and whereas they greatlye complayned and muttered at the takeinge away of them bie the Normans, whose assigned others in theyr roomes, they proceeded also to reclaime them agayne with weapon as the better parte of their life, often plaguenge suche kings as denied to ratifie them with their pristinate power, thinckinge them to bee unfruitfull, as hereafter shallbe made declaration. This foundacion of justice being laide, to the ende that the ensample of charitee, liberalitee, and devotion might from him to others flowe as from a fowntaine, the kinge with great diligence beganne to releeve the poore, to have reliligion in more syncere reverence, to deserve well of all sortes, by the which vertewse hee beecame more acceptable unto Godd, that through the assistance of him he wrought so wonderaslie
that, if I shoulde mention all his miraculous doings, time woulde 
seuer fayle then matter; yeat will I recite certayne verie worthie 
the memoriall. When as on a time the collectors and gatherers of 
pensions hadd exacted a great somme of monnie of the people, 
and browghte a marveylous heape their of beefore his face for to 
delight and make hime merie, hee seemed of a sodaine to see the 
devill plaieing and skippinge aboute it, and therefore as a moste 
exercable thinge detestinge it, hee commanded it forth with to bee 
carried owte of his sighte and to bee restored to his subjectes. 
Farder more, hee is reported at the divine service, in the eucha-
ristiall sacrament, to have seen the Lorde Jhesus in the fowrme 
of a childe (whome also a verie hollie man, named Leofredus, 
arle of Mercia, didde beehoude a goodd season); and the kinge 
immediatlie burst forthe in great laughter, and beinge requiered 
to utter the occasion thereof, he made aunswere that hee sawe the 
Danes hastinge to invade Englonde, but for that their cheefe and 
mayne shippe was drenched they retirde againe into Denmarcke. 
This thinge in verie deade consequentlie ensewed, which was a 
manifest argument that Godd hadde especiall regarde of the 
realme. Moreover, as one foreseene in thinges to comm, hee 
divined that in fewe yeares the Normans woulde bie violence en-
joy the kingdom, for Haraldus at the same time ernestlie seweng 
unto himme for licence to goe into Normandie to visite his bre-
threne, whoe as wee saide weare geaven in hostage to the duke 
albeit perchaunce hee conceaved som other thinge in his hedd), 
the kinge made this aunswere, 'Goe this waye, seinge I cannott 
withhowlde thee, butt, beeleeve mee, thou attemptest a thing noe 
lesse hurtfull to thie selfe then thie contrie.' Haraldus departed, 
and when a whiles hee hadde desiered the duke to render his 
pledges, whom he required not as alltogether his peticion weare 
unknowne to kinge Edwarde, hee tooke juste occasion to open 
his purpose unto himme, for the duke, whoe a good season hadd 
lived in hope to attayne the Englishe realme, shewed to Haraldus 
how that often times the kinge hadd promised to make himme his
heyre if hee never begatte children; and, for as muche as hee was now past hope of procreation, hee entretaid him in enie case earnestlie to sollicite the matter with him, which if he could bringe to passe, then should hee have just cause to looke for great rewarde and highe honors at his hande. Haroldus bounde him selfe bie othe to farther these matters to the uttermoste of his power, and obtayninge one of his brothers, named Tosto, he retourned into Englond, and in good ordre expresed all thinges to kinge Edwarde which hee hadd communiciate with the duke: whereunto the kinge, as it is reported, aunswered thus, ‘Didd not I shewe thee beforre that these mischeeves thow woldest bringe into this contrie if thow showldest goe unto duke William; but Lorde, I praye thee, graunte that this eevell chaunce not, or if it doe chaunce that it befall not in owre time.’ Whearbie wee maye easlie gather that ether king Edwarde kepte not his promisse, which peradventure in the beginninge he skarce advisedlie made to the duke concerninge the hereditie of the kingdom, according to the guise and fasshion of banished parsons, whoe francklie promissee seas of silver and mountaines of goulde, least theye showld bee destitute and forsaken of theyr frindes: or rather that hee made noe promisse at all, as it is more credible and likelie.

This goodd kinge was accustomed with onlie towechinge, bie the divine power of Godde, to heale the swellinge in the throate, called in Latini struma, in Italiand scrophula, in Englishe usuallie now termed the kings eavell; this disease beinge like littell acornes, and commonlie creapethe throughghe the throate and brestes. This immortall gifte, as it weare bie lineall propagation, descended to the kinges succeedinge: for eeven presentlie the English kinges bie towechinge, and recitinge of certaine himnes and ceremonies, doe heale these lothesom swellings. Bie thesea heauenlie tokens kinge Edwarde was declared to bee verie leefe and deare unto Godde, and now beeinge in the xxiiij. yeare of his reygne, as of credible reporte hee was enfowrmed that a ringe
was browghte unto him bie certayne poore menn from Hyerusalem, which hee beeore hadd geven secretlie to a neadie creature for the loove of Sainct Jhon the Evangelist, bie thease divine admonitions the kinges deathe was signified, for not muche after, being sore diseased, hee was therof in his sleape assertayned of our Savior Christe, to whome shortelie after hee yealded his innocent ghoste, after the xxiij. yeare of his reigne. Hee was buried in the churche at Westminster, and successivelie for his demerits ascribed emonge the saincts. His foresayd ringe was with greate veneration longe preserved in the same churche, bie cause it was medicinalle againste starke and deade limmes and the fallinge sickenes, if the parties weare touched therewith that weare attainted with suche passions; bie meanes whearoft it camm in ure that kinges of Englonde weare woonte on Good Frydaie to hallow ringges with muche ceremoniall solemnitee, which these that weare never were molestled with enie suche sickenes. This hollie king hadd noe issew of his boddie. In his time flourished divers notable menn, as Edsinus archebuss hoşp of Canterburie, whoe was resident xi. years, and in his rome succeeded Robert bissop of London, borne in Normandie. Hee at the first was greatlie beeloved and reverenced of kinge Edward; but afterward, where as he perswaded that his mother Emma, who was falslie appeached of uncleanes, showlde acquite her selfe bie that fierie triail, and that shee was escaped that perill, as beeore wee mentioned, hec repentinge and fearinge fledde into the next continent, and theare, after the second yeare of his residence, with the verie languor of his minde was quickelie consumed. Next unto himensewe Stigandus, xxxij. in the ordre of the archebussopps. Wulstanus allso, bissop of Worciter, was notable for his hollie life and inestimable learninge, and therefore, after the finishinge of the shorte race of hie godlie life, hie was canonized.

Swardus earle of Northumberland, and Northumbrian borne, then floorred as prince of chevalrie, whose havinge terrible fluxe of the wombe, and feelinge his strengthe bie lillet and lillet to ap-
paire, and his life draw to the ordinarie date, hee armed himselfe at all poincte, and stode upp lustilie in his armowre, that (as Vergilius sayth) hee seemed presto to gripe with his enimie; sainge that it beeseemed not a valiant manne to die lyenge a longe like a beast, and soo departed his life, counterfayetenge in that poyncte the usage of the Nasamones, a people of Libia, which wee have sufficienctlie expressed in owre booke intituled, "De rerum inventoribus."

In the place of Swardus, who was deade, was substitute Tostus bie kinge Edwarde, whome Morcatus followed. The deathe of kinge Edwarde didd keepe the nobles verie suspence and doubtfyll on whome they shoulde bestowe that princible function, for there was not one manne meate for the government of them which hadde enie right or intereste therto, allbeit that one Edgarius, surnamed Ethelingius, begotten of Edward the sonne of Edmunde Ironside, abowte that time camme owte of Pannonia, whear he was borne, with his mother and sisters into Englonde; yet being a childe of soe small yeares hee was not feate for soo highe a regimente: furthermore, beinge put in great feare with manie oracles, which they imagined should portende the chaunge of the kingedome, they hadd allsoe in great jelowsie duke William, bothe for that hee was a Norman, and allsoe bie cause hee affirmed that the riolme was dewe unto him as the heyre lawfullie instituted bie kinge Edwarde, and soo muche the more bie cause he was adjoyned to him in kinred in the seconde and thirde degree. For Richarde the firste duke of Normandie begat Richard the second, and Emma, who, by Etheldredu s kinge of Englond, hadd Edwarde, which Edward ingendered Richarde the thirde and Roberte, who beegate duke William of his concubine. While they tossed theese thinges uppe and downe in their heads, Haraldus, the sonne of Godwinus bie the sister of Canutus, trustinge to his strengthe and kinred, pronowned hime selfe as kinge. This deade alltogether misliked not the people, whoe hadde goood affiance in his valiantnes; wherefore, accordinge to ordre of his predecessors, hee was consecrate kinge bie Aldredus
THE EIGHTH BOOK.

archebusshopp of Yorcke, or, as som saye, with owte all ceremo-
niall circumstances, hee putt the crowne on his owne heade,
which was don in the year of our Lord MLXVJ. Hee, in the
firste begininge of his dominion, callinge to minde that violentlie
hee possessed the diadem, for the better deservinge of all mens
benevolence, he omitted noe occasion to exhibite and shew
his liberalite, jentilnes, and affabilitee, for the great taxes of
his people ether he diminished or quite toke them awaye, hee
enhaunsesthe stipend of his soldiers and wages of his ser-
vauntes, not forgettinge his diligent endevoure in the beehalfe of
Goddes trewe religion. Whiles hee shewed this popularitee and
mildenes to all sortes, sodainlie camm embassadours from duke
William of Normandie, who well understoode the whole estate of
administringhe the commonwealthe, whose embassage grated muche
on this poyncte, that hee would call to minde the othe which he
sware to the duke, and stande to his covenault, as reason re-
quired; whereunto Haraldus made aunswere, "Bie all meanes
possible I wolde bee glad to pleasure the duke, but yeat soe I minde
to gratifie him that hee shall not desier the kingdom which I
all readie doe possess." William of Normandie hearing this aun-
swere, as one that minded firste to assay all things bie wisdom
beefore the clatteringe of armes, bie legats yet agayne solicited
himme, that if soo bee that in all other things hee wowde flie
towche, yeat that hee woud not fayle as toschinge the mariaghe
of his doughter, whose, albeit she was not ripe for wedlocke, yeat,
as somme menn constantlie affirme, hee made full espowsall pro-
misse of her at his abode in Normandie. The name of this virgin,
that ever I cowld learne, is not rehersed of enie mann, I thincke
bie cause she lived not long. But Haraldus, who I weene was
enticed therto bie his evel spirite, staringe on the embassadours
with prowde and sterne cowtenance, sayed hee wowlde perfowme
nether of them, and sent them packinge with that cuttid aun-
swere, and, leaste he should bee taken unprovided, hee prepared
his shippes and warrores for the sea, mindinge bothe by water

W. of
Normandy
demanded
that Harold
sholde kepe
his othe
and promises
made in
Normandy,
which was
denayed by
Harold,
wherupon
W. made
his warres
in Ingland.
and lande to repell the Normans from his borders, if they camm
to bee revenged. The duke, when bie his legats he understode
the haute answere of the kinge, hee called his men to counsell,
and diligentie conferred concerninge warre to bee made in Englond.
Haraldus in the meane while beganne to be infested with
domesticall dissention throughe the meanes of his brother Tosto.
But in the ende wee may make all thinges playne, here must
I recognise som things more deepelie. There was in Haraldus,
from his verie childehoode, manie trimme giftes bothe of
boddie and minde, excellent beawtie in all his yeares, whear-
in was noe lesse dignitee then favore, great strenthe, docile-
lite and towardnes in all artes, marvaylous knowlege bothe in
ridinge and in armes, which thinges enkendeled the love of all
menn towards himm, and especiallie of kinge Edward. On the
other side his yonger brother named Tosto (whoe as wee shewed
beefore camm with himme out of Normandie) soe maligne and
envied at these his manisfowlde commendable qualittees, that on a
time, in the king's presence, he strake at the hedde of Haraldus,
and awhiles skirmished with himme; and, beinge for the same
unseemelie facte blamed of his prince, hee departed to Hereforde,
wheare, for that hee evell intreated the companie and bande of
Haraldus, the kinge banished him; and hee toke his voyage into
Fraunce: whearfor, as soone as hee hearde of the death of
king Edwarde, hee gathered shippes on all sydes, hee proclaimed
open warrs againste Haraldus, and, takinge the Isle of Wyghte,
hee spoyled the same. Then, bendeinge towards Kent, hee an-
noyed that whole coste with robberies, which thinge fell owte
merveluslie eevell for Haraldus: for he was constrained to revoke
his armie and navie, lately addressid towards Normandie, for the
repelling of this distres, which thinge beinge once blowne abrode,
Tosto, for feare, marched towards North Humberland, and theare
landinge his garrisons, made greete slaughter of people. Yeat
partelie of the inhabitants, who hated himme as a common theefe
and rover, partelie of the kinges shippes, hee was driven into Scot-
land, with noe lesse detrement of his navie then of his menne.
THE EIGHTH BOOK.

This broyle was skarcelie so soone quenched as an other more daungerus evell insewed in the necke thereof: for Tosto, when hee sawe small hope of succours in Scotlonde, he boysed his sayles and went into Norvegia, havinge goodd hope to be releeven bie the goods and puissauce of the kinge thereof, named Haraldus, whoe was of renowned fame as then in all contrys. Hee earnestlie requested him that hee wowlde vowchsafe to ayde him in soe a profitable a quarrell; and with manie gowlden promisses drave himm soe farre in to the blinde desire of purchasinge a kingdome, emong these flambes of domesticall sedition, that he entred the Sease, and with prosperous wind was driven to the Englishe shore, even to the entrie of the river Tine, which runnethe bie Newcastle, a fayre towne within the territorie of Deirham. I cann in noe wise condiscende to those coronographers which make mention that the Norwegian kinge, after hee understode the dissention of the two brothers, of his owne accorde, and meere desire of imperie, attempted these warrs, which is indeed soe far distante from all truthe that unethes it hathe enie face or likelihoode of veritee: for who is soe unwise to beleve that Haraldus, a grave and prudent prince, unsilful bothe of the menn and places (for neether hadd hee intercourse with the Englishe nation, nether cowld he claime enie righte in them), wolde enterpris soe longe and uncertaine a voyage, nether knoweng what daungerus lurcked therein, nor cowldwe well perceave emolument or proffetts ensewinge. Wherefore it is likelie that hee was called forthe of Tosto, as Saxo witnessethe, whose credite must nott all together be frustrate, especiallie in relation of his owne contrys affaires. Wherefore Heraldus and Tosto, a fewe dayse abydinge at Tinemowythe for the relaxation of their sowldiers, and the better preparaunce of theire battayle, in fine toke on their waye, settinghe their menn in ordre, with whom the two brothers Edwinus and Morcatus, earles of Mercia and North Humberland, didd encounter with a reason-able armie. The onseett was sounded on bothe sides, and the fight beganne, and a good while endevered doubtfull: but at
the lengthe the Englishemen beinge encompassed with too huge a multitude of enemies was overcommed, and yealded themselves, perfourminge hostages. Kinge Haraldus, whoe hasted to succoure his subjectes, beinge certified in his jorne of the evel adventure, was nothinge dismayed, but with more expedition after iiiij. dayse cam to Staunford, wheare the Norwegians weare encamped a litell beyonde the river Derwente, and kepeth the bridge, least their enemies should sodainlie passe over. The next day, puttinge there armes in araye, the kinge aproched nearer that he mighte conducte his men over the bridge, wheare a great parte of the daye hee was hindered of his passege bie the onlie manlie feats of one of the Norwegians, whoe, being assigned his standinge on the bridge for the defence therof, when he sawe the Englishemen hastelie rushortlinge thitherward, hee wente to the foremost steppe therof, and rowlinge his ieyes ruthefullie abowte his hedde, hee first slewe one and then another, and afterward manie of them hee ether put abacke or killed them forthe righte, while they strived to winne the bridge; with this marvellous fortitude hee soe amazed his adversaries, for as muche as alone hee withstoode suche a multitude, that with one consent they ymagened to slay bie some deceyte. The bridge was then all of woodde, and the middell pere therof was full of chinckes and ristes; whearbie, while certaine helde him taske in fightinge, one goenge privelie underneathe him with a boate perced his bowells with a darte, and soe bie that sleghte this mann, whose name deserved immortalitee, fell downe deade after greate slaughter, not voyde of memorie and fame. Haraldus, after the winninge of the bridge, camm on backe of their enemies while they wandered at pleasure, slayinge at the firste onsett the Norwegian kinge and his brother Tosto, which beinge once knowne, all the reste betooke themselves to flighte. The occision of this pursueite and chace redownded to the utter distrucion of the Norwegian parte, as there wheare we more pricked them forwarde then valiance; nether ware the Englishemenne free from detrement, or cleare from blood shedd.
The remainders of Norvegians whoe weare lefte for the preservation of the shippes, as soone as they harde of the death of the kinge bie suche as fledde to them, they loosed their shipps, and sodaynlie beinge caried owte of the sighte of the lande they directed their race into their contrie, whether as soone as they camme, they replenished all sortes with dolorus mourning for this soe great a plague. All Norway beecom lamentable, and beeinge berefte of such a noble prince it shortlie beecamm servile to the Danes. It lothes mee in this place to note the grosse negligence of certaine Englishe writers whose contende that this warre was begonne of the Danes, not of the Norwayes, under the regne of Harvicus, whearas, indeade, none of their kings was soe named. For Sweno, who indeade at that season was kinge of Denmarcke, was soe busied at home that hee cowlde not entend foreigne wars; whearfore I wouuld say, that Tosto was not so fonde as to requeste him of ayde; but trewlie even of the vrie Englishe affayers those writers (whose names I willinglie forbare) doe ofte times write all things soe diverslie that a man wold thincke they hadd never sene the cronicles of that nation, which is most manifestlie proved bie there varienge bothe in places and mens names. This I thought good to advertise, partlie that this one admonition mighte suffise, partelie that their incurie may not be a blemishe to our historie, when the readers of suche matters shall perceave the diversitee of it: but lette us prosecute the reste. Kinge Haraldus, greatlie rejoicing in this victorie, went unto Yorcke, that he mighte re-fowrme and appease the province, being tossed in the waters of soe manie battayles.

In the meane season William duke of Normandie was certified bie espialls that the English menne weare busied in the Norvegian warrs, and that the sowthe costes weare kept with noe garrison, wheare hee minded to sett his shippes at rode; wherfore choosinge forthe the howre of the yowthefull parsones, hee fraught his shippes, and, with the good hope of all his fiers, hee speedelie sayled into England with xxx. shippes and above, and landed at
the village named Hastings, and there assemblinge his companie
he pitched his tents. Even there he is reported to have hadde a
token and ominous prognostication of this imperie to comm, for at
his first stepping owte of his shippe he slipped with the one
legge, and, stayeng on the other, didd thruste it verie deape in the
sondes, which being espied, a certayne citizen rejoyning for gladd-
nes, skipping, sayde, 'O duke, thow howdlest Englonde on sewr
foote.' But the inhabitants of the places adjoyninge, being astonied
at the sodaine arrivall of soe great an armie, spedelie certified the
kinge of all things bie their letters, who was mervalus pensife for
this sodaine and unminded affaires. Moreover, in the battayle of
the Norways hee allmoste loste the cheefe puissaunce and flowre
of his soldiers: yea, and manie of them which as yeat weare ex-
tant weare verie maliciouslie bente, for that the late bootie was
unequallie distributed, whome for goodd reason he hadd in
ielowsie. With which things allbeit Haraldus weare pricked,
yeat as he was of noble corage, soe at the first tidings he chaunged
his pretensed jornie, and bie and bie assemblinge his people, hee
was compelled to repayre towards London, and soe to his adver-
sarie, indifferentlie augmentinge his armie, while all suche resortede
unto him as regarded the healthe of their contrie. Wherfore, tra-
veling x. miles farder, he pitched his pavilions neare unto his ene-
mie. The Norman also moved his tentes and drew into sighte
of the counterparte, as all in readines to doe battayle. Here
have I mine authors affirminge that manie conditions weare offered
on bothe sides, that the matter mighte bee pacified without blood-
shedde; howbeit ether of them made refussall as they who minded
to assaye the chaunce of battayle, and therfore earnestlie admo-
nished and stirred up their enemie to the fighte. But Haraldus
firste callinge his companie together made this oration: 'Yow
have hearde eftsones (I dare saye, mie noble warriors,) that our
aunciters and forefathers obtayned this rioll kingdom at the firste
not without great travayle, deadlie wars, and piteus effusion of
bloodde; yow are not ignoraunt howe perpetuallie they have acc-
quited and clensed the same from the vexation and incursions of their borderers; yow know assuredlie that bie their vertew and prowes they have soe enlarged the same that now at this presence some nations feare our wealthie and power, somm regions envie and repine at the same; owr confines and neighbours are adreade, whoe daylie fall at our feete for peace and tranquillitee; the barbarus alienes and foriners malignethe therat, who being pressed and griped at home with the streyghtnes and exilitee of all things, keepe there teethe watering at other mens goods, and, for verie hunger stervinge, are fayne more like roges and villains then accordinge to the right martial lawes to take their weapons in hand and in forayne contries desperatly to endaunger themselves to a thousand perills. This was the verie reason whie the Danes soe manie years annoyed us; this was the cause that the Norwegians (ceasinge to reherse enie more) didd invade this our awncient monarchie, whome yowe bie youre worthie valiance have putt to flight and utterance: finallie, there is noe other quarel indeade whie the Norman dothe now desier to have adoe with us, surelie a kinde of people descended from the Danes, whome we have often vanquished, whome wee accounte our vassayles, and have yoked with servilitee. Nevertheles this William, the base sonne of an whorishe concubine, gathering a bande of theeves, dothe nowe intende to robbe us of our goods, to pollute this our excellent riolme, to extirpe and destroy the nobilitie; whearefore I lovinglie advierte yow to bee of trustie and present corage, and wheras, bie the helpe of Godd, yow shall enter on this battayle, call to minde that in youre right hands consisteth the saftie and healthe noe lesse of youre selfe then of the whole Englishe nation. If wee shall overcomm we shall for ever deliver our contrie from the injuries of our adversaries; if wee ourselves bee vanquished (which Godde forbedd) we shall die in the behoofe of our common wealthie, which is the goodliest thing in the worlde.' When hee hadd thus sayde, with great showtes eche mann made a signe that withowte all feare they wowld ronne on their ad-
versaries. On the other parte, the Duke encouraging his men sayde thus: 'Whethersoever I turne mine ieyes (mie moste faytheful and valiant subjects,) I see yow all full of corage and strengthe; I behowlde allsoe yow, mie feeres and confederats, not withowte a gladde herte, howe noblie, beesides yowr faythfulnes, yow agree with Rollo, the beginner of our line and nation, in vertew and valiance; trulie the verie same imperie which hee with unspeakable toyle comprised in a land of hostilitee, owre predecessors bie there manwhoode have worthelie amplified, and yow yowre selves have princelie supported and made moste flowrishinge; whereunto nowe bie Godds favor and permission yow shall adjoyne Englonde, which indeade is owres bie the promisse and gifte of that worthie prince our kinsmanne kinge Edwarde; whearfore wite ye well, mie lordes, that wee make noe warres against the londe, but against Haraldus, the sonne of the traytor Godwinus, wrongfullie withholdinge it, mindinge bie all meanes to dispossesse himme, and rewarde him with deserved penaltie for the breache of his othe, as one in whome is noe credite, noe estimation of syncritte, noe feare of the divine Power, who with thesee intollerable offences (as it is justlie to bee thoughte) hath wonderuslie provoked Gods wrath and indignation; whearfore the victorie shall bee owres, whearof the greater the hope is, soe mutche the more ernestlie addresse yowre selves herto, as menn that shall fighte for an assewered and present rewarde.'

With these advertisements the mindes of eche parte beinge enflamed, the day befoore the Ides of Octobre, bringinge forthe their armies, and hoyinge theire standers, and according to the auncient guise soundinge the blooddie onsett in great showtes and malicius ranckowre, they rann together, yeat first spending their shotte and dartes, and after takinge theire brighte swords in their handes. The Englishemen, as mindefull of their owld worthines, waxed verie hotte and coragius; the Normans manfullie resisted, as voyde of all feare; the combate was mainteyned with great rigor. Thus the battayle a whyle endeweringe on
æquall condition, Haraldus with his light horsmen entered the vawarde and souccered the travayled persons and restored freshe in the roowme of the maymed. In the meane season the Nor
man capitaine seinge the Englishemenn enforced them selves to doe feates of armes, hee commanded his horsmen to rushe into the middest of the countrer parte to breake their aray; but perceavinge them nether able one foote to drive backe the Englishemen and to bee sryken doune on all sides, as a politque governor hee thoughte beste to dissemble sfienge awaye, and privelie commanded his men to abate their violence, and to retrayte a littell, that their enemies folowinge might loose their ordre, for the Englishes people, which weare fewer in nombre, hadd pitched themselves orderlie together againste the multitude, wherefore the Normann, seinge his menne geeve grownede, and the enemie beginne intentivelie the chase, he forthwith placed a portion of his horsmenn and freshe footemenn privilie in a place not farre from the maie battaille, sodainlie to sett uppon their adversaries. Thus the broyle waxed greate, bie reason they fayned to torne their backes, they gave yeat a littell more grounde. Then the Englishes parte beinge triumphant, as they whoe reckened the victorie allreadie in their right handds, lefte their aray, and skatteringe them selves in the persewte, alyghted on the place wheare the trayne and ambushment laye. The Normans thronged owte in sharpe assawte on the Englishes; thus beinge dissevered, and running abowte them in a ringe, hindered their passage and made great slawghter. It is wonderus to be towlde with how presente spirits and bowlde harte, with what force the Englishes menne, beinge cleane owte of ordre and encompassed of theire enemies, didd resiste, nothing abating the fight, whilst noblie theyr kinge encoraged them, fowght in presence, and worthelie assisted them. But after they saw his braines roved thowghhe with a darte, and him fallinge deade from his horsse, then they piteuslie quayled, som saving themselves bie flighte, and the reste beinge slayne. Duke William after this victorie rejoiced more then cann bee ex-
pressed, and is reported the nighte enseuing to have hard a voyce from above, sayinge, 'O! William, thow haste nowe vanquished, thow and thine offspriung shall heare regne.' Thus it commeth to passe that of those thinges wee dreame which wee earnestlie desier. The nexte day was dedicated to the gatheringe of spoyle and refreshinge of their werie bodies, which beinge done, the duke desieringe to use the oportunitee of his victorie, toke his voyage towrderes London, and from all coste the people mette with himme, and for feare yealded to his mercie: but a more convenient place in the nexte booke shall make relation herof.

After this discomfite the earles Edowinus and Morcatus, which escaped in this great overthowe, fled to London, in minde to deliberat what weare beste to bee donn; but there a mann cowlde have hearde nothinge but dolefull lamentacion, neither seane enie thinge but sorowfull visages.

This was a most noble fighte, and supported with the exceeding occision of ether parte, to the nombre of more then xx. thow-sand menne, wherin the whole Englishe puissance and imperie camm to ruine, which was portended bie a comete, or blasing starre, of woonderfull bignesse, which appeared manie dayes. Haraldus was fownde emonge the deadd carkasses of his soldiers, and his corps was restored to his mother Thira bie his enimie. It was buried in the churche of the hollie crosse at the village named Waltham, which hee beegann to bylde, or rather restored, as appeareth bie the shortenes of his life. There was an abbay of secular chanons, and is distante from London abowt xii. miles, wherunto hee gave fayer possessions. The river Lea ronnethe bie Waltham, which divideth the Essex from Hertfordshier.

Haraldus was xxxvj. in the orde of the kings from Cerdicius, whoe, beinge the verie laste of the Englishe line, at one verie in-stance of time was within the revolution of a yeare berefte bothe of his life and kingdom, in the yeare of our Lorde Godd mlxvii., and the dxvj. yeare after the comminge of the Englishe people into Brittaine, under the conducte of Hengestus, in the which
space the reignes and dominions greatlie altered. The first was the Kentishe kingdom, which hadd originall the ccccl. yeare of our Salvation; and after that vj. other kingdoms hadd their beginnings at other times, as aboove wee have convenientlie specified; which all for that in conclusion thei were resolved into the Westerne kingdom, wee must neades speake somewhat towchinge the duracion therof. The reigne of the West Saxons, Cerdicius being the firste fownder therof, beganne dxxi. yeare after the nativitee of Christe, and lxxi. after the arrivall of the Englishmen, and there unto, within the space of ccccxvij. yeares ensewinge, wear annected the other realms, which was in the dccccxxxvij. yeare of our Salvation, at the which time Adelstanus, the sonn of Edwarde the elder, after the xiiij. yeare of his reigne, receaved into allegiance and homage the Northumbrians, putting to flighte Analaphus and Gothofredus, the sonnes of the Dane Sithricus, as wee beefore made mention in owre vj. booke: bie meanes whearoof hee was the first of the Englishe kinges that attained the whole monarchie, which endeured abowte an cxxvij. yeares after, unto the death of Haraldus, whoe was vanquished bie the Normans, yet not alltogether sownde and inviolate, for in this discours xxi. yeares weare spente in Danishe dominion and reygne; whearfore the Westerne regiment, bie dewe computation, ceased the dxlvij. yeare after that Cerdicius, their firste prince, obteineth jurisdiction in the Ilonde, and the dcvij. after the comminge in of the Englishemen, and finallie the mlxvij. yeare of our Salvation, at the which time William duke of Normandi, bie the overcomminge of Haraldus, gotte the kingdom. And thus doe all humaine affaires ebbe and flowe, soe that nothinge is so certaine as incertayntee it selfe, and continuall chaunge ether into better or into woors.
INDEX.

ABINGDON, 207
——— abbey of, 236
Achais, son of Effinus, K. of Scots, 187
Achea, St. 199
Addax, K. of Northumbria, 156
Adelardus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Adelwaldas, or Adelwaldus, archbishop of York, 176, 236
Adelstanus, 233
Adelstanus, or Athelstanus, K. 176, 228, 231, 307
Adelstanus, St. 197
Adelwoldus, son of K. Alfred, 221
——— slain, 225
Adulphus, archbishop of York, 264
Adwinus, bishop of Winchester, 288
Ægida, 212
Aemonia, Isle of, 6
Aer, or Air, 7
Aetius, 88, 103, 104, 108, 109, 165
——— Picts' wall said to have been made by the
Captains of, 103
Agathyrri, 75
Agnerus the Dane, 175, 202, 206
——— kills St. Edmund, 144
Agricola, Julius, 17, 66, 77
——— his government, exploits, and civilization
of the Britons, 77, 78, 79, 80
Aidanus, 167, 169
Alanus Earl of Richmond, 172
Alban, St. put to death, 89

Alban, St. reliques of, searched for and enshrined,
151
——— abbey of, 152
Albanactus, 34
Albertus, archbishop of York, 178
Albinus, Clodius, 85
Alcuinus, or Albinus, 151, 218
——— account of, 218
Aldelmus, St. 245
Aldinus, K. of the S. Saxons, 138
Aldredus, archbishop of York, 264, 296, 297
Adulphus, K. of the E. Angles, 139
Alectum, the old name of Dundee, 7
Alfreda, daughter of Horgerius Duke of Cornwall, 242
Alfreda, daughter of Offa, K. of Mercia, 152
——— married to Ethelbertus, K. of the E. Angles, 140
——— flies, after the murder of her husband, to
Croyland, 141
Alfredus, 148
Alfredus, or Aluredus, son of Ethelwolh, 198
——— becomes King, 203
——— his character, 204, 205
——— his wars with the Danes, 206, 207, 213
——— sees St. Cuthbert in his sleep, 213
——— endows the Monasteries of Winchester
and Shaftesbury, 216
——— his learning, writings, and encouragement
of learned men, ibid.
——— character and offspring of, 220, 221
Alfredus, K. of Northumbria, 176
Alfredus, son of Etheldredus, 283
Alfredus, archbishop of York, 284
Alfredus, brother of Edw. Conf., 286
—— slain by Godwinus, 287
Algarus, 183, 184
Alia, King of Deira, 157
Allectus, 89
Allia, river, 43
Allobrogas, people of Savoy, 42
Alpinus, K. of Scots, 187
Alswinus, founder of St. Edmundsbury Abbey, 144
Alredus, K. of Northumberland, 177
Alochareda, daughter of Osuinus, 172, 173
Alvinus, son of Osuinus, 173
Aluredus, K. of Mercia, 155, 203
Aluredus, archbishop of York, 264
Aluricius, archbishop of Canterbury, 263
Ambelcetus, K. of Scots, 125, 186
Ambustus, M. Fabius, 42
Amestbury, nunnery at, founded, 248
Analaphus, 232, 233, 307
Ancalites, 56, 61, 73, 107
Andrew's, St., 6
Androgeus, 40
—— son of Ludde, 47, 48
Anguise, or Angus, 7, 8
Anitellus Aydanus, K. of Scots, 125
Annas, K. of the East Angles, 139, 158, 180
Antoninus Bassianus, surnamed Caracalla, 88, 195
Antoninus, Marcus, 85
Antoninus Pius, 85
Antowne, v. Southampton
Aquitan, Robert duke of, 229
Arcadius, 102
Archemalus, 47
Archigallo, 39
Argatella, Argyle, 8
Arimathaea, Joseph of, brings the Gospel to Britain, 74
Arnulphus Prince of Flanders, 230, 231, 237
—— murdered, 231

Arrius, prelate of Alexandria, 95
Arthur, son of Uther Pendragon, 121
—— exploits of, 122
—— sepulchre of, at Glastonbury, ibid.
Arviragus, 60, 63, 64, 74
Asaph, St. bishoprick of, 13
Asclepiodotus, 89
Athelmius, archbishop of Canterbury, 231
—— his death, 234
Athelredus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Atholia, Athol, 7
Augustine, St. arrives in the Isle of Thanet, 129
—— made archbishop of Canterbury, 130
Aulecci, people of Gaul so named, 209
Aurelius Ambrosius, 114, 116
—— his exploits against Hengistus and Horsus, 116, 117
—— his tomb, in the fashion of a crown of great square stones, near Amesbury, 117
Aurelius Conan, 122
Aydanus begins his residence in Holy Island, 215
Aygholdus, 239

B.

Baldredus, K. of Kent, 137
Baldwinus, E. of Flanders, 290
Berutius, K. of the S. Saxons, 138
Bardonius, 121
Badud, or Bladud, made himself wings which caused his death, 35
Bamborough Castle, 170
Bangor, bishoprick of, 13
Barnard, 231
Barnard the Dane, president of Normandy, 238, 239
Barnarde, 236
Bassianus, Antoninus, 86
Basyngstoch, 225
Bath, baths at, 35
—— monastery of, 152
INDEX.

Bath, assaulted by Sweno K. of Denmark, 254
Bebbs, city of, 170
Bedes, or Bede, the Venerable, account of, 176, 177
—— his opinion as to the origin of Britain, 27
Bedford, castle and town of, 227
Belinagate, at London, 46
Belinus or Bellinus, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 45
—— builds Caerleon, 46
—— Belinagate in London built by him, 46
Berengarius, Earl of Beoisa, 212
Berinus, bishop of Dorchester, 179
Berking, Abbey of, founded, 133
Beornus, K. of the E. Angles, 139
Bernicia, 155
Bernulphus, K. of Mercia, 153, 154
—— slain, 191
Bertulphus, K. of Mercia, 190, 191, 203
Beruredus, K. of Mercia, 150
Berwick, 6
Beverley, town of, 176
Bibroci, 56, 61, 73, 107
Biorno, son of E. Godwinus, 287, 290
—— delivered to D. William by K. Edw. Conf.
—— as a hostage, 292
Bishopricks of England, 2, 3
Blachemore, 121
Blandanus, 47
Bledgabredus, 47
Bodotria, 7, 78
Bosa, archbishop of York, 164
Brennus, 37, 41, 42, 43, 45
—— invades Rome, 38
Brennus, the second of the name, 46
Brethwinus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Brigantes, 48, 65, 67, 107
Bristanus, bishop of Winchester, 234
Bristow, town of, 206
Britain, division of, 1
—— description of, 15
—— first inhabitants of, 26
—— annexed to the Roman Empire, 57

Britain, lost from the Romans, 105
British Kingdom, destruction of the, 126, 127
British Kings, names of towns falsely said to have been given by, 48
Britons, what manner of people they were, 49
—— their weapons, velthe, &c. 50
Briturhii, K. of the W. Saxons, 185, 186
Brudeus, K. of the Picts, 175
Brute Greenshield, 34
Brutus, 37
—— story of, 30, 34
Buthredus, K. of Mercia, 154

C.

Cadovallo, K. of the Britons, 165, 166
Cadvallo, or Cadwallo, K. 123, 158, 163, 170
Cadvanus, 123
Cadwallader, K. 123, 166
Caergraunt, 220
Caerleon, 46
Cæsar and Augustus, difference between the names, 98
Cæsar, C. Julius, Commentaries of, 26, 27
—— Account of his expeditions against Britain, 50—57
Caledon or Calendar, 7
Calidon, forest of, 8
—— cattle peculiar to, Æ.
—— castle of, Æ.
Calphurnius Agricola, 85
Camber, 34
Cambridge, University of, 219, 220
Camillus, dictator of Rome, 45
Camudola, now Colchester, 73
Camulodunum, 65
—— Pol. Vergil's opinion of its site, 65, 66
—— temple erected to Claudius at, 70
Cangi, 65
Canterbury, city of, 35
—— early archbishops of, 223
INDEX.

Canutus, son of Sweno, proclaimed King, 257
—— flies to Denmark, 259
—— wars in Northumberland, 262
—— declared by several Counties K. of England, 264
Capenus, 47
Caporus, 47
Caracalla, 88
Caractacus, or Caratacus, 65, 66
—— his speech to Claudius Caesar, 67
Carausius, 88, 89
Caracta, 7
Carentius, 123
Carialae, 34, 35
Carnilius, 57
Carolus Crassus, 212
Carolus Simplex, K. of France, 228, 229
Carpwulphus, K. of E. Angles, 138
—— converted to Christianity, 162
Carris, 88
Carthumnadus, queen of the Brigantes, 67, 69
Caruntes, or Charters, people called, 210
Cassii, 56, 61, 73
Cassivellaunus, Cassivelaunus, Casswellaunus, 47, 48, 52, 54, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
Castle of Maidens at Edinburgh, 6
Catullus, 40
Cathness, Cathanasia, 9, 75
Cearlus, K. of Mercia, 147
Ceswlinus, K. of the W. Saxons, 178
Cedd, bishop of London, brother of St. Cedd or Chadde, 133
Ceddus, archbishop of York, 164
Cedovalla, K. of the W. Saxons, 136, 180
Celestius, the Roman bishop, 118
Celouphilus, K. of Northumb. 176
Celredus, K. of Mercia, 150
Celricus, K. of the W. Saxons, 178
Cenewolphus, K. of the West Saxons, 151
Cenigmanni, Cenicagni, 56, 61, 73, 107
Cenovalchius, K. of Wessex, 149, 179, 180
Cenricus, K. of the W. Saxons, 171
Centinnus, 180
Čenulphus, K. of Mercia, 152
Ceovulpus, K. of Mercia, 204
Cemulphus V. King of the West Saxons, 159, 178, 179
—— slain by Edwine, 160
Cerdicius, K. of the West Saxons, 178
Cerialis, Petilius, 71, 76
Cevolphus, K. of Mercia, 153, 155, 215
Chariots, British, used in war 54
Charlemagne, Charles le Mayne, K. of France, 151
—— founds Universities at Tycinum and at Paris, 187
Charles, K. of France, surnamed Simplex, 210, 211
Chelmatius, or Celnutus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Chembrigis, from whom Cambridge was said to take name, 220
Chenelmus, K. of Mercia, 153
—— his interment at Winchcombe, ibid.
Chenethus, K. of Scots, 125, 137
Chennethus III. K. of Scots, 235
Chenredus, K. of Mercia, 50, 149, 176
Chepstowe, 12
Cherinus, 40
Chertsey, abbey of, 133
Chester, 46, 156
Cheviot Hills, 6
Chimario, 39
Chineberga, St. 148
Chinemarchus, 37
Chineswidd, 148
Chineswide, St. 148
Chiusius, archbishop of York, 264
Christianity embraced in Britain, 25
Cimbelinus, 58, 59
Cinardus, 185
Cinewolhus, K. of the W. Saxons, 184
Cingetorix, 57
Cinigillius, K. of the W. Saxons, 179
Clappus, K. of Northumbria, 156
Dorchester, co. Oxf. see of transl. to Lincoln, 179
Douglas, Gawin, bishop of Dunkeld, his assistance to Polydore Vergil, in the Scottish history, 105, 106
—- his discourse with P. Vergil on the origin of the Scots, 107
—- his death in 1521, 108
Dragale, or Dragalions, 196
Druids, 18, 50
Druschenus, K. of the Picts, 187
Duffus, K. of Scots, 235
Dumfermlie, 6
Dunbriton castle, 7
Duncell, or Dunkeld, castle of, 8
Dunfrie, or Dumfries, 87
Dungallus, K. of Scots, 187
Dunglass, 7
Dunne, river of, 4
Dunstanus, St. archbishop of Canterbury, 242, 243, 246, 263
Dunwallo Molmucius, 37, 40, 41
Durham, or Deiram, the See of Lindisfarne transferred to, 215

East Angles, from whom descended, 112
—- kingdom of the, 138—142
—-—- Norfolk and Suffolk meant by the, 226
East Saxons, of whom descended, 112
—- kingdom of, 145—147
—-—- supposed by some to be the same with the kingdom of the East Angles, 145
Ebba, daughter of Ethelredus, 158
Ebba, the nun, 174
Ebrancke, 34
Edbaldus, King of Kent, 132, 133, 158, 164
Edbertus, or Edelbertus, King of Kent, 137
Edburga, 228
—- becomes a Nun, *ibid.*
Edelbertus, or Edburtus, K. of Kent, 152

Edelfreda, daughter of Oswinus King of Mercia, 172, 173
Edfredus, son of Edwine K. of Northumbria, 164
Edgarus, K. 241
—- tribute of the Welsh to, *ibid.*
—- founds the Nunnery of Wilton, 264
Edgarus Ethelingius, 296
Edgina, wife of K. Edward, 227
—- her dream, 228
Edgina, or Elgina, 223
—- married to Carolus Simplex, K. of France, *ibid.*
Edinburgh, 6
—- castle, 34
Editha, 228, 243
—- married to Sithricus K. of Northumberland, 228
Editha, Q. of Edw. Conf. 287, 289, 290
Editha, daughter of Edgar, abbess of Wilton, 246
Edmund, son of Edgarus, 243
Edmundsbury Abbey, razed by Sweno K. of Denmark, 257
Edmundus, St. K. of the E. Angles, 142
—- murder and legend of, 143
Edmundus, K. crowned at Kingston, 235
Edmundus, K. surnamed Ironside, 261
—- proclaimed King by the citizens of London, 264
Edricus, 139
Edricus, son of Ethelbertus, 135
Edricus Stratonius, 261
Edainus, archbishop of Canterbury, 295
Edward the elder, K. 221, 223, 224, 226, 227
Edward II. K. the Martyr, 246, 247, 248
Edwarde, K. the Confessor, 286, 287
Edwarde Conf. crowned King, 288
—- proclaims E. Godwin a traitor, 290
—- his promise to William Duke of Normandy, 291
Edward Conf. laws of, 292
—— his miracles, 293
—— touches for the evil, 294
—— death of, 295
Edward, son of Edmunde Ironside, 296
Edwin, son of Alla K. of Deira, 157
Edwinus K. of Northumberland, 138, 148, 157, 158, 236
—— subdues the isles Mevanæ or Hebrides, 158
—— conversion of to Christianity by Paulinus, 161, 162
Edwinus, Earl of Mercia, 299, 306
Egbertus, K. of Kent, 135.
Egbertus, K. of the West-Saxons, 137, 154, 185
—— joins the kingdoms of Kent and Northumberland to his dominions, 147, 178
—— the first sole Monarch, 189
—— his conquests, 190, 191, 192
Egbertus, archbishop of York, 176
Egfredus, 175
Egfredus, K. of Northumberland, 149
Egfridus, 148, 173, 176
Egfridus, K. of Mercia, 152
Egricus, K. of the East Angles, 139, 148
Edalas, 40
Eldolus, 47
Eldredus, 236
Eleuninus, 180
Eleutherius, bishop of Rome, 82
Elfreda, 228
—— becomes a nun, ñid.
Elfreda, wife of Ethelredus, governs the Mercians, 227
Elfreda, daughter of K. Alfred, 221
Elfreda, queen of Edgar, 242
Elgida, 228
Elgis, 9
Elgwe, 107
Elgwe, 7
Elgovia, 8
Eliodorus, 39, 40

Eliud, 40
Ella, K. of the South Saxons, 137
Elphegius, archbishop of Canterbury, 263
—— martyred, 264
Elwoldus, K. of the East Angles, 139
Ely, Isle of, described, 175
Embaldus I. archbishop of York, 176
Embaldus II. archbishop of York, ñid.
Emma, wife of Ethelredus, 261
Emma, Q. of Canute, mother of Edw. Conf. 281, 282, 295
—— penance of, 288
—— death, 291
Enfreda, daughter of K. Edwinus, 164, 173
Enfredus, son of Ethelredus, 158
Enfredus, K. of Bernicia, 165
England, division of into shires, 1
—— description of, 4
—— nature and qualities of, 19—23
—— Britain first so termed by Egbert, 192
—— “Imperie” of the English nation in its several stages, 222, 223
Englishmen, more graziers than husbandmen, 5
—— manners of, 24
—— their attire, 25
Ennanus, 40
Equiitus, 93
Erechenwald, bishop of London, 133
Erechenwinus, K. of the E. Saxons, 145
Ergombertus, K. of Kent, 134
Ericus, a Dane, governor of the E. Angles, 215
Ericus, K. of the E. Angles, 145, 226, 227
Ericus, K. of Northumberland, 204
Ermanilda, 149
Ermenburga, 149
Eake, river, 84
Etfinus, K. of Scots, 186
Ethelbaldus, King of the East Angles, 139
Ethelbaldus, King of Mercia, 150
Ethelbaldus, son of Ethelwolph, K. 198, 199
Ethelberga, wife of Edwine K. of Northumberland, 164
INDEX.

Ethelberga, wife of Ina K. of the W. Saxons, 183
Ethelbertus, uncle of Egbertus K. of Kent, put
to death, 135
Ethelbertus, K. of the E. Angles, 139
Ethelbertus, son of Ethelwulf, afterwards King,
198, 199
Ethelbertus, K. of the E. Angles, 139
——— murder of, 141
——— buried at Hereford, ibid.
Ethelbertus, K. of Kent, 128, 145, 174
——— espouses Bertha, 128
——— founds various churches, 131
——— his death, 132
Ethelbertus, or rather Adelredus, K. of Northumb.
177, 192
Ethelbritus, uncle of Egbertus K. of Kent, put
to death, 135
Ethelburga, sister of Edwaldus K. of Kent, 158
Ethelreda, da. of Anscas K. of the East Angles,
173
Ethelredus, K. 249, 260
——— attacked by Sweno K. of Denmark, 253
——— flies to Normandy, 256
Ethelredus, K. of Northumberland, 138, 156,
157
Ethelgarus, archbishop of Canterbury, 263
Ethelgara, or Elgina, daughter of K. Alfredus,
made abbess of Shaftaury, 216, 221
Ethelgina, mistress of K. Ethelredus, 261
Ethelhinga, now Athelnes, isle of, 216
Ethellardus, K. of the W. Saxons, 183
Ethelreda, 164
Ethelredus, governor of the Mercians, 227
Ethelredus, son of Ethelwulf, 198
——— succeeds his brother Ethelbertus as king,
199
Ethelredus, son of Edgarus, pollutes the fcnt at
his baptism, 248
Ethelredus, K. of the E. Angles, 139
Ethelredus, K. of Mercia, 148, 149
Ethelredus, K. his return to England, 258, 259
——— his death, 262

Ethelricus, K. of Northumbria, 156
Ethelvalchius, K. of the S. Saxons, 188
Ethelvitha, daughter of K. Alfred, 221
Ethelvitha, wife of K. Alfred, 221
Ethelwoldus, marries Alfreda daughter of Rolgerius duke of Cornwall, 242, 243
Ethelwoldus, a monk, restorer of the Monastery
of Abingdon, 236
Ethewoldus, abbat of Abingdon, 244
Ethewoldus, bishop of Winchester, 263
Ethilda, 228
Ethelwolphus, or Atulphus, K. 183
Ethelwolphus, K. of Kent, 190
Ethelwolphus, son of Egbert, K. 194, 197
——— orders the payment of Peter Pence, 198
——— re-edifies a School at Rome, ibid.
——— his death, 199
Ethenfreda, daughter of Ethelberga, 159
Ethewalphus, K. of Kent, 137
Ethhus, son of Chennethus K. of Scotland, 188
Eugenius I. K. of Scots, 108
Eugenius III. K. of Scots, 125
Eugenius IV. ibid. 158
Eugenius V. 125, 175
Eugenius VI. 125
Eugenius VII. 186
Eugenius VIII. 186
Eustachius, E. of Boulogne, visit of to England,
289
Exeter, 206

Farne, or Farne's, Isle, 170
Farnem, Isle named, 167
Fausta, 92
Felix, bishop, 188
Fergus, or Fergusus II. King of Scots, 108
Fergusus III. K. of Scots, 186
Fergusus, captain of the Scots, who gave the
Red Lion as his cognisance in his standard,
105
Ferrex and Porrex, 37
INDEX.

Ferstestanus, bishop of Winchester, 234
Fife, region of, 6
Fordane, 8
Forth, river of, 6
France, great rivers of, Seyne, Loyre, and Gironde, 210
Francis, bishop of Roane, 211, 212
Froedulphus, K. of Northumbria, 156
Frideswida, St. 183, 184
——— house of Canons in Oxford dedicated to, 184
Fugatius, 82
Fulgentius, 40
Fuscas, Cornelius, 194

Galerius, 92
Galloway, 7
Gathelus, 10
Genissa, 63
Geoffrey of Monmouth, Polydore Vergil's criticisms on, 29, 30
Germanicus, 64
Germanus Altisiodorensis, 118, 120
Gerontius, 102
Geruntius, 40
Geta, 86, 88
Getas, history of the, 194
Gildas, his description of Britain, 27
——— a book entitled the Commentaries of, spurious, 28
——— agreement of, with Cæsar, 57
——— his account of Claudius Cæsar's invasion, 63
Gildas, born in the year 492, 121
Gintoline, 38
Glasguen, or Glasco, 8
Glastonbury, abbey of, 74
——— built by Ina K. of W. Saxons, 182
——— Edw. the Martyr buried at, 248
Glote, river, 8, 78
Glotesvale, 8

Godwinus, Earl, 286
——— enumeration of his children, 287
——— his treason toward Alfredus the brother of K. Edw. Conf. 306
——— espouses his daughter Editha to K. Edw. Conf. 289
——— flies with his sons into Flanders, 290
——— his death, 291
——— Biorno and Tosto, the sons of, 292
Good Friday, rings hallowed upon, by the Kings of England, 295
Goranus, K. of Scots, 125
Gorbonius, 87
Gorboniar, 89
Gordianus, the younger, 195
Gormon, the Dane, made chief ruler of Northumberland, 178
Gormo, K. of Northumbria, 215
Gothofredus, 232
Goths, otherwise Getze, otherwise Danes, history of the, 194—197
Grampius, mountain so called, 5, 7, 8, 75, 80
Gratianus, 99, 101
Gregory, St. sends Augustine and Miletus into Britain, 129
——— sends letters to Ethelberht K. of Kent, 131
Grimus, 235
Guindelon, 34
Guinderius, son of Cimbelinus, 62, 63
Gurguntius, or Gurgustus, 87, 47
Guthlac, St. buried at Croyland, 141
Guthorinus, K. of the E. Angles, 144, 145
Guthormus, K. of Northumbria, 204

Haddington, 6
Hadrian, humanity of toward the Britons, 84
——— wall of, 84, 85, 87
Haraldus, K. of Norway, Joins with Tosto, 299
Haraldus, son of Godwinus, 287
——— ministers drink at a feast to K. Edw. the Conf. 290
INDEX.

Haraldus asks leave of Edw. Conf. to go into Normandy, 293
—— his promise to Duke William, and reproof from Edw. Conf. 294
—— consecrated king, 296
—— his character, 298
—— his address to his soldiers before the battle of Hastings, 302, 303
—— his death, 305, 306
—— buried at Waltham, 306
Haraldus Vth. of Denmark, 239
Haroldus, brother of Olavus, 284
Hardicanutus, K. 281
—— dies suddenly at Lambeth drinking, vide. 282
—— account of, from Saxo-Grammaticus, 282
Harvius, 341
Healing of the King’s Evil, 294
Hebrides, the, 10
—— subdued by Edwine K. of Deira, 158
Helena, Empress, mother of Constantine the Great, 90
—— discovers the Cross of Christ, 94
Helenople, 96
Helius, 47
Hengistus, 113
Hengistus and Horsus arrive in Britain, 111
—— Hengist slain, 117
—— his sons, vide.
Hengistus, K. of Kent, 128
Henry VIII. enters Oxford, 184
Heppia, isle of Shepey, 129
Herculanilla, 63
Herlowinusa, 230, 239
Hestris, 282
Holy Island, See in, transferred to Deirham, 264
Honorius, 102, 103
Honorius, archbishop of Canterbury, 484
—— his death, 134
—— sends Paulinus to preach to the Northumbrians, 158, 159
Horgerius, Duke of Cornwall, 242
Horresus and Hengistus arrive in Britain, 111
Horresus slain, 116
Hugo, 142, 202, 206
Hull, 5
Humber, river of, 4, 24
Hunericus, K. of Kent, 128
Huniades, John, 196
Hyde abbey, 244
Hyermouthe, 16
Jaguus, 37
Iceni, 48, 64, 65, 107
Icius Portus of Caesar, 91
Ida, K. of Northumberland, 155
Idwalle, 40
Igeni, 70, 72
Ila, Thule now called, 10
Ille Farnis, 170
Ina, K. of Wessex, 138, 152, 181
—— the builder of Glastonbury abbey, 182
Inarus, a Danish king, 200
Indulphus, K. of Scots, 235
John, archbishop of York, the fifth from Paulinus, 164, 176
Johns, St. 7
Johns Town, St. 11
Iona, island of, 10
Joseph of Arimathæus, founds a chapel at Glastonbury, 182
Ireland, the Silurians lords of, in old time, 8
—— invaded by the Picts, 75
—— Scots conducted into, by their king
—— Simon Brechus, 106
Ivarus, 202
Justus, bishop, 132, 133, 146
—— succeeds Miletus as archbishop, 133
—— his death, 134
—— sends Paulinus to preach to the Northumbrians, 158, 159
Juthredus, K. of the E. Saxons, 192

INDEX.

Mercians, or Middle Saxons, kingdom of the, 147—155
—— its breadth and length, 147
Merianus, 47
Mervina, 8
Merlin the soothsayer, 115
Merwaldus, K. of Mercia, 148
Menvane, 10
Micelnie, co. Somers. monastery of, 234
Milburge, St. 148
Mildreda, St. 148
Miletus, in Asia, 20, 21
Miletus, arrival of, with St. Augustine, 129
—— bishop of London, 130, 132, 145, 146
—— archbishop of Canterbury, 133
Milwide, St. 148
Modevons, St. 199
Molmician Laws, 41
Molo, 186, 181
Mona, isle of, 72, 77
Monasterii, castle of, 230
Morcarus, or Morcatus, E. of Northumberland, 296, 299, 306
Mordauis, son of Ambricius K. of Socts, 186
Moredred, 122
Morgan, 36
Morgandus, 260
Morganus, 40
Morini, province of the, 51
Morvidius, 39
Murray, or Moravia, shire of, 9

Nassamenes, 296
Neotus, St. 217
Neustria, 211
Newberie, William, 29
New History, i.e. Fabyan's Chronicles, 63
Ninian, St. Church of, 7
Nithsdale, 7
Nordovicum, or Norwich, 73

Normans, story of their leaving their garments behind them, 236
Normandy, genealogy of the dukes of, 296
Northampton, 73
North Berwicks, 6
Northmannia, or Normania, 212
Northumbria, kingdom of, 155
—— anciently governed by dukes, 155
—— its extent and origin of name, Æid.
—— flourishes under K. Edwine, 163
—— kingdom of, divided between Oricus, who had Deira, and Enfrida, who had Bernicia, 165
—— ceases, 177, 178
—— comes under the jurisdiction of the Western Princes, 191
—— Tosto marches to, 298
Northumbrians, surrender to Egbertus, 191
—— yield to the Danes, 253
Norway, surrendered to the Danes, 301
Notelius, archbishop of Canterbury, 223

Odo, archbishop of Canterbury, 234, 235, 246
Offa, K. of the E. Saxons, 150
Offa, K. of Mercia, 140, 141, 152, 184
—— murders Ethelbertus, K. of the E. Angles, 141
—— school established by him at Rome, 198
Offa, son of Ethelredus, 158
Offa, son of Sigericus, K. of the E. Saxons, 146
Offredus, son of Edwin K. of Northumbria, 164
Opes, or Opis, the wife of Rollo, 212, 213
Orcades, the, 10, 63, 99
—— language of the, 10
Oppius Sabinus, 194
Ordoluce, 107
Ordoluces, 65
Osburga, 194
Osburga, Queen of Ethelwulf, 198
Osea and Otha, sons of Hengistus, 117, 121, 128
Oscitellus, archbishop of York, 236
INDEX.

Ositha, daughter of Osninus, 173
Ositha, St. 199
Osninus, son of Ethelredus, 158
Osmundus, 238
Oswulphus, K. of Northumberland, 177
Ossaredus, K. of Northumberland, 176, 177
Oswichus, K. of Northumberland, 176
Oswicuus, K. of Deira, 165
Oswicuus, son of Ethelredus, 158
Osninus, K. of the Mercians, 172
Oswald, bishop of Worcester, 244
Oswald, K. of Northumberland, 123, 148, 165, 168
—— character of, 168
—— his death, 169
Oswaldus, son of Ethelredus, 158
Oswaldus, archbishop of York, 236, 246, 264
Osninus, K. of Deira, 170
Osninus, K. of Mercia, 148, 149
Osninus, K. of Northumberland, 148
Osnuus, K. of Bernicia, 170, 171
Othe, K. of Germany, 240
Ovinus, 47
Oxford, city of, superstition relating to, 184
—— university of, 217, 218

Pallad, St. reliques of, a Scottish Saint, 8, 9
Palladius, bishop, 118, 119
Panonia, 10
Paris, Hugh Earl of, 238
Parks, great number of, 5
Paulinus, archbishop of York, sent to convert the Northumbrians, 154, 158, 169
—— converts Edwine to Christianity, 161, 162
—— flies, and takes the bishopric of Rochester, 164
Peda, son of Penda, 172
Peinsellus, 47
Pelagian heresy, 118
Penda, K. of Mercia, 139, 147, 148, 163, 164
169, 174, 179
—— slain, 171

CAMD. SOC.

Peridorus, 40
Perthe, 7
Pertinax, 85
Peter Pence, first granted to Rome by Offa K. of Mercia, 152, 198
Pictland, 6, 187
Picts, arrival of the, in Britain, 74
—— the second people, after the Romans, who invaded Britain, 76
—— Herodian's account of the, 87
Pinciniacum, 231
Plautius, Aulus, 64, 65
Plegmund, or Pleimund, archbishop of Canterbury, 229
Pleogildus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Porrex, 37
Porrex II. 40
Portus Icicus, 51
Pountfreyt, 65
Prasutagus, 60, 70
Pyrhus, 47

Quendreda, wife of Offa K. Mercia, 140, 153
Quichelmo, K. of the W. Saxons, 178

Rabanus, 218
Ramsey Abbey, 135, 264
Redargius, 47
Redoaldus, K. of the E. Angles, 138, 157, 158, 159
Regnerus, a captain of the Danes, 154
Reuda, Rewda, or Rewther, captain of the Scots, 105
Reutherus, K. of Scots, 108
Richard, Duke of Normandy, 236, 282
Richard II. Duke of Normandy, 252, 255
Richard III. Duke of Normandy, 252
Ripon, church at, built by St. Wilfrida, 164
Rivallo, 37
Robert, Duke of Aquitaine, 229
Robert, Earl of Vermandois, 229
Robert, bishop of London, 295

2 T
INDEX

Robert, D. of Normandy, account of, 284, 285
Robert, K. of France, son of Hugh Capet, 252
Rochester, foundation of St. Andrew's church at, 181
Rodericus, 75
Rodianus, 47
Rodolph, son of Richard Duke of Burgundy, made K. of France, 280
Rodolph, 231, 236
Roland, nephew of Charles the Great, 121
Rollo, first Duke of Normandy, 213
——— coming of, into England, 208
——— his death, 229
Romans, deeds of, done in the Island, 76
Rome, taken by Brennus, 44
——— Collina porta at, sibid.
——— Gabia via at, 45
——— church of St. Peter, 94
Rosce, county of, 9
Rouen, or Ronix, daughter of Hengistus, captivatis Vortigerius, 112, 113
Rudibras, 35
Rufus, Attilius, 81
Ryno, 40
St. Andrew's, 6
Salisbury, bishop of, 180
Samulius, 47
Saresburie, description of, 246
Saxo Grammaticus, quoted by Pol. Vergil, 144
Saxons, calling in of the, 113, 114
Scapula, Ostorius, 64, 66, 69
Schireburne, abbey at, 244
Scotland, description of, 5
Scota, the, 105
——— nature and behaviour of the, 10
——— derivation of their name, 106
——— conducted into Ireland by their King
Simon Brechus, 106
Scots and Picts, irruption of the, 102, 108
Scotus, Johannes, 218
Sebba, city of, 170
Segonax, 57
Segontiaci, 56, 61, 73, 107
Septon, or Shaftesbury, 35
Sergius, bishop of, 187
Sireius, the son of Subertus, K. of the E. Saxons, 145
Sireius, slain in war with the W. Saxons, 146
Severne, river, 12
Severus, Julius, 85
Severus's wall, 87
——— his death, 88
Sewardus, son of Subertus, K. of the E. Saxons, 145
Seyne, or Sequana, river in France, 209
Shires of England enumerated, 1, 2
Subertus, K. of the E. Saxons, 145, 182, 183
Sicilius, 39
Sigebertus K. of the E. Saxons, 145
Sigerius, K. of the E. Saxons, 146
Sigibert, or Sigibertus, K. of the E. Angles, 138, 139, 149, 217
——— foundation of the church of St. Peter,
Westm. ascribed to, 82
Sigibertus, son of Subertus, K. of the E. Saxons, 145
——— succeeds Sireius, 146
Sigibertus, K. of the W. Saxons, 184
Sigibfredus, 260
Silius, 37, 47
Silla, Faustus, 63
Silvius, 37, 48
Silures, 48, 107
Silurians, 65, 68, 69
——— anciently Lords of Ireland, 8
Simon Brechus, King of Scots, 106
Siricius, archbishop of Canterbury, 263
Siaca, K. of the S. Saxons, 138
Sithricus, K. of the Northumbrians, 215, 282
Sithricus the Dane, chief ruler of Northumberland, 227, 307
Sleda, K. of the E. Saxons, 145
Solvatioius, K. of Scots, 187
INDEX.

Southampton, 16
South Saxons, of whom descended, 112
——— Kingdom of the, 137, 138
Spina, lake called, 9
Stanford-bridge, battle of, 299, 300, 301
——— valianstness of one of the Norwegians at, 300
Sterling, territory of, 8
Stigandus, archbishop of Canterbury, 295
Stonehenge, 117
Suthelanus, K. of the E. Saxons, 146
Suthredus, the last of the E. Saxon Kings, 146
Suardus, Earl of Northumberland, account of, 295, 296
Suetonius, 72
Suetonius Paulinus, 17, 18
Sweno, son of Hestritha, 282, 283
Sweno, son of Haroldus V. of Denmark, 239
Sweno, King of Denmark, arrival of, in England, 253
——— his conquest of England, 256
——— his death, 257
——— dies a Christian, ibid.
Swithinus, St. 197
Sylvanectum, Bernard Earl of, 238
Sylvestor, bishop, 93

Tacitus, the opinion of, as to the peopling of Britain, 27
——— his notice of the British Kings, 60
Tedwinus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Taus, or Tay, river, 7
Taximagulus, 57
Thames, 8, 20, 47
Thane, town of, 9
Thanet, isle of, 129
Theodatus, archbishop of Canterbury, 134
Theodora, 90
Theodoricus, K. of Northumbria, 156
Theodorus, archbishop of Canterbury, 135
——— his death, 136
Theodosius, 99, 100, 102
——— the Picts' Wall ascribed to, 87

Theodulphus, K. of Northumbria, 156
Theodidance, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Theomenius, son of Ludde, 47, 48, 58, 59
Thira, wife of Canutus, 287, 289, 306
Thorfin Isle, 83
Thule, 10
Tine, river, 84, 85
Tittius, K. of E. Angles, 138
Tocto, son of Godwinus, 287, 290
——— the enmity of, to Harold, 298
——— his ravages on the English coast, 298
——— goes to Norway, 299
——— death of, 300
Toctus, Earl of Northumberland, 296
Tower of London, 40
Trebellius, Cneus, 81, 84
Trebellius Maximus, 72, 76
Trent, river, 4
Trinobates, 48, 56, 72, 73, 107
Turpilianus, Petronius, 72
Twede, river, 4

Valachia, 196
Valentinianus, 99, 100, 102
Veneti, 101
Vermandois, Robert Earl of, 229
Verulamium, 71
Vey, or Veyus, i.e. Wye river, 12, 65
Uffa, first K. of the East Angles, 138
Vibhas, K. of Mercia, 147
Vicomagi, 107
Victor, son of Maximus, 100
Victory, image of, at Camalodunum, 70
Vigenius, 40
Vimundus, archbishop of York, 176
Vergil, Polydore, his opinion, as given to Gawin
Douglas, upon the antiquity of the Scots, 107
Virgil, quotations from, 20, 21
Vites, of whom the Kentish men descended, 114
Vithredus, K. of Kent, 136
Ulvo, a Swetian, 282, 283
Vodicia (Boadicea), 70
INDEX.

Vodicia, her hatred to the Romans, 17
—— her defeat and death, 72
Volanus, Vectius, 76
Volusenus, Caius, 51, 52
Vortigernus, elected K. of Britain, 110
Vortimerius, 115
Vortiporus, 122
Urbicus, Lollius, 85
Vrianus, 40
Ursula, St. 101
Utherelcus, K. of Mercia, 158
—— slain, 191
Utherius Pendraco, 117, 121
Uthredus, first Earl of Northumberland, 262

Wales, description of, 11, 12
—— bishopricks in, 13
Wall, Pict's, 85, 86, 87
—— fortified with stone, 104
Wahhemen, 12
—— character of the, 189
Waltham Holy Cross, Harold II. buried at, 306
Waterford, 16
Watlingoester, 72
Wedas, K. of Mercia, 148
Wells, 74
—— city and church of, 182
Welsh language, 13
Wereburg, St. 149
Werelemoester, 89
Westminister, Church of St. Peter, by whom founded, 82, 83
—— ancient church of St. Stephen at, 83
West Saxons, Kingdom of, 178—186, 307
—— of whom descended, 112
Werewall nunnerly, founded, 241
Whitby abbey, founded, 172
Wight, Isle of, 17, 112, 149, 179, 181

Wight, Isle of, subdued to the Roman dominion, 64
—— spoiled by Tosto, 298
Wigton, 7
Wilfridus, bishop of Wells, made archbishop of Canterbury, 234
Wilferus, K. of Mercia, 148, 149, 179
Wilfrerus, archbishop of York, 176
Wilfrus, archbishop of York, 176
Wilfreda, 243
Wilfredus, archbishop of Canterbury, 223
Wilfredus, archbishop of York, 174
Wilfredus II. archbishop of York, 176
William, Duke of Normandy, son of Rollo, 230
William, Duke of Normandy, afterward K. of England, 286
—— visits Edw. the Conf. 291
—— demands the performance of the promise made to him by Harold, 297
—— arrival of, at Hastings, 301
William, Duke of Normandy, his address to his soldiers, 302
—— his victory at Hastings, 305
Winas, bishop of London, 133
Winchcombe, abbey of, built, 152, 153
Winchester, 35
—— church of, 180
—— abbey founded at, by Alfred, 244
Wolves, Edgar's yearly rent from the Welsh of, 241
Wulfstanus, or Wulstane, archbishop of York, 176, 234, 264, 286
Wulstanus, bishop of Worcester, 295
York, city of, 34
—— church built of wood at, by K. Edwine, 162
—— abbey of St. Mary at, 172

J. B. Nichols and Son, 25, Parliament Street, Westminster.